

V451M ISOBUS Round Baler



JOHN DEERE

OPERATOR'S MANUAL

V451M ISOBUS Round Baler

OMFH356682 ISSUE B5 (ANGLAIS)

John Deere Arc-lès-Gray

North American Edition
PRINTED IN FRANCE



Introduction

Foreword

Read this manual carefully to learn how to operate and service the baler correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or equipment damage. This manual and the safety signs on the baler are available in other languages. See a John Deere dealer to order.

This manual is to be considered a permanent part of the baler and must remain with the baler when you sell it.

Measurements in this manual are given in both metric and customary U.S. unit equivalents. Use only correct replacement parts and fasteners. Metric and inch fasteners require a specific metric or inch wrench.

Right-hand and left-hand sides are determined by facing the direction the baler travels when going forward.

Write the product identification numbers (PIN) in the Serial Numbers section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the baler should it be stolen. A dealer also needs these numbers for ordering parts. File the identification numbers in a secure place off of the baler.

Before delivering the baler, ensure that a dealer has performed a predelivery inspection.

This baler is designed solely for use in customary agricultural or similar operations. Use in any other way is considered as contrary to the intended use. The manufacturer accepts no liability for damage or injury resulting from this misuse, and these risks must be borne solely by the user. Compliance with and strict adherence to the conditions of operation, service, and repair as specified by the manufacturer also constitute essential elements for the intended use.

This baler is to be operated, serviced and repaired only by persons familiar with all its particular characteristics and acquainted with the relevant safety rules to prevent accidents. The accident prevention regulations, all other generally recognized regulations on safety and occupational medicine and the road traffic regulations must be observed at all times. Any arbitrary modifications carried out on this baler will relieve the manufacturer of all liability for any resulting damage or injury.

If you are not the original owner of this baler, it is in your interest to contact a local John Deere dealer to inform them of this unit's serial number. This helps in being notified by John Deere of any issues or product improvements.

r2c13ue,1738938935132 -19-07FEB25-1/1

Introduction

Dealer's Record

Owner's Name_____ Date Sold_____

Address_____ Model Number_____

City_____ Serial Number_____

State/Country_____ Zip_____

CC03745,00010BA -19-22MAR13-1/1

Delivery

The following checklist is a reminder of very important information which should be conveyed to the customer at the time the baler is delivered. Check off each item as it is fully explained to the customer.

- ☐ John Deere warranty.
- ☐ Safe and correct operation and service.
- ☐ Daily and periodic inspections.
- ☐ Servicing machine regularly and correctly.
- ☐ Explain proper bale handling procedures.
- ☐ Advise to use safety chain.
- ☐ Advise use of baler fire extinguisher.
- ☐ Explain correct ASAE standard dimensions for PTO hookup.
- ☐ Give the Operator's manual to the customer and encourage customer to read entire manual.
- ☐ Advise customer of safety precautions that must be observed while using this baler.
- ☐ Advise the customer never to discharge bales on sloping ground and if moving bales with a tractor loader, the loader MUST have an appropriate bale handling equipment.
- ☐ Advise the customer to set front and rear wheels out on tractors having adjustable tread width to avoid driving over the windrow. (See Preparing the Tractor section.)
- ☐ Review information on how to prepare the baler. (See Preparing the Baler section.)
- ☐ Review recommended procedures for attaching to or detaching from tractor. (See Attaching and Detaching section.)
- ☐ Recommended transporting information. (See Transporting section.)
- ☐ Make customer aware of all optional equipment offered for this machine. (See Attachments section.)
- ☐ Recommended lubricants. (See Lubrication and Maintenance section.)
- ☐ Review service intervals and lubrication points. (See Lubrication and Maintenance section.)
- ☐ Review all adjustments. (See Service sections.)
- ☐ Recommended machine storage. (See Storage section.)
- ☐ Have customer record machine serial number in the Serial Numbers section.
- ☐ John Deere parts and service.
- ☐ Remove and file this page.

(Date Delivered)_____

(Signature)_____

r2c13ue,1739201334322 -19-10FEB25-1/1

Contents

	Page		Page
Identification View			
Identification View.....	00-1	Caution: 540 RPM PTO	10-3
Safety		Danger: Don't Take Chances!	10-4
Recognize Safety Information	05-1	Caution: Fire.....	10-5
Follow Safety Instructions.....	05-1	Caution: Keep Away From Power	
Understand Signal Words.....	05-1	Driven Parts	10-6
Spanish Safety Signs and Operator's Manual.....	05-2	Warning: Engage Gate Lock	10-7
Observe Road Traffic Regulations.....	05-2	Warning: Entanglement in Moving	
Machine Weight.....	05-2	Rolls and Net Knife	10-9
Store Attachments Safely	05-3	Warning: Opening Gate and Rolling Bale	10-10
Prepare For Emergencies	05-3		
Wear Protective Clothing.....	05-3	Preparing the Tractor	
Handle Knives	05-4	Adjust Drawbar	15-1
Stay Clear of Rotating Drivelines.....	05-5	Using Drawbar Shield.....	15-1
Protect Bystanders	05-6	Select Tractor PTO Speed.....	15-2
Use Safety Lights and Devices.....	05-6	Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow	15-3
Use a Safety Chain.....	05-6	Round Baler Electrical Circuit and	
Observe Maximum Transport Speed.....	05-7	Control Power Supply Requirement	15-3
Follow Tire Recommendations	05-7	Install Monitor Support (6000, 6M, 6R,	
Service Tires Safely.....	05-8	7000 and 7R Tractors Series)	15-4
Check Ballast, Wheel Spacing and Tire		Install Battery Wiring Harness for	
Inflation.....	05-8	Connecting Control Monitor	15-5
Operate Baler Safely	05-8	Install Virtual Terminal (Display)	
Operate Baler Safely on Slopes	05-9	Portable Harness (If Equipped).....	15-6
Prevent Fire	05-9		
In Case of Fire	05-10	Preparing the Baler	
Secure Gate Safely	05-10	Tire Inflation	20-1
Keep Riders Off Machine	05-11	Use Jackstand	20-2
Service Machine Safely	05-11	Set Machine Angle	20-3
Maximum Hydraulic Operating Pressure.....	05-11	Adjust Tongue.....	20-4
Practice Safe Maintenance.....	05-12	Install Standard Gauge Wheels in	
Protect People and Animals	05-12	Working Position	20-5
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	05-13	Select Net Roll.....	20-6
Service Machines Safely	05-13	Care of Net Roll.....	20-6
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating	05-13	Care of Net Binding Device	20-6
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	05-14	Load Net Roll.....	20-7
Service Accumulator Systems Safely.....	05-14	Check Wheel Nut Torque.....	20-11
Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Safety Signs.....	05-14		
Avoid High-Pressure Jet for Cleaning Parts	05-15	Attaching	
Decommissioning — Proper Recycling		Use Only Approved Hitch	25-1
and Disposal of Fluids and Components	05-15	Attach Baler to Tractor.....	25-2
		Fold Jackstand	25-2
		Install Telescoping Driveline	25-3
		Connect Telescoping Driveline to	
		Tractor PTO Shaft	25-4
		Telescoping Driveline Support.....	25-4
		Connect Safety Chain.....	25-5
Safety Signs			
Replace Safety Signs	10-1		
Warning: Transporting.....	10-1		
Danger: Rotating Driveline	10-2		

Continued on next page

Original Instructions. All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

COPYRIGHT © 2025
John Deere GmbH & Co. KG Mannheim Regional Center
Zentralfunktionen
All rights reserved.
A John Deere ILLUSTRATION™ Manual

Page	Page
Connect to Tractor Hydraulic System.....	25-5
Connect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket.....	25-7
Connect Machine Wiring Harness.....	25-7
Connect Video Camera Harness(es) (If Equipped).....	25-8
Detaching	
Detach Baler from Tractor.....	27-1
Disconnect Video Camera Harness(es) (If Equipped).....	27-1
Disconnect Machine Wiring Harness.....	27-2
Disconnect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket.....	27-2
Disconnect from Tractor Hydraulic System.....	27-2
Store Hydraulic Hoses.....	27-3
Disconnect Telescoping Driveline from Tractor PTO Shaft.....	27-3
Store Telescoping Driveline.....	27-4
Unfold Jackstand.....	27-5
Transporting and Parking	
Tow Baler on Public Roads.....	30-1
Transport Baler on Truck.....	30-2
Lighting Enhancement Module Operation.....	30-3
Check Side Doors Are Locked.....	30-4
Put Standard Gauge Wheels in Transport Position.....	30-4
Break-In Period	
Break In Baler.....	32-1
After the First 10 Hours: Check Wheel Nut Torque.....	32-1
After the First 10 Hours: Check End Play of Wheel Hub Bearing.....	32-1
After the First 50 Hours: Drain and Refill Gear Case.....	32-1
Break-in Period: After the First 500 Bales - Check Net Feed Roll Brake.....	32-2
Operating the Baler—General Purposes	
Before Each Use of the Baler.....	35-1
Clean the Machine to Prevent Fire.....	35-1
Crop Preparation.....	35-2
Open and Close the Side Door.....	35-2
Gate Lock Valve.....	35-3
Adjust Pickup Float Spring.....	35-3
Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels.....	35-4
Adjust Pickup Downstops.....	35-4
Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll.....	35-5
Guidelines to Form a Good Bale.....	35-6
In Case of Plugging.....	35-7
Set Net Guide Based on Field Condition.....	35-8
Adjust Net Binding Stretch.....	35-8
Operating Baler Application	
Baler Application Access.....	37-1
Units of Measure.....	37-1
Baler Main Page Display Description.....	37-2
Softkey Description.....	37-3
Baler Application Softkey Designation.....	37-3
Set Bale Diameter.....	37-9
Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset.....	37-10
Select Binding System.....	37-10
Select Binding Start Mode.....	37-12
Adjust Net Binding.....	37-13
Adjust Twine Binding.....	37-14
Automatic Start of Binding Cycle.....	37-16
Manual Start of Binding Cycle.....	37-17
Operate Soft Core System.....	37-19
Adjust Bale Density.....	37-21
Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators.....	37-23
Raise or Lower the Pickup Function.....	37-24
Retract or Engage Precutter Knives Function.....	37-25
Unplug Pickup.....	37-26
Customer and Field Counters.....	37-28
Season and Machine Total Counters.....	37-29
Operate Side Door Lights (If Equipped).....	37-31
Video Application.....	37-32
Operating Baler in Automation Mode	
Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely.....	38-1
Tractor-Implement Automation Prerequisites.....	38-1
Baler Automation Main Page Display Description.....	38-2
Automation Softkey Designation.....	38-2
Operate Baler in Automation Mode.....	38-4
Unplug Pickup in Automation Mode.....	38-5
Select Automation Level.....	38-5
Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve.....	38-6
Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement.....	38-7
Adjust Tractor Behavior.....	38-8
Manual Bale Unload.....	38-9
Automation States Pie.....	38-10
Automation Diagnostic.....	38-11
Automation Deactivation Message List.....	38-14
Operating Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode	
Automatic Tailgate Description.....	39-1
Operate Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode Safely.....	39-1
Baler Automatic Tailgate Main Page Display Description.....	39-2
Automatic Tailgate Softkey Designation.....	39-2
Operate Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode.....	39-3
Select Automatic Tailgate Mode.....	39-8
Set Automatic Tailgate Hydraulic Flow.....	39-9
Attachments	
Find Attachments.....	40-1
Lubrication and Maintenance	
Lubricate and Maintain Machine Safely.....	45-1
Observe Service Intervals.....	45-1

Continued on next page

	Page
Perform Lubrication and Maintenance.....	45-2
Grease for Lubrication.....	45-2
Grease for Automatic Greasing System.....	45-2
Gear Oil.....	45-3
Multiluber Chain Oil.....	45-3
Alternative and Synthetic Lubricants.....	45-4
Lubricant Storage.....	45-4
Mixing of Lubricants.....	45-4
Chain Oiling Component Location.....	45-5
Adjust Oil Flow.....	45-6
As Required: Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir.....	45-6
As Required: Clean Oil Reservoir Filter.....	45-6
As Required: Clean Hydraulic Coupler Filters.....	45-7
As required: Check Accumulators Gas Pre-charge.....	45-7
As Required: Clean Bale Chamber Rolls.....	45-8
As Required: Clean Belt Hooks and Hook Wires.....	45-8
Daily: Prevent Fire.....	45-8
Fire Prevention.....	45-8
Every 10 Hours: Lubricate Baler without Automatic Greasing System.....	45-9
Every 30 Hours: Lubricate Net Binding Pivots ..	45-10
Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Telescoping Driveline.....	45-11
Every 50 Hours: Check Chain Tension.....	45-11
Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Door Hinges, Hydraulic Cylinders, and Bale Shape Sensor Pins.....	45-12
Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Gate latches.....	45-13
Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Lower Belt Drive Roll (With 2nd Drive Roll).....	45-14
Weekly: Check Gear Case Oil Level.....	45-14
Weekly: Check Wheel Hub Cap.....	45-15
Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check Tongue Frame and Hitch.....	45-16
Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check Wheel Nut Torque.....	45-16
Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check End Play of Wheel Hub Bearing.....	45-17
Twice a Year: Check Tire.....	45-17
Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Drain and Refill Gear Case.....	45-18
Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Lubricate Jackstand.....	45-18
Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Lubricate Extension Shaft.....	45-19
Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Check Belt Guides Wear.....	45-20
Yearly: Check Axle Condition.....	45-21
Yearly: Clean, Check and Lubricate Wheel Bearing.....	45-21
Yearly: Check Thickness of Wear Plates.....	45-22
Yearly: Replace Belt Wires.....	45-22
Yearly: Check Accumulator.....	45-22

Every 3000 Bales or Yearly: Check Net Feed Roll Brake.....	45-23
Every 6 Years: Replace Hydraulic Hoses.....	45-23
Every 6 Years: Replace Density Accumulator ..	45-23

Troubleshooting

Pickup and Feed Difficulties.....	50-1
Bale Quality.....	50-4
General Baler Difficulties.....	50-6
Silage Equipment Operation Difficulties.....	50-10
Net Binding Equipment Difficulties.....	50-11
Chain Oiling System.....	50-15
Baler Application Display.....	50-16

Service

Metric Bolt and Screw Torque Values.....	55-1
Prevent Fire at Each Service.....	55-2
Baler Roll Numbering.....	55-2
Practice Safe Service Procedures.....	55-3
Service Hydraulic Accumulator Device.....	55-3
Use Genuine John Deere Parts.....	55-4
Replacing Hydraulic Components.....	55-4
Baler Chain Identification.....	55-5
Adjust Pickup Drive Chain.....	55-6
Adjust Main Drive Chain.....	55-6
Adjust Starter Roll Drive Chain.....	55-7
Adjust Rotary Feeder Drive Chain.....	55-8
Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump.....	55-8
Adjust Brushes.....	55-9
Replace Pickup Tooth.....	55-9
Adjust Tension Arm Spring.....	55-11
Prepare Belt: New Belt.....	55-12
Repair Belts.....	55-13
Remove Belts.....	55-14
Prepare Belt: Emergency Repair.....	55-15
Prepare Belt: Recommended Repair.....	55-18
Install Belt Hooks.....	55-19
Route Belts Through the Baler.....	55-23
Install Belts.....	55-24
Adjust Tracking of Belts.....	55-25
Adjust Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper.....	55-26
Install Roll No. 2 Scraper.....	55-26
Remove Roll No. 2 Scraper.....	55-28
Store Roll No. 2 Scraper.....	55-30
Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper ..	55-30
Adjust Rotor Auger Scrapers.....	55-31
Sharpen Net Binding Knife.....	55-31
Locate Machine Electrical Components.....	55-32
Identify Sensor Detection Area.....	55-33
Adjust Drop Floor Sensor SB533.....	55-33
Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365 ..	55-34
Adjust Gate Latch.....	55-34
Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311.....	55-35
Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414.....	55-35
Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB343.....	55-36

Continued on next page

	Page
Adjust Orientation of Camera EB161	55-36
Check Net Binding Device.....	55-37
Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1)	55-37
Check Free Motion of Swinging Bar (Test 2)	55-39
Check Net Feed Roll Pressure (Test 3).....	55-40
Check No. 9 Roll Position (Test 4)	55-41
Check Drive Belt Tension (Test 5)	55-42
Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6).....	55-43
Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7).....	55-45
Remove and Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt ...	55-46
Remove and Install Net Knife	55-46
Remove Binding Materials Wrapped Around Feed Rolls	55-47
Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp.....	55-47
Round Baler Hanging Points	55-48
Remove and Install Wheel.....	55-48
Repair Gauge Wheel.....	55-49

Baler Application Service

Warning Screens	57-1
Recent Problems	57-2
Test Tractor Battery Voltage	57-3
Diagnostic Trouble Code List	57-4
Test Sensors and Switches	57-9
Test Electro-Hydraulic Components	57-12
Test Actuator Electrical Consumption.....	57-15
Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311	57-16
Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322	57-21
Adjust Bale Shape Sensitivity.....	57-26
Enable or Disable Baler Rotation Speed Sensor (If Equipped).....	57-26
Enable or Disable Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor (If Equipped).....	57-27
Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal (Display) to Another.....	57-28
Periodic Maintenance	57-29

Storage

Prepare the Baler for Storage.....	60-1
Prepare for Beginning of Season	60-2

Specifications

Specifications for V451M Baler	65-1
--------------------------------------	------

Serial Numbers

Serial Number Plate	70-1
Serial Number Plate Description	70-1
Round Baler Identification Number.....	70-1
Keep Proof of Ownership	70-2
Keep Machines Secure	70-2

John Deere Service Literature Available

Technical Information.....	SLIT-1
----------------------------	--------

Identification View

Identification View



CC652844 —UN—20NOV/24

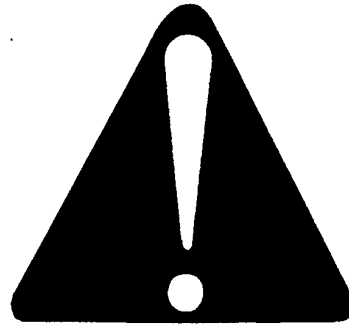
r2c13ue,1731486736451 -19-13NOV24-1/1

Safety

Recognize Safety Information

This is a safety-alert symbol. When you see this symbol on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for personal injury.

Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.



T81389 —UN—28JUN13

DX,ALERT -19-03OCT22-1/1

Follow Safety Instructions

Carefully read all safety messages in this manual and on your machine safety signs. Keep safety signs in good condition. Replace missing or damaged safety signs. Be sure new equipment components and repair parts include the current safety signs. Replacement safety signs are available from your John Deere dealer.

There can be additional safety information contained on parts and components sourced from suppliers that is not reproduced in this operator's manual.

Learn how to operate the machine and how to use controls properly. Do not let anyone operate without instruction.

Keep your machine in proper working condition. Unauthorized modifications to the machine may impair the function and/or safety and affect machine life.



TS201 —UN—15APR13

If you do not understand any part of this manual and need assistance, contact your John Deere dealer.

DX,READ -19-01AUG22-1/1

Understand Signal Words

DANGER; The signal word DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING; The signal word WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION; The signal word CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury. CAUTION may also be used to alert against unsafe practices associated with events which could lead to personal injury.

A signal word—DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION—is used with the safety-alert symbol. DANGER identifies the most serious hazards. DANGER or WARNING safety signs are located near specific hazards. General



precautions are listed on CAUTION safety signs. CAUTION also calls attention to safety messages in this manual.

DX,SIGNAL -19-05OCT16-1/1

TS187 —19—30SEP88

Spanish Safety Signs and Operator's Manual

Spanish versions of the Operator's Manual and safety signs are available for this machine through authorized John Deere dealers. See your John Deere dealer.



TS201 — UN — 15APR13

OUO6075,0000145 -19-27SEP21-1/1

Observe Road Traffic Regulations

Always observe local road traffic regulations when using public roads.



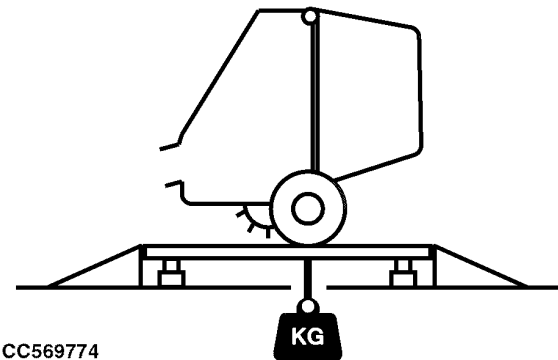
H28930 — UN — 30JUN89

FX,ROAD -19-01MAY91-1/1

Machine Weight

Any modification of the machine may impact the conformity of the machine to meet local traffic regulation.

Do not modify the machine nor add any non-genuine John Deere parts onto the machine.



CC569774

CC569774 — UN — 05APR23

ga87848,1680679934353 -19-12APR23-1/1

Store Attachments Safely

Stored attachments such as dual wheels, cage wheels, and loaders can fall and cause serious injury or death.

Securely store attachments and implements to prevent falling. Keep playing children and bystanders away from storage area.



TS219 —UN—23AUG88

DX,STORE -19-03MAR93-1/1

Prepare For Emergencies

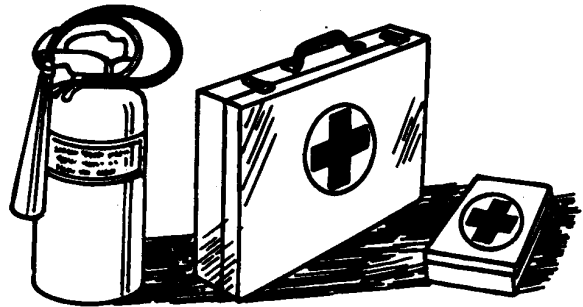
Be prepared if a fire starts.

1. Eject bale immediately.
2. Move tractor and baler upwind 9 m (30 ft) away from flammable material.
3. Raise gate and engage gate lock valve.
4. Use fire extinguisher or other water supply to put out fire.

A 9.5 L (2-1/2 gal) pressurized-water fire extinguisher is recommended. See manufacturers recommendation for inspection and maintenance.

Keep first aid kit handy.

Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



TS291 —UN—15APR13

CC03745,000046A -19-21JAN03-1/1

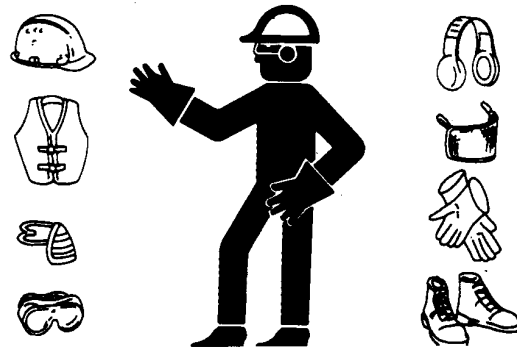
Wear Protective Clothing

Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.

Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating machine.

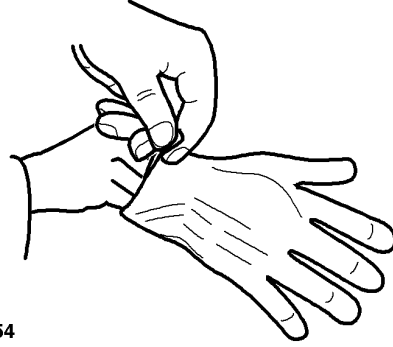


TS206 —UN—15APR13

DX,WEAR -19-10SEP90-1/1

Handle Knives

Prevent personal injury by wearing safety gloves to handle knives.



CC1026954

CC1026928 —UN—26JAN05

GA87848,0000473 -19-24OCT17-1/1

Stay Clear of Rotating Drivelines

Entanglement in rotating driveline can cause serious injury or death.

Keep tractor master shield and driveline shields in place at all times. Make sure rotating shields turn freely.

Only use power take-off driveshafts with adequate guards and shields.

Wear close fitting clothing. Stop the engine and be sure that PTO driveline is stopped before making adjustments, connections, or cleaning out PTO driven equipment.

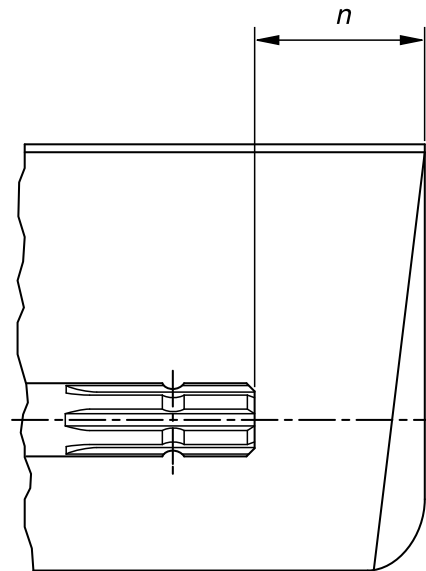
Do not install any adapter device between the tractor and the primary implement PTO driveshaft that will allow a 1000 rpm tractor shaft to power a 540 rpm implement at speeds higher than 540 rpm.

Do not install any adapter device that results in a portion of the rotating implement shaft, tractor shaft, or the adapter to be unguarded. The tractor master shield shall overlap the end of the splined shaft and the added adaptor device as outlined in the table.

The angle at which the primary implement PTO driveshaft can be inclined may be reduced depending on the shape and size of the tractor master shield and the shape and size of the guard of the primary implement PTO driveshaft.

Do not raise implements high enough to damage the tractor master shield or guard of primary implement PTO driveshaft. Detach the PTO driveline shaft if it is necessary to increase implement height. (See Attching/Detaching PTO Driveline)

When using Type 3/4 PTO, inclination and turning angles may be reduced depending on type of PTO master shield and coupling rails.



TS 1644 —UN—22AUG95

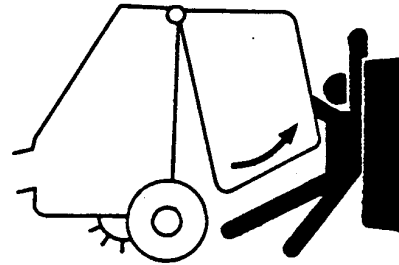
H96219 —UN—29APR10

PTO Type	Diameter	Splines	$n \pm 5 \text{ mm (0.20 in.)}$
1	35 mm (1.378 in.)	6	85 mm (3.35 in.)
2	35 mm (1.378 in.)	21	85 mm (3.35 in.)
3	45 mm (1.772 in.)	20	100 mm (4.00 in.)
4	57.5 mm (2.264 in.)	22	100 mm (4.00 in.)

DX,PTO -19-28FEB17-1/1

Protect Bystanders

To prevent crushing injury be sure bystanders stand clear before operating gate and unloading bale.



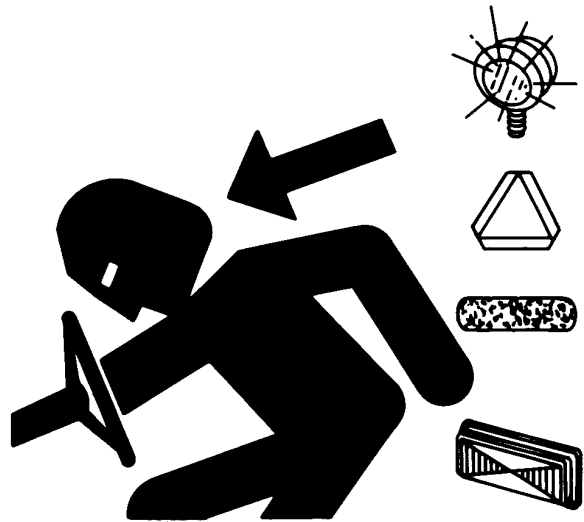
E32162 —UN—12SEP88

CC03745,0000468 -19-21JAN03-1/1

Use Safety Lights and Devices

Prevent collisions between other road users, slow moving tractors with attachments or towed equipment, and self-propelled machines on public roads. Frequently check for traffic from the rear, especially in turns, and use turn signal lights.

Use headlights, flashing warning lights, and turn signals day and night. Follow local regulations for equipment lighting and marking. Keep lighting and marking visible, clean, and in good working order. Replace or repair lighting and marking that has been damaged or lost. An implement safety lighting kit is available from your John Deere dealer.



TS951 —UN—12APR90

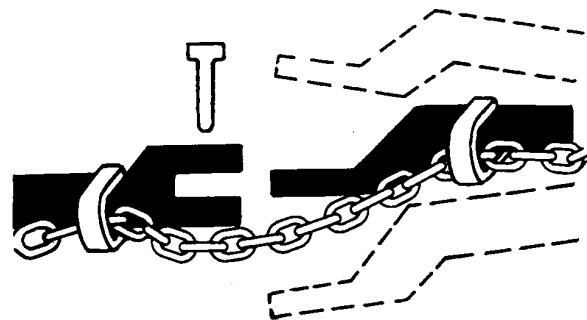
DX,FLASH -19-07JUL99-1/1

Use a Safety Chain

A safety chain will help control drawn equipment should it accidentally separate from the drawbar.

Using the appropriate adapter parts, attach the chain to the tractor drawbar support or other specified anchor location. Provide only enough slack in the chain to permit turning.

See your John Deere dealer for a chain with a strength rating equal to or greater than the gross weight of the towed machine. Do not use safety chain for towing.



TS217 —UN—23AUG88

DX,CHAIN -19-03MAR93-1/1

Observe Maximum Transport Speed

The maximum transport speed for this implement is 20 mph or 30 km/h.

Some tractors are capable of operating at speeds that exceed the maximum transport speed of this implement. Regardless of the maximum speed capability of the tractor being used to tow this implement, do not exceed the implement's maximum transport speed.

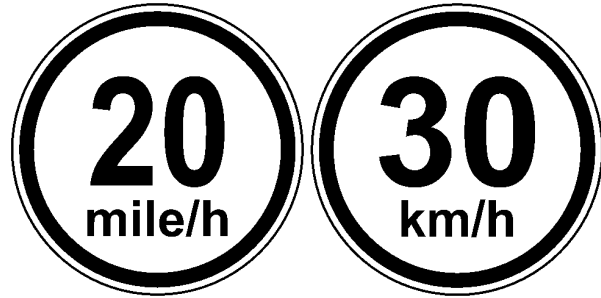
Exceeding the implement's maximum transport speed can result in:

- Loss of control of the tractor/implement combination
- Reduced or no ability to stop during braking
- Implement tire failure
- Damage to the implement structure or its components

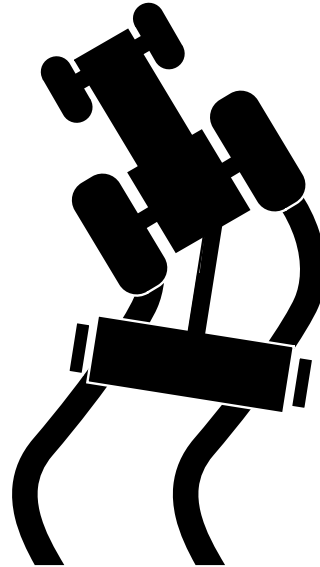
Use additional caution and reduce speed when towing under adverse surface conditions, when turning, and when on inclines.

Do not transport if the implement weighs more than 1.5 times the weight of the tractor.

Never tow this implement with anything other than with an agricultural tractor. Tow only with a properly ballasted tractor.



CC595737



CC595737 —UN—21SEP23

TS1686 —UN—27SEP06

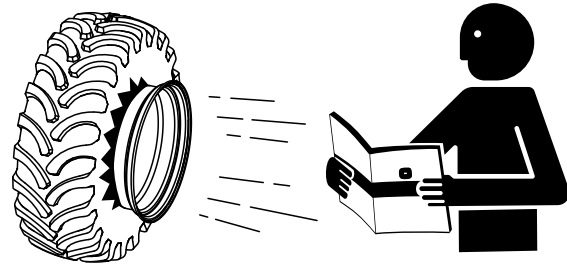
ga87848,1695047438849 -19-19SEP23-1/1

Follow Tire Recommendations

Keep your machine in proper working order.

Use only prescribed tire sizes with correct ratings and inflate to the pressure specified in this manual.

Use of other than prescribed tires may decrease stability, affect steering, result in premature tire failure, or cause other durability or safety issues.



H111235 —UN—13MAY14

DX,TIRE,INFO -19-19MAY14-1/1

Service Tires Safely

Explosive separation of a tire and rim parts can cause serious injury or death.

Do not attempt to mount a tire unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job.

Always maintain the correct tire pressure. Do not inflate the tires above the recommended pressure. Never weld or heat a wheel and tire assembly. The heat can cause an increase in air pressure resulting in a tire explosion. Welding can structurally weaken or deform the wheel.

When inflating tires, use a clip-on chuck and extension hose long enough to allow you to stand to one side and NOT in front of or over the tire assembly. Use a safety cage if available.

Check wheels for low pressure, cuts, bubbles, damaged rims, or missing lug bolts and nuts.



Wheels and tires are heavy. When handling wheels and tires use a safe lifting device or get an assistant to help lift, install, or remove.

DX,VVV,RIMS -19-28FEB17-1/1

RXA0103438 —UN—11JUN09

Check Ballast, Wheel Spacing and Tire Inflation

Make sure ballast, wheel spacing and tire inflation are sufficient to ensure tractor and machine stability in all conditions, especially when operating on hilly fields or in other adverse conditions. Refer to the tractor operator's manual.



CC1031622

OUCC006,0001546 -19-29MAY09-1/1

CC1031622 —UN—29MAY09

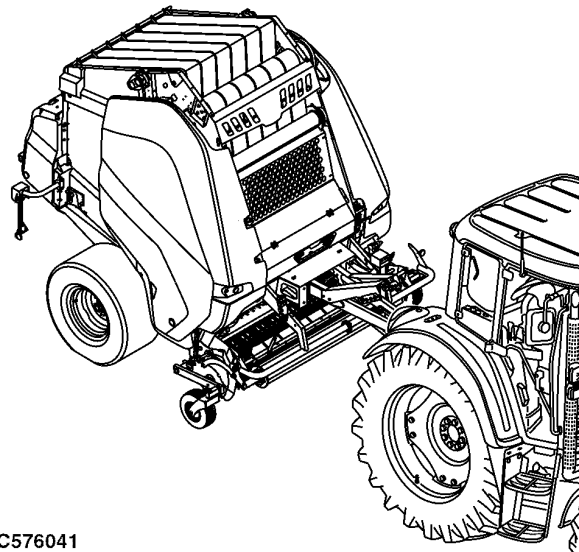
Operate Baler Safely

To avoid injury or death by being pulled into the machine:

DO NOT attempt to feed crop or twine into baler or unplug feed area WHILE BALER IS RUNNING. The baler feeds material faster than you can release it.

Disengage PTO and shut off engine.

Stand clear of baler at all times when machine is operating.



CC576041

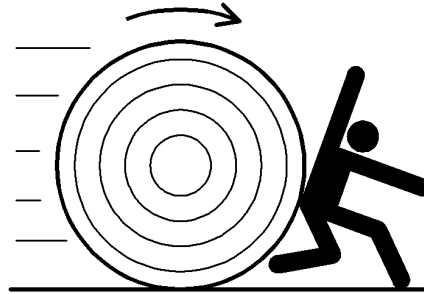
ti81334,1687527930084 -19-23JUN23-1/1

CC576041 —UN—23JUN23

Operate Baler Safely on Slopes

Be especially careful when operating on hillsides. The baler may tip sideways if it strikes a hole, ditch, or other irregularity.

To prevent injury or damage from a rolling bale, discharge bales on level ground or in such a manner that the bale will not roll.



CC1038683

CC1038683 —UN—19NOV12

OUCC006,00019C8 -19-16NOV12-1/1

Prevent Fire

To reduce the risk of fire, follow these guidelines, especially in any dry crop conditions:

- Equip the baler with a water-type fire extinguisher. Large capacity water fire extinguishers are recommended because application of water can cool hot parts to prevent a fire. (See Attachments section.)
- Keep foreign material (crop, chaff, twine, net wrap material) from building up on the machine near potentially hot areas. An example is bearings on the ends of baler rolls. Remove this buildup as part of the regular service operations.
- Prevent damaging seals by avoiding high-pressure power-washing adjacent to the bearings on ends of baler rolls.
- Check bearings on ends of baler rolls regularly for early signs of failure. (See Lubrication and Maintenance section or see your John Deere dealer.)
- If noticeable changes in machine performance occur indicating that a part is beginning to fail, stop baling immediately. Investigate cause of sounds, smells, or sights which are unusual.
- Promptly eject bales after they have been tied or wrapped. Do not use the baler to transport bales from the field. Do not bring a baler, with a bale inside it, into a building. Never leave a baler unattended with a bale inside the chamber.



- Use extreme care if it is necessary to park a baler in a field of a dry crop or stubble. Whenever possible, park baler on bare ground or in an area surrounded by bare ground. Before leaving a baler which has been operating, verify that there are no areas which are hot enough to start a fire. Do not leave the baler unattended near bales which have been baled wet, because spontaneous combustion can occur.
- If service requires using a welder, cutting torch or grinder, refer to Fire Prevention in Service—Baler section for guidelines which prove useful in preventing fire.
- Use extreme care when smoking around baler.

TS227 —UN—15APR13

r2c13ue,1739871322585 -19-18FEB25-1/1

In Case of Fire

CAUTION: Avoid personal injury.

Stop machine immediately at the first sign of fire. Fire may be identified by the smell of smoke or sight of flames. Because fire grows and spreads rapidly, get off the machine immediately and move safely away from the fire. Do not return to the machine! The number one priority is safety.

Call the fire department. A portable fire extinguisher can put out a small fire or contain it until the fire department arrives; but portable extinguishers have limitations. Always put the safety of the operator and bystanders first. If attempting to extinguish a fire, keep your back to the wind with an unobstructed escape path so you can move away quickly if the fire cannot be extinguished.

Read the fire extinguisher instructions and become familiar with their location, parts, and operation before a fire starts. Local fire departments or fire equipment distributors may offer fire extinguisher training and recommendations.

If your extinguisher does not have instructions, follow these general guidelines:



1. Pull the pin. Hold the extinguisher with the nozzle pointing away from you, and release the locking mechanism.
2. Aim low. Point the extinguisher at the base of the fire.
3. Squeeze the lever slowly and evenly.
4. Sweep the nozzle from side-to-side.

DX,FIRE4 -19-22AUG13-1/1

TS227 —JUN—15APR13

Secure Gate Safely

IMPORTANT: Never travel with an open gate at a speed higher than 2 km/h (1.2 mph). Damage to the gate could occur.

Position gate lock device lever (B) in locked position by pulling the lock bushing (A), before working on or around the baler with gate in raised position. Refer to [Gate Lock Valve](#) in Operating the Baler-General Purposes section.

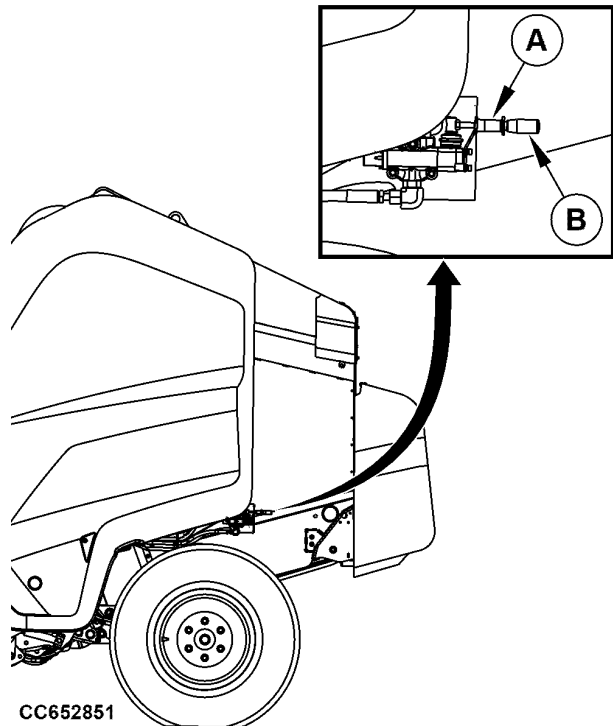
To avoid injury, stay clear of gate while it is being raised and lowered.

Make sure area is clear of bystanders before operating the gate.

Remove foreign objects from machine.

A—Lock Bushing

B—Gate Lock Device Lever



CC652851

r2c13ue,1732002409957 -19-19NOV24-1/1

CC652851 —JUN—20NOV24

Keep Riders Off Machine

Keep riders off.

Riders are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off of the machine. Riders also obstruct the operator's view resulting in the machine being operated in an unsafe manner.



TS249 —UN—23AUG88

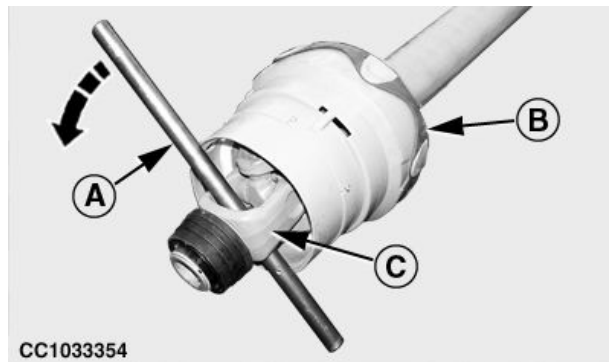
CC03745,0000FE4 -19-03NOV09-1/1

Service Machine Safely

CAUTION: Never use any type of tool or spanner to turn baler by hand while tractor engine is running. Disengage the PTO, place transmission in PARK, engage park brake, shut off engine, remove ignition key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill. Always remove tool as soon as you have finished using it.

To aid in servicing the baler, rotate the baler with one of the following method:

- With a prybar (A):
 - a. Disconnect telescoping hook-up (B) from the tractor PTO shaft.
 - b. Insert prybar (A) between yoke (C) and U-joint.
 - c. Use prybar (A) to rotate the baler as shown.
 - d. When process is finished, remove prybar (A).



CC1033354

A—Prybar
B—Telescoping Hook-Up

C—Yoke

CC1033354 —UN—09DEC10

ga87848,1678438350545 -19-26APR23-1/2

- With a spanner:
 - a. Disconnect telescoping hook-up from the tractor PTO shaft.
 - b. Install a spanner in the nut (A).
 - c. Use the spanner to rotate the baler.
 - d. When the process is finished, remove the spanner.

A—Nut



CC576125

CC576125 —UN—26APR23

ga87848,1678438350545 -19-26APR23-2/2

Maximum Hydraulic Operating Pressure

The baler is designed for a maximum hydraulic operating pressure of 21000 kPa (210 bar, 3045 psi).

Do not connect baler to a tractor with a maximum hydraulic operating pressure over 21000 kPa (210 bar, 3045 psi).

GA87848,0000472 -19-23OCT17-1/1

Practice Safe Maintenance

Understand service procedure before doing work. Keep area clean and dry.

Never lubricate, service, or adjust machine while it is moving. Keep hands, feet, and clothing away from power-driven parts. Disengage all power and operate controls to relieve pressure. Lower equipment to the ground. Stop the engine. Remove the key. Allow machine to cool.

Securely support any machine elements that must be raised for service work.

Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed. Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil, or debris.

On self-propelled equipment, disconnect battery ground cable (-) before making adjustments on electrical systems or welding on machine.

On towed implements, disconnect wiring harnesses from tractor before servicing electrical system components or welding on machine.

Falling while cleaning or working at height can cause serious injury. Use a ladder or platform to easily reach each location. Use sturdy and secure footholds and handholds.



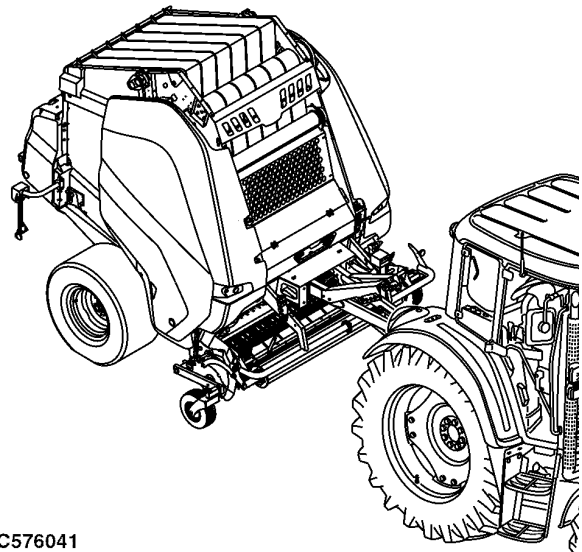
DX,SERV -19-28FEB17-1/1

TS218 —UN—23AUG88

Protect People and Animals

Never allow anyone to walk or work near a running machine.

Be sure that people, livestock or pets are not standing in the working area of the machine while operating.



CC576041

t181334,1687527998265 -19-23JUN23-1/1

CC576041 —UN—23JUN23

Avoid High-Pressure Fluids

Inspect hydraulic hoses periodically – at least once per year – for leakage, kinking, cuts, cracks, abrasion, blisters, corrosion, exposed wire braid or any other signs of wear or damage.

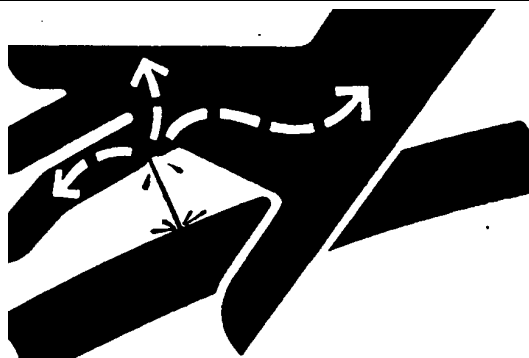
Replace worn or damaged hose assemblies immediately with John Deere approved replacement parts.

Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within



a few hours or gangrene may result. Doctors unfamiliar with this type of injury should reference a knowledgeable medical source. Such information is available in English from Deere & Company Medical Department in Moline, Illinois, U.S.A., by calling 1-800-822-8262 or +1 309-748-5636.

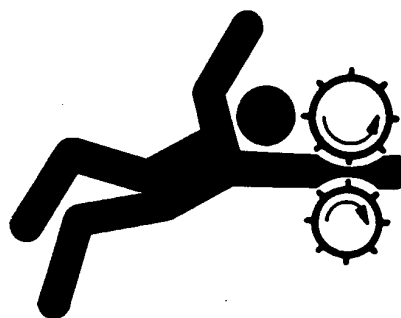
DX,FLUID -19-12OCT11-1/1

X9811 —UN—23AUG88

Service Machines Safely

Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing, or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.



DX,LOOSE -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS228 —UN—23AUG88

Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating

Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

Remove paint before heating:

- Remove paint a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) from area to be affected by heating. If paint cannot be removed, wear an approved respirator before heating or welding.
- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

Do not use a chlorinated solvent in areas where welding will take place.



Do all work in an area that is well ventilated to carry toxic fumes and dust away.

Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

DX,PAINT -19-24JUL02-1/1

TS220 —UN—15APR13

Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials. Pressurized lines can accidentally burst when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area.



TS953 —UN—15MAY90

DX,TORCH -19-10DEC04-1/1

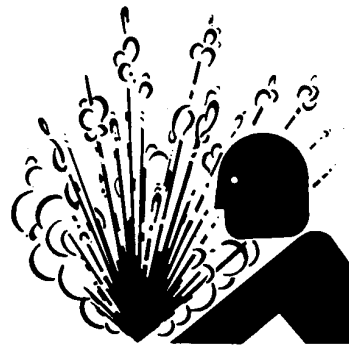
Service Accumulator Systems Safely

Escaping fluid or gas from systems with pressurized accumulators that are used in air conditioning, hydraulic, and air brake systems can cause serious injury. Extreme heat can cause the accumulator to burst, and pressurized lines can be accidentally cut. Do not weld or use a torch near a pressurized accumulator or pressurized line.

Relieve pressure from the pressurized system before removing accumulator.

Relieve pressure from the hydraulic system before removing accumulator. Never attempt to relieve hydraulic system or accumulator pressure by loosening a fitting.

Accumulators cannot be repaired.



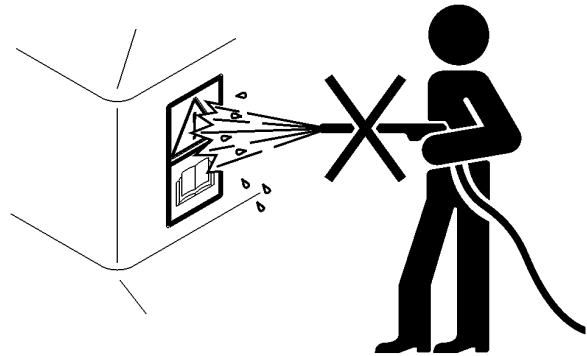
TS281 —UN—15APR13

DX,WW,ACCLA2 -19-22AUG03-1/1

Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Safety Signs

Pressurized water can remove or damage safety signs. Avoid to direct high-pressure jet on safety signs.

Immediately replace missing or damaged safety signs. Replacement safety signs are available from your John Deere dealer.



CC662804 —UN—11FEB25

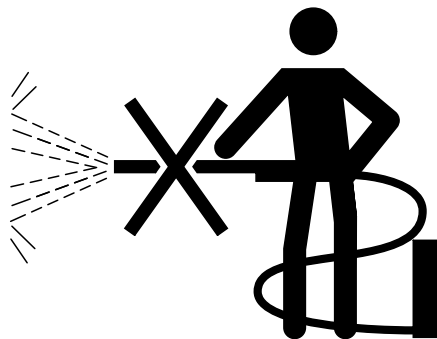
oucc005,1739279048564 -19-11FEB25-1/1

Avoid High-Pressure Jet for Cleaning Parts

Pressurized water can cause significant damage and malfunction.

Never use high pressure jet to clean:

- Electronic/electrical components and connectors
- Hydraulic cylinders and valves
- Bearings
- Chains and drivelines



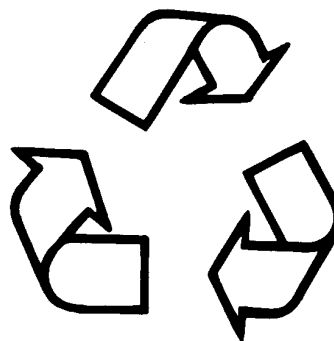
E80015 —UN—25SEP15

oucc005,1738570862396 -19-11FEB25-1/1

Decommissioning — Proper Recycling and Disposal of Fluids and Components

Safety and environmental stewardship measures must be taken into account when decommissioning a machine and/or component. These measures include the following:

- Use appropriate tools and personal protective equipment such as clothing, gloves, face shields or glasses, during the removal or handling of objects and materials.
- Follow instructions for specialized components.
- Release stored energy by lowering suspended machine elements, relaxing springs, disconnecting the battery or other electrical power, and releasing pressure in hydraulic components, accumulators, and other similar systems.
- Minimize exposure to components which may have residue from agricultural chemicals, such as fertilizers and pesticides. Handle and dispose of these components appropriately.
- Carefully drain engines, fuel tanks, radiators, hydraulic cylinders, reservoirs, and lines before recycling components. Use leak-proof containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers.
- Do not pour waste fluids onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
- Observe all national, state, and local laws, regulations, or ordinances governing the handling or disposal of waste fluids (example: oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid);



TS1133 —UN—15APR13

- filters; batteries; and, other substances or parts. Burning of flammable fluids or components in other than specially designed incinerators may be prohibited by law and could result in exposure to harmful fumes or ashes.
- Service and dispose of air conditioning systems appropriately. Government regulations may require a certified service center to recover and recycle air conditioning refrigerants which could damage the atmosphere if allowed to escape.
 - Evaluate recycling options for tires, metal, plastic, glass, rubber, and electronic components which may be recyclable, in part or completely.
 - Contact your local environmental or recycling center, or your John Deere dealer for information on the proper way to recycle or dispose of waste.

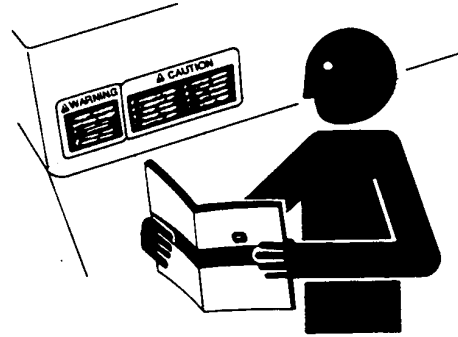
DX,DRAIN -19-01JUN15-1/1

Safety Signs

Replace Safety Signs

Replace missing or damaged safety signs. Use this operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.

There can be additional safety information contained on parts and components sourced from suppliers that is not reproduced in this operator's manual.

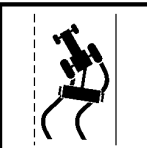


TS201 —UN—15APR13

DX,SIGNS -19-18AUG09-1/1

Warning: Transporting

CC657682 —19—06FEB25

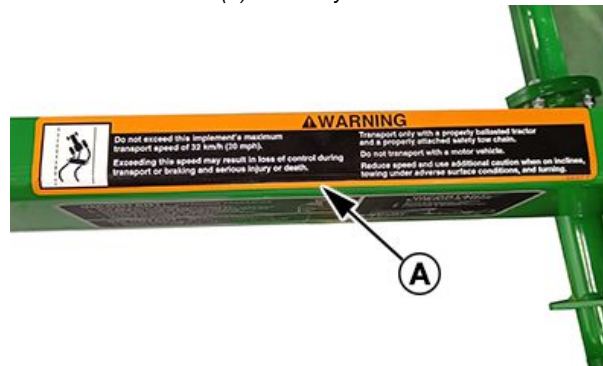


⚠ WARNING

Do not exceed this implement's maximum transport speed of 32 km/h (20 mph).
Exceeding this speed may result in loss of control during transport or braking and serious injury or death.

Transport only with a properly ballasted tractor and a properly attached safety tow chain.
Do not transport with a motor vehicle.
Reduce speed and use additional caution when on inclines, towing under adverse surface conditions, and turning.

(A) — Safety Decal



Left-Hand Side Shown

A—Transporting Safety Sign

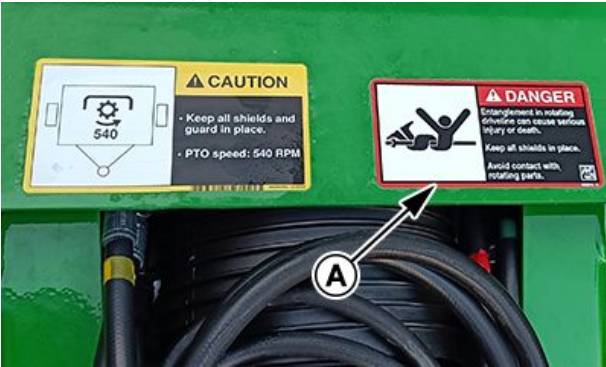
CC657705 —UN—17FEB25

r2c13ue,1733215314150 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Danger: Rotating Driveline



(A) — Rotating Driveline



PTO Cover

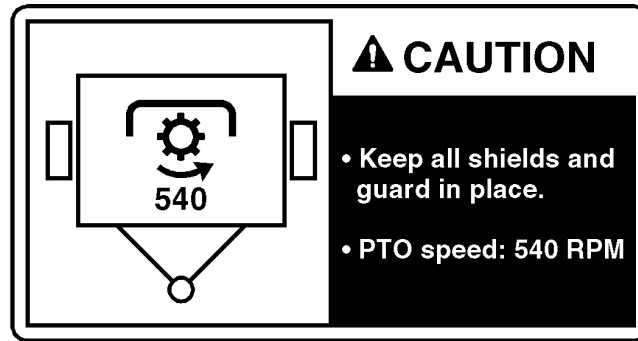
A—Rotating Driveline Safety Sign

CC657687 —19—07FEB25

CC657693 —UN—17FEB25

r2c13ue,1733215314083 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Caution: 540 RPM PTO



(A) — 540 RPM PTO



PTO Cover

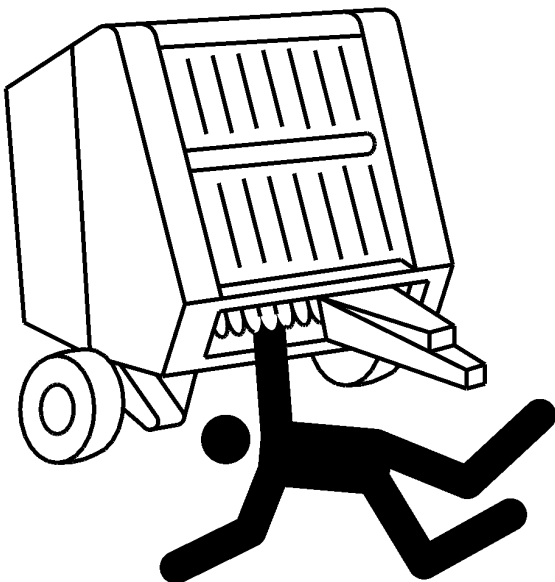
A—540 RPM PTO Safety Sign

r2c13ue,1733215314108 -19-17FEB25-1/1

CC137529A —19—05DEC18

CC657694 —UN—17FEB25

Danger: Don't Take Chances!





DANGER

DON'T TAKE CHANCES!

To avoid injury or death by being pulled into the machine:

DO NOT attempt to feed crop or twine into baler or unplug feed area **WHILE BALER IS RUNNING**. The baler feeds material faster than you can release it.

Disengage PTO and shut off engine.

CC657685 —19—06FEB25

(A) — Don't Take Chances

A—Don't Take Chances Safety Sign



Right-Hand Door (Front)

CC657686 —UN—17FEB25



Left-Hand Door (Front)

CC657685 —UN—17FEB25

r2c13ue,1733215314061 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Caution: Fire



(A) — Fire



Left-Hand Door (Front)

A—Fire Safety Sign

r2c13ue,1733215314008 -19-17FEB25-1/1

CC652877 —19—04DEC24

CC657697 —UN—17FEB25

CC652880 —19—04DEC24

Caution: Keep Away From Power Driven Parts



CAUTION

1. Keep all shields in place.
2. Disengage and shut off all engine and/or motor power before servicing or unclogging machine.
3. Keep hands, feet and clothing away from power-driven parts.
4. Do not leave running machine unattended.

(A) — Keep Away from Power Driven Parts

A—Power Driven Parts Safety Sign



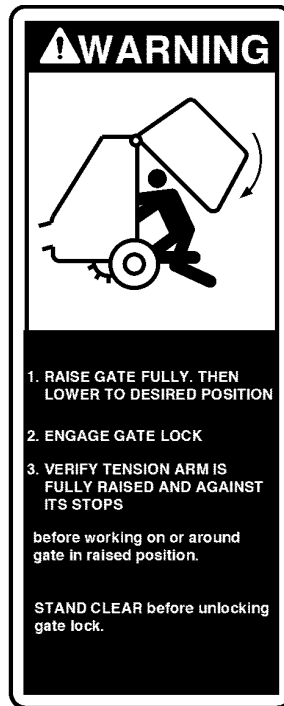
Right-Hand Side (Door Open)



Left-Hand Side (Door Open)

r2c13ue,1733215313962 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Warning: Engage Gate Lock



(A) — Engage Gate Lock

A—Engage Gate Lock Safety Sign

CC657686 —19—07FEB25

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1733215314034 -19-17FEB25-1/2



Right-Hand Door (Back)

CC657699 —UN—17FEB25



Left-Hand Door (Back)

CC657698 —UN—17FEB25



Right-Hand Side (Door Open)

CC657701 —UN—17FEB25

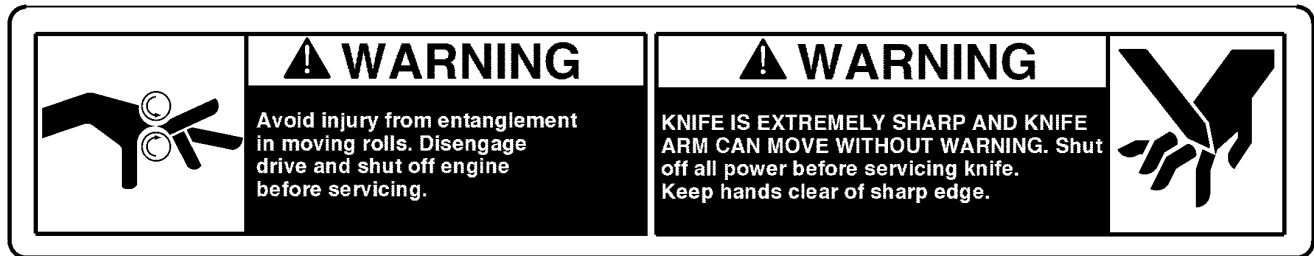


Left-Hand Side (Door Open)

CC657700 —UN—17FEB25

r2c13ue,1733215314034 -19-17FEB25-2/2

Warning: Entanglement in Moving Rolls and Net Knife



CC657683 — 19-06FEB25

(A) — Entanglement in Moving Rolls and Net Knife



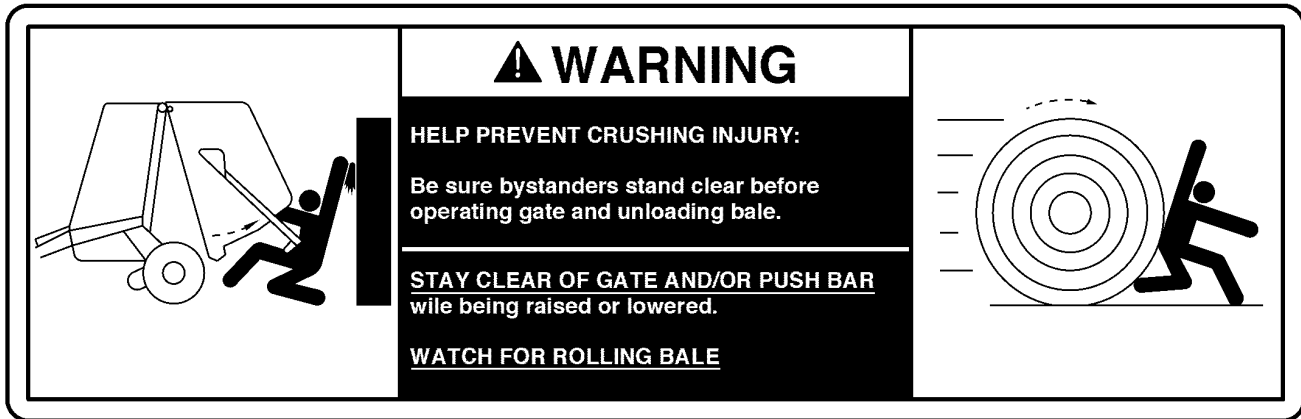
CC657706 — UN-17FEB25

Net Binding (Net Cover Open)

A—Entanglement in Moving Rolls and Net Knife Safety Sign

r2c13ue,1733215314128 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Warning: Opening Gate and Rolling Bale



(A) — Opening Gate and Rolling Bale



Net Cover

A—Opening Gate and Rolling Bale Safety Sign

CC657684 —19—06FEB25

CC657704 —UN—17FEB25

r2c13ue,1733215313909 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Preparing the Tractor

Adjust Drawbar

CAUTION: Before adjustment, always make sure the PTO is switched off, the tractor engine is shut off and the ignition key is removed.

IMPORTANT: Before attaching baler, be sure to adjust drawbar. Make sure that is no interference between PTO shields and hitch device.

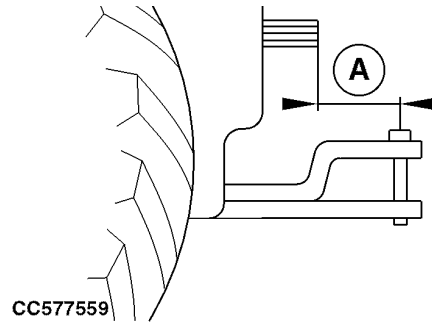
Vertically align drawbar hitch pin hole with centerline of tractor PTO shaft.

NOTE: Consider the other types of hitch as drawbar hitch.

Set drawbar to the following specification:

	Specification
End of PTO	
Shaft-to-Drawbar	
Hitch Pin Hole Axis	
(A)—Distance.....	356 mm maximum (14 in)

If specification cannot be obtained, see your John Deere dealer.



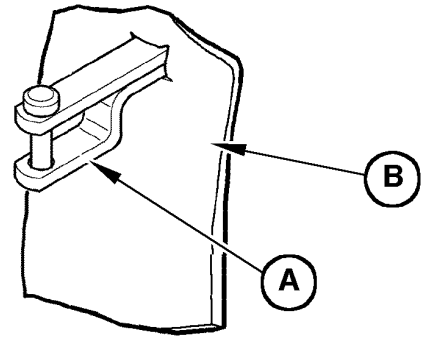
A—356 mm (14 in)

r2c13ue,1739280789510 -19-12FEB25-1/1

CC577559—UN—10MAY23

Using Drawbar Shield

If a tractor drawbar (A) catches and disturbs the windrow under the tractor, a drawbar shield (B) can be used.



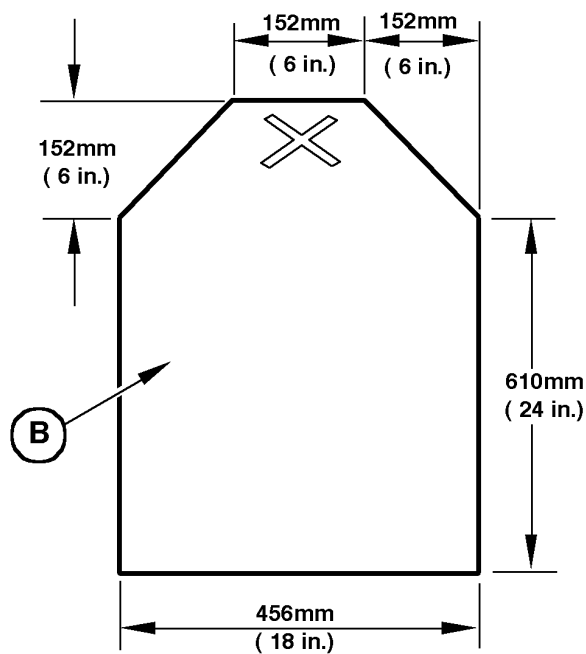
CC007918

Continued on next page

CC,570RB 003439 -19-15SEP98-1/2

CC007918—UN—12DEC96

Use the sketch opposite as an example to make a shield (B) using 2 or 4 ply belting.



CC007919

CC007919 —UN—25NOV/96

CC,570RB 003439 -19-15SEP98-2/2

Select Tractor PTO Speed

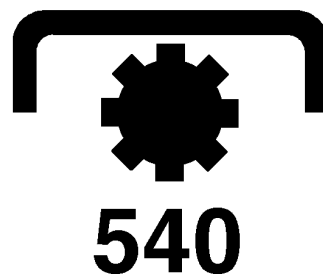
NOTE: Refer to tag on the front of baler to select tractor PTO speed.

IMPORTANT: Under no circumstances should a baler equipped for 540 rpm PTO drive be operated with a tractor at 750 or 1000 rpm PTO speed.

The tractor PTO shaft size must be 3.5 cm (1-3/8 in.).

Always operate the baler with tractor PTO speed at 540 rpm.

Refer to the tractor Operator's Manual to install the appropriate PTO shaft and set the PTO speed.



CC1020007

CC1020007 —UN—09JUL01

GA87848,0000421 -19-25OCT17-1/1

Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow

Set tractor selective control valves to the maximum flow. This flow should allow the gate to open within approximately 5 seconds. See your tractor operator's manual to make adjustments.

Make sure the SCV lever is in neutral position when SCV is not used.

For tractors with detent time, set detent time to 0.



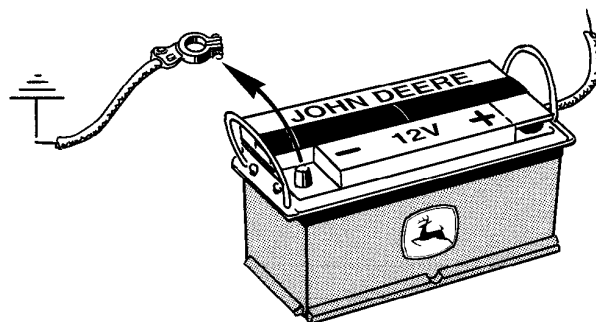
CC000833

CC000833 —UN—05APR95

ga87848,1683116240202 -19-26JUN23-1/1

Round Baler Electrical Circuit and Control Power Supply Requirement

The round baler electrical circuit and control are designed for use on 12 V electrical systems with negative ground.



CC1020363

CC1020363 —UN—23AUG01

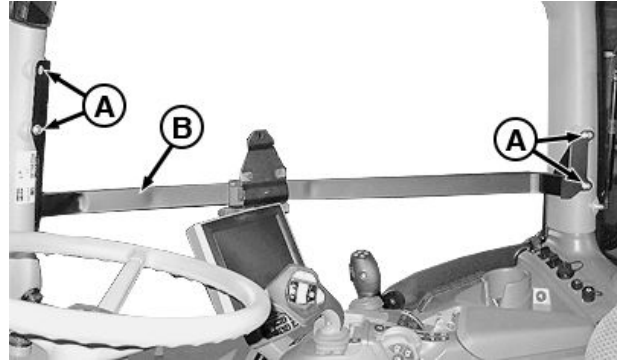
CC03745,0000288 -19-23AUG01-1/1

Install Monitor Support (6000, 6M, 6R, 7000 and 7R Tractors Series)

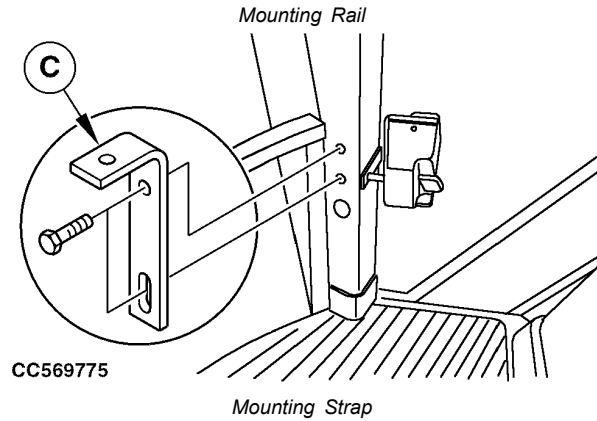
To install monitor to the mounting rail (B) or mounting strap (C), see your tractor Operator's Manual.

A—Mounting Point
B—Mounting Rail

C—Mounting Strap



LX372914 —UN—10JUL20



CC569775 —UN—06APR23

aysdijz,1683710185617 -19-10MAY23-1/1

Install Battery Wiring Harness for Connecting Control Monitor

It is a **MUST** to connect the control monitor to the convenience outlet (A) and special battery harness (B) furnished with the monitor. This will avoid any electrical interferences that could be generated by using only the convenience outlet provided by the tractor. The special harness (B) must be directly connected to the battery straps.

Proceed as follows:

1. Drill a hole into the side wall of the tractor cab, at any convenient place, to install convenience outlet (A).
2. Connect the wires (C), (D), and (E) to the outlet (A) as shown opposite.
3. Route wiring harness (B) through the cab up to the battery.
4. Clamp relevant pins (F), (G), and (H) to the wires. Connect red wire (H) to the positive strap of the battery, red wire (F) to the "ON" position of the dashboard main switch, and black wire (G) to the negative strap of the battery.

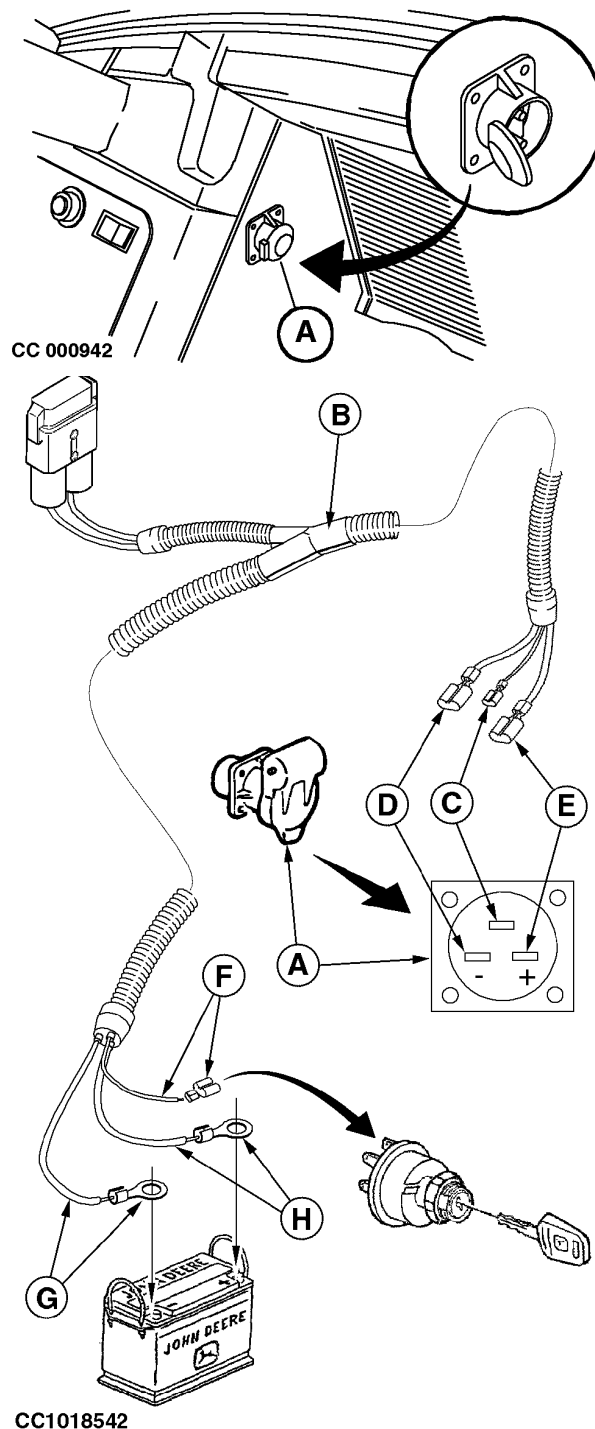
IMPORTANT: Do not connect the positive wires (F) and (H) (RED) to the starter motor solenoid!

NOTE: The special harness (B) is also available as an option for further tractor installation.

NOTE: Disconnect battery wiring harness and monitor wiring harness connector when welding on machine.

A—Convenience Outlet
B—Battery Harness
C—Red Wire (1.5 mm²)
D—Black Wire (6.0 mm²)

E—Red Wire (6.0 mm²)
F—Red (Positive) Wire (1.5 mm²)
G—Black (Negative) Wire (6.0 mm²)
H—Red (Positive) Wire (6.0 mm²)



CC000942 —JUN—05APR95

CC1018542 —JUN—23OCT00

aysdijz,1683706581712 -19-20JUN23-1/1

Install Virtual Terminal (Display) Portable Harness (If Equipped)

IMPORTANT: The convenient power outlet (G) must be connected to the tractor as required.

Make sure tractor convenient power outlet (G) is correctly wired. Wire (B) must be connected to the tractor ignition plus signal.

Connect the virtual terminal (display) portable harness (D) to the following equipment:

- Monitor (F).
- Europe—North America Adapter (H).

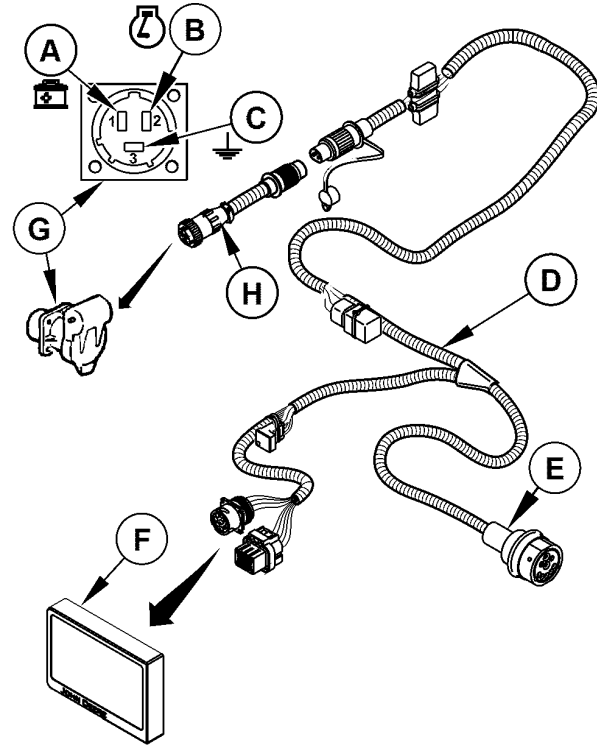
Connect the Europe—North America Adapter (H) to the convenient power outlet (G).

Place the connector for machine wiring harness (E) out of the cab.

IMPORTANT: Before disconnecting the virtual terminal (display) portable harness, wait that the monitor is fully shut down.

- A—Red (Positive) Wire
(6 mm² (10 AWG))
- B—Red (Positive) Wire
(1.5 mm² (6 AWG))
- C—Black (Negative) Wire
(6 mm² (10 AWG))
- D—Virtual Terminal (Display)
Portable Harness

- E—Connector for Machine
Wiring Harness
- F—Monitor
- G—Convenient Power Outlet
- H—Europe—North America
Adapter



CC652845

CC652845—UN—15NOV24

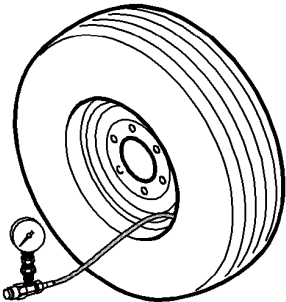
r2c13ue,1731494604306 -19-27NOV24-1/1

Preparing the Baler

Tire Inflation

Refer to the following table to obtain the correct tire pressure.

IMPORTANT: Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads. See Observe Maximum Transport Speed in Safety section.



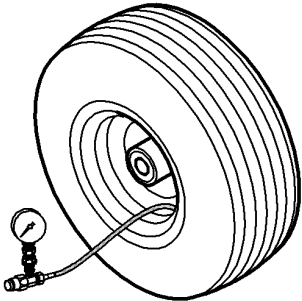
CC1030245

CC1030245 —UN—27SEP07

Tire type	Pressure	
	With maximum transport speed of 25 km/h (15 mph)	With maximum transport speed of 40 km/h (25 mph)
500/50-17 140 A8	110 kPa (1.1 bar; 16 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)

r2c13ue,1731494656185 -19-21NOV24-1/2

Inflate pickup gauge wheels to specified pressure:



CC1030246

CC1030246 —UN—01OCT07

	Pressure
Pickup gauge wheel	140 kPa (1.4 bar; 20 psi)

r2c13ue,1731494656185 -19-21NOV24-2/2

Use Jackstand

Jackstand is equipped with two speeds:

- **Low speed (I)** is used to:

Extend jackstand (A) under load:

- a. Push crank (B) to engage low speed.
- b. Turn clockwise to lift the baler.

- **High speed (II)** is used to:

Extend quickly jackstand (A):

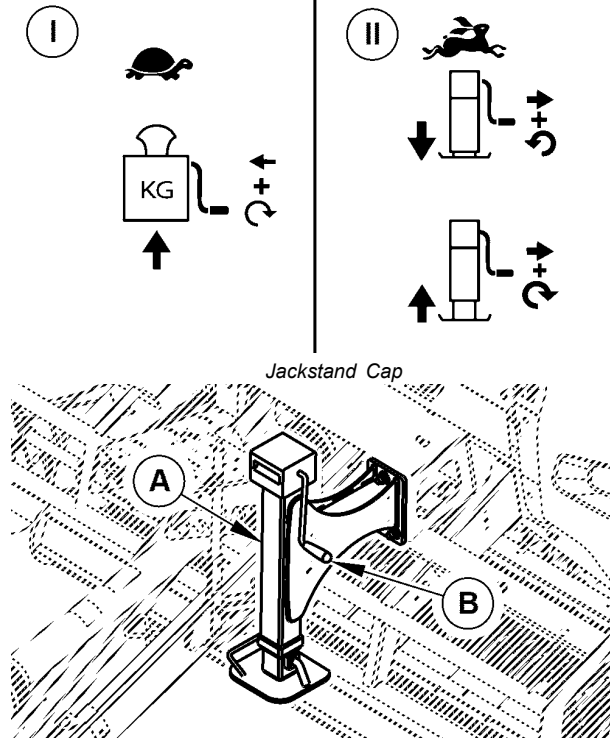
- a. Pull crank (B) to engage high speed.
- b. Turn anti-clockwise until jackstand touches the ground.

Retract jackstand (A):

- a. Pull crank (B) to engage high speed.
- b. Turn clockwise to lower the baler or to retract jackstand (A).

I— Low Speed
II— High Speed

A—Jackstand
B—Crank



r2c13ue.jackstand -19-23JAN25-1/3

CC657654 —UN—15JAN25

CC657655 —UN—09JAN25

Unfold Jackstand:

Before detaching baler from tractor, move jackstand (A) from storage position and place it in position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follows:

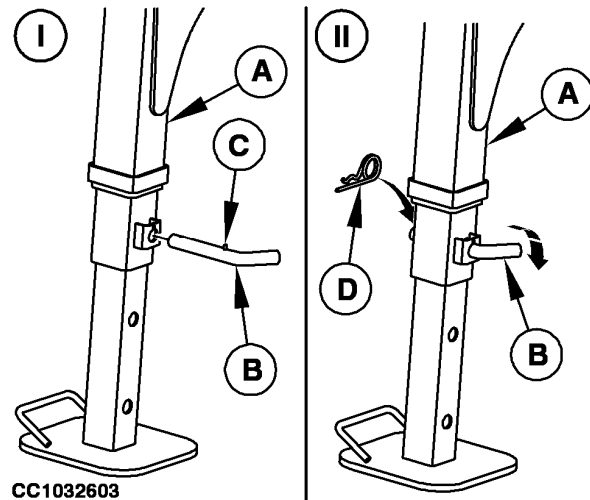
1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

3. Insert spring locking pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter Pin
D—Spring Locking Pin



CC1032603

Continued on next page

r2c13ue.jackstand -19-23JAN25-2/3

CC1032603 —UN—14SEP10

Fold Jackstand:

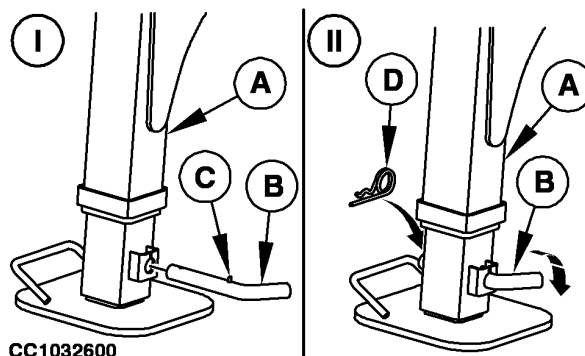
After attaching baler to tractor, secure jackstand (A) in its storage position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follows:

1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand in storing position.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

3. Insert spring locking pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).



CC1032600

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter Pin
D—Spring Locking Pin

r2c13ue.jackstand -19-23JAN25-3/3

CC1032600 —UN—14SEP10

Set Machine Angle

IMPORTANT: The machine angle must be set properly with the tractor used with the baler.

Follow the steps hereafter to set the correct angle of the baler and then adjust the hitch to match with the tractor:

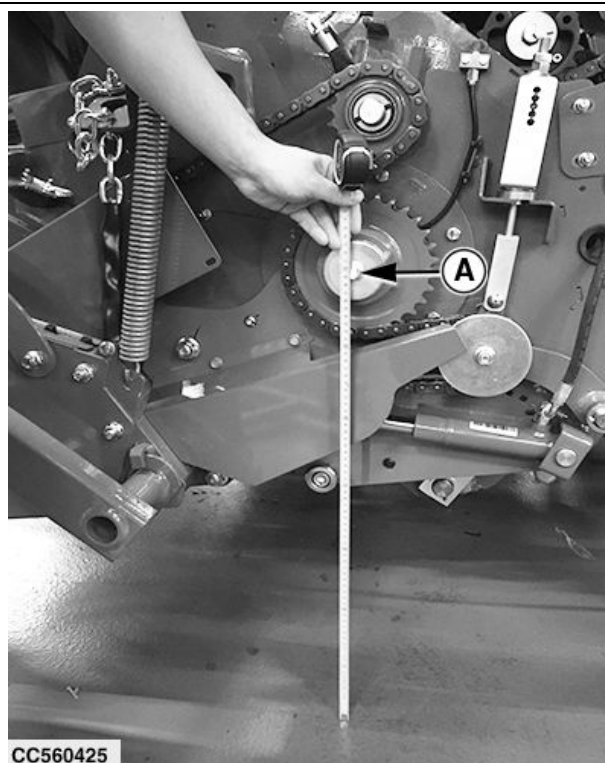
1. Park the baler on flat surface.
2. Adjust the jackstand until the rotor axle (A) reaches the following height:

Tire type	Height
500/50-17	710—740 mm (27.9 in—28.1 in)

NOTE: The height range is measured from the center of the nut to the ground level.

Aim for the top of the range or a bit above to take tractor tire deflection into account.

A—Rotor Axle



CC560425

r2c13ue,1731499196123 -19-13NOV24-1/1

CC560425 —UN—20MAR23

Adjust Tongue

The tongue has to be adjusted using both the hitch bolt and the bolts between the tongue and the baler frame to match the tractor configuration.

IMPORTANT: Before adjusting the tongue, make sure that the tractor tire inflation is correct.

The machine angle must be set before adjusting the tongue, do not change the jackstand position. See Set Machine Angle in this section.

1. Move back the tractor close to baler. Align tractor hitch in front of baler tongue.
2. Set tongue position to match with tractor coupling device.
3. Set hitch (A) as horizontal as possible.
4. Check that the two tongue frames are at the same level.
5. Slightly tighten tongue frame fixing nuts (D), lock nuts (E), hitch fixing nut (C).

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all ring teeth are **FULLY engaged (not standing tip to tip)** when tightening nuts (C), (D), and (E).

6. Tighten tongue frame fixing nuts (D), lock nuts (E), and hitch fixing nut (C) to specified torque.

Specification

Tongue Frame Fixing	
Nuts—Torque.....	700 N·m (516 lb·ft)
Tongue Frame Lock	
Nut—Torque.....	300 N·m (221 lb·ft)
Hitch Fixing	
Nut—Torque.....	620 N·m (450 lb·ft)

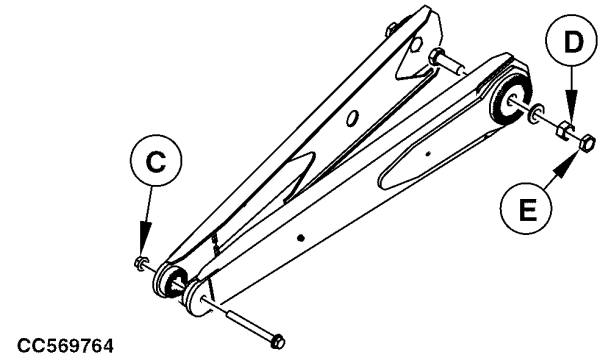
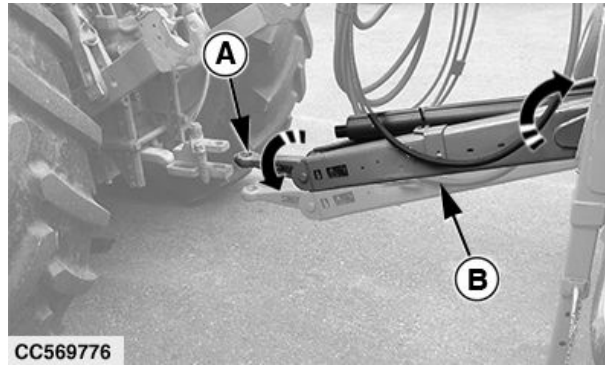
7. Attach baler to the tractor.

IMPORTANT: Always attach the baler to the tractor correctly before driving on road and/or field. See Attach Baler to Tractor in Attaching section.

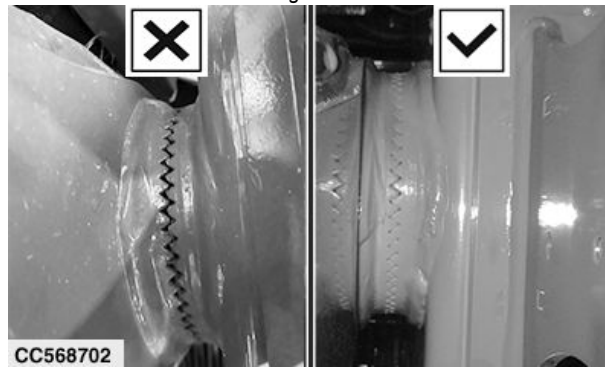
8. Fold the jackstand.
9. Check the height of the rotor axle is within the given range. See Set Machine Angle in this section.

If not, go to step 2 to change the tongue setting.

NOTE: Once the correct machine angle is confirmed, the pickup working height has to be adjusted by



Tongue Nut



Tongue Tighten Error

A—Hitch
B—Tongue Frame
C—Hitch Fixing Nut

D—Tongue Frame Fixing Nut
E—Tongue Frame Lock Nut

using the gauge wheels. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler section.

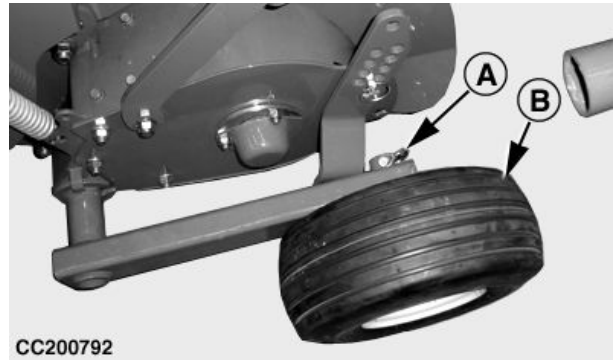
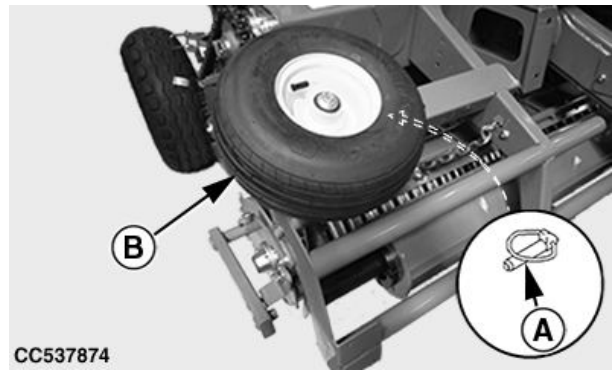
ga87848,1679991710200 -19-06APR23-1/1

Install Standard Gauge Wheels in Working Position

1. Remove quick-lock pin (A).
2. Remove gauge wheel (B) from its bracket.
3. Position gauge wheel (B) on pickup as shown. Secure it with quick-lock pin (A).
4. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Quick-Lock Pin

B—Gauge Wheel



CC537874 —UN—01JUN22

CC200792 —UN—12APR13

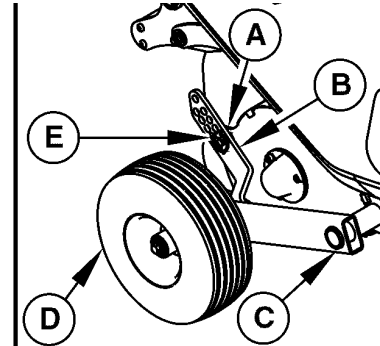
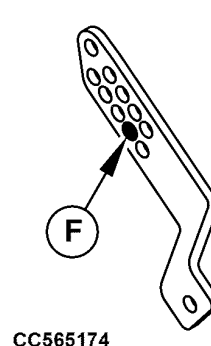
r2c13ue,1731503706115 -19-20NOV24-1/2

Initial Setup of the Standard Gauge Wheels:

1. Remove quick-lock pin (A) and pin (E).
2. Select hole position (F) on support (B) as starting position.
3. Install quick-lock pin (A) and pin (E).
4. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.

A—Quick-Lock Pin
B—Support
C—Wheel Arm

D—Gauge Wheel
E—Pin
F—Hole Position



CC565174 —UN—13MAR23

r2c13ue,1731503706115 -19-20NOV24-2/2

Select Net Roll

In order to achieve optimum performance, we recommend the use of **John Deere** net roll:

Net type:	Material width (A)	Core width (B)
Standard	1215—1235 mm (47.8 in—48.6 in)	Maximum 1255 mm (42.4 in)
CoverEdge	1285—1305 mm (50.6 in—51.4 in)	Maximum 1320 mm (60 in)

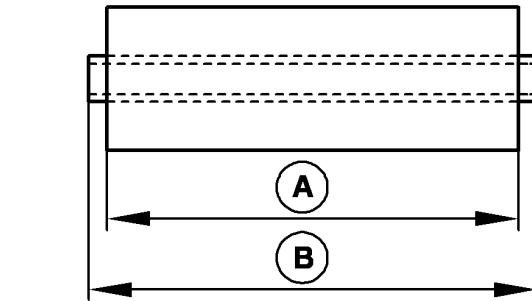
IMPORTANT: Net roll diameter must not exceed 30 cm (11.8 in).

The number of net turns can be adjusted.

A—Material Width

B—Core Width

CC421116



CC1033200

zlvxplw,1726056306808 -19-13SEP24-1/1

CC421116 —UN—22OCT20

CC1033200 —UN—05AUG10

Care of Net Roll

IMPORTANT: Protect net roll material from moisture and damage. Do not remove protective covering until ready for use. Snags can cause erratic

performance and affect bale weatherability. Do not use sticky tape directly on net.

Store in a cool, dry place, away from direct sunlight.

CC03745,000023B -19-05JUL01-1/1

Care of Net Binding Device

Before operating the baler proceed as follows:

Wipe off feed rolls and check for any sticky material. NEVER use aggressive cleaning agents such as petrol, benzine, turpentine oil or similar cleaning solvents to clean rubber feed roll.

It is recommended to use:

- Water
- Soap water

Apply talcum powder to rubber feed roll.

ga87848,1683268972312 -19-31MAY23-1/1

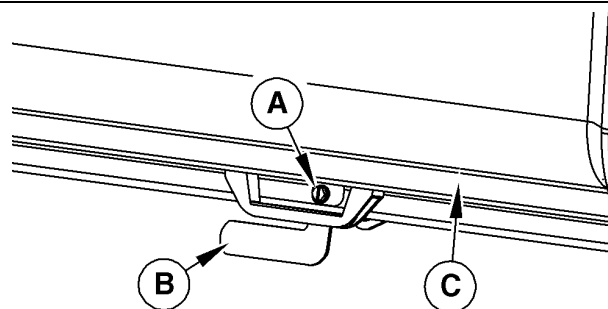
Load Net Roll

⚠ CAUTION: Cover is spring loaded, and moves up quickly when released.

1. Engage tractor park lock, shut off tractor engine, and remove key.
2. Unlock net binding cover (C) by lock (A) with a suitable tool (13 mm across flats).

Hold cover (C) in position then open it by pull on latch (B).

3. Remove all package material (staples, tape, etc.) from net roll before installing.



CC310414

A—Lock
B—Latch

C—Net Binding Cover

CC310414 —UN—18APR17

Continued on next page

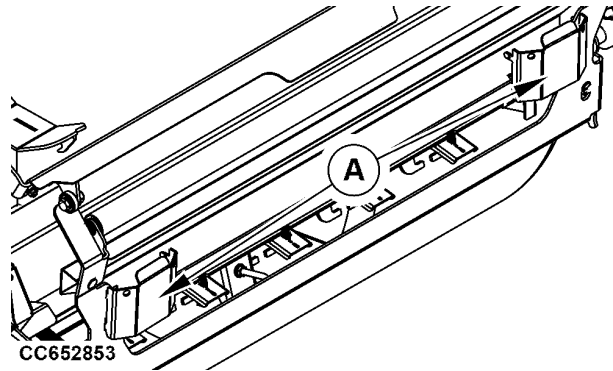
r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-1/7

4. Install net roll:

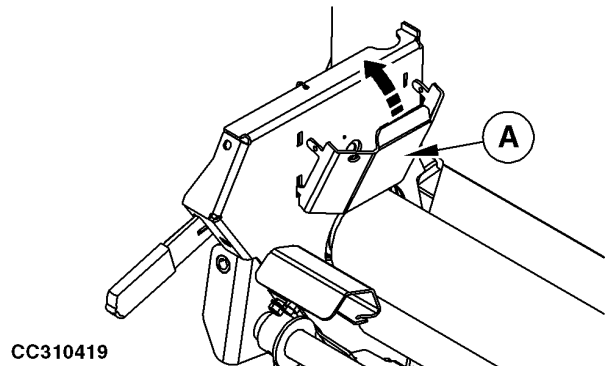
- For standard net roll, remove stops (A) from their bracket, and install them on each side as shown. Secure stops (A) on each side with spring locking pin (B).
- For CoverEdge roll, go to next step.

A—Stops

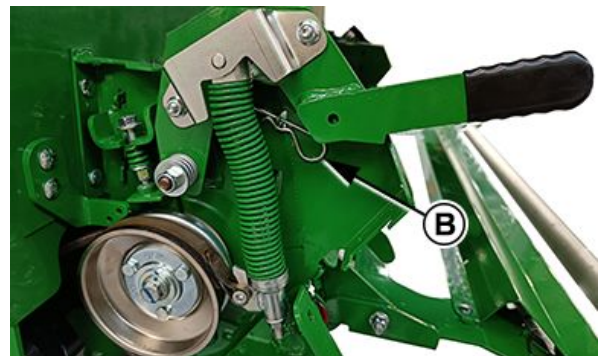
B—Spring Locking Pin



CC652853 —UN—20NOV24



CC310419 —UN—19APR17



CC652873 —UN—02DEC24

r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-2/7

5. Swing lower tension arm out.

6. Place net roll to loading position as shown:

- For standard net and CoverEdge roll, place the two colored stripes on the left side of the machine.
- For roll with different pattern, refer to decal inside net cover.

A—Loading Position



CC652871 —UN—02DEC24

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-3/7

7. Release net feed roll brake:

Pull lever (A) down, and out, then raise it to disengage the brake.

NOTE: Once unlocked, hold lever (A) in upper position.

A—Lever



CC652875 —UN—02DEC24

r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-4/7

8. Unroll net, and gather the loose ends of net.

Twist the net (B) and make a loop.

9. Thread loop of net between rubber roll (A), and steel roll (D) as illustrated.

IMPORTANT: Do not thread more than 20 mm (0.78 in) of loop (C) between the two rolls as it causes material to wrap around the rolls.

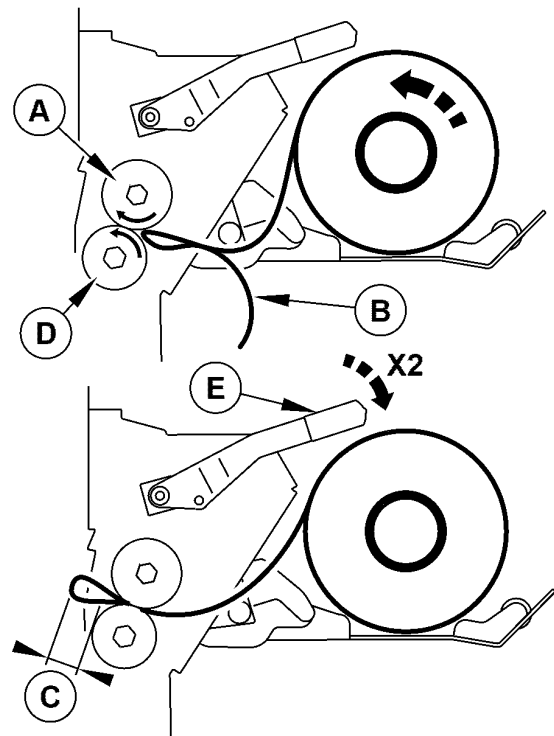
10. Engage and disengage the brake lever (E) two times, or as necessary, to advance the material through the feed rolls. Ensure that the distance (C) is not more than 20 mm (0.78 in).

A—Rubber Roll
B—Net
C—20 mm (0.78 in)

D—Steel Roll
E—Brake Lever



CC652872 —UN—02DEC24



CC647143

CC647143 —UN—24OCT24

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-5/7

11. Pull lever (A) down to engage net feed roll brake. Feed rolls should not be able to rotate.

IMPORTANT: If feed rolls can still be rotated with brake, see **Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)** in Service section.

A—Brake Lever



CC652875 —UN—02DEC24

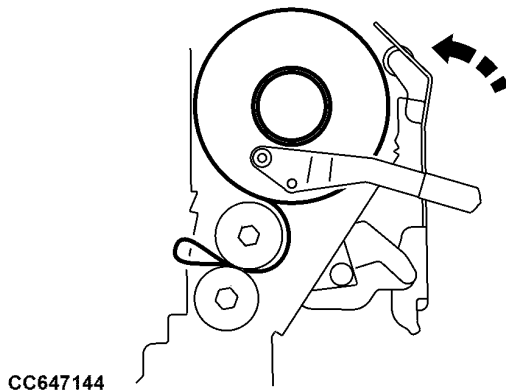
r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-6/7

12. Swing lower tension arm up, and lift the net roll on the rubber roll, against the stainless steel plates.
13. Rotate net roll to remove slack.
14. Cut off excessive material.
15. Rear net box can contain two net rolls. One for the net binding process (B), and an additional net roll (A) stored on the top.
16. To close cover, pull it down until latch is engaged.

IMPORTANT: To avoid net wrapping on the rubber roller, release the net feed roll brake and reset the brake (no more than twice) before using the baler at the beginning of each day.

A—Additional Net Roll

B—Net for Binding Process



CC647144

CC647144 —UN—14OCT24



CC652870 —UN—02DEC24

r2c13ue,1739873063973 -19-18FEB25-7/7

Check Wheel Nut Torque

IMPORTANT: Whenever a wheel has been removed and installed, check wheel nut torque at intervals specified in Break-In Period section.

Tighten wheel nuts diagonally to the following specification:

	Specification
Wheel Nuts—Torque.....	270 N·m (200 lb·ft)



CC652846 —UN—14NOV24

r2c13ue,1732016968539 -19-19NOV24-1/1

Attaching

Use Only Approved Hitch

CAUTION: Only use a hitch approved for your machine in combination with the appropriate tractor coupling device.

Always check that your hitch complies with local regulation.

Approved Hitches for Round Balers	
Hitches	Recommended tongue position
DC217306	Low
DC221194	Low
DC223340	Low
DC223342	High
DC223344	Low
DC223909	Low
DC224136	Low
DC225809	Low
DC226463	Low
DC239698	Low

Hitches are designed for hitching on the following tractor hitches:

Ball-Type Hitch: DC217306; for tractor 80 mm ball coupling device (ISO24347).

Clevis Hitch: DC221194; for tractor drawbar (ISO6489-3).

Straight Hitch with 40 mm Eye: DC223340; for tractor tractor trailer hitch (ISO6489-2) or drawbar cat2 (ISO6489-3).

Angled Hitch with 40 mm Eye : DC223342; for tractor trailer hitch (ISO6489-2) or tractor drawbar cat2 (ISO6489-3).

Straight Hitch with 50 mm Eye: DC223344; for tractor pickup hitch (ISO6489-1) or piton-fix hitch (ISO6489-4).

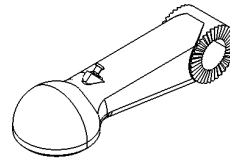
Turnable Hitch with 35 mm Eye: DC223909; for tractor non-swivel trailer hitch (ISO6489-5), piton-fix hitch (ISO6489-4), or tractor drawbar cat3 (ISO6489-3).

Turnable Hitch with 50 mm Eye: DC224136; for tractor non-swivel trailer hitch (ISO6489-5), piton-fix hitch (ISO6489-4), or tractor drawbar cat3 (ISO6489-3).

Straight Hitch with 33 mm Ball Eye: DC225809; for tractor drawbar cat2 (ISO6489-3).

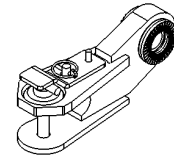
Straight Hitch with 42 mm Ball Eye: DC226463; for tractor drawbar cat3 (ISO6489-3).

CC404700 —UN—16APR20



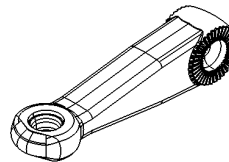
DC217306

CC574297 —UN—12APR23



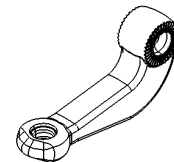
DC221194

CC404697 —UN—16APR20



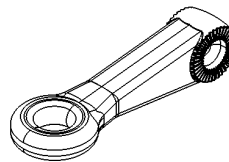
DC223340

CC574299 —UN—13APR23



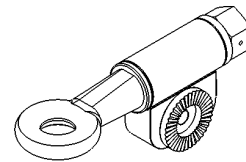
DC223342

CC574298 —UN—13APR23



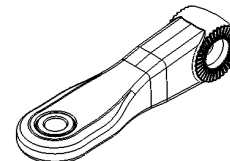
DC223344

CC404702 —UN—16APR20



DC223909, DC224136

CC565104 —UN—22FEB23



DC225809, DC226463

CC565114 —UN—28FEB23

ga87848,1679649110541 -19-13APR23-1/1

Attach Baler to Tractor

1. Adjust drawbar, see [Adjust Drawbar](#) in Preparing the Tractor section.
2. Back up tractor to baler. Align tractor hitch with front of baler tongue.
3. Engage tractor park lock, shut off engine, and remove ignition key.
4. Attach the baler to tractor. See tractor Operator's Manual.
5. Fold jackstand, see [Fold Jackstand](#) in this section.
6. Connect telescoping driveline to tractor PTO shaft, see [Connect Telescoping Driveline to Tractor PTO Shaft](#) in this section.
7. Connect safety chain, see [Connect Safety Chain](#) in this section.
8. Connect to tractor hydraulic system, see [Connect to Tractor Hydraulic System](#) in this section.
9. Connect trailer socket, see [Connect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket](#) in this section.
10. Connect machine wiring harness, see [Connect Machine Wiring Harness](#) in this section.
11. If equipped, connect video camera harness, see [Connect Video Camera Harness\(es\) \(If Equipped\)](#) in this section.

r2c13ue,1731582247900 -19-11FEB25-1/1

Fold Jackstand

After attaching baler to tractor, secure jackstand (A) in its storage position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follows:

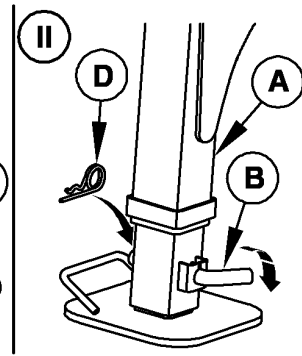
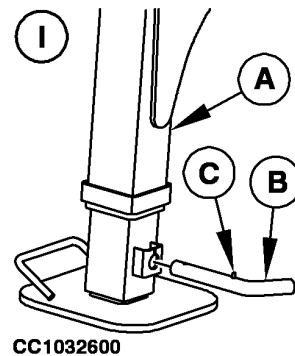
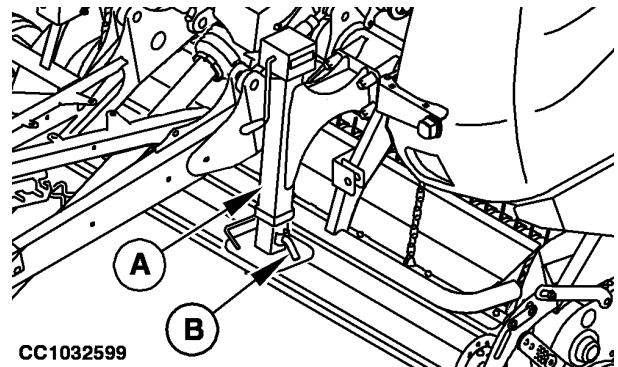
1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand in storing position.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

3. Insert spring locking pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter Pin
D—Spring Locking Pin



NB02380,0000473 -19-22JUN17-1/1

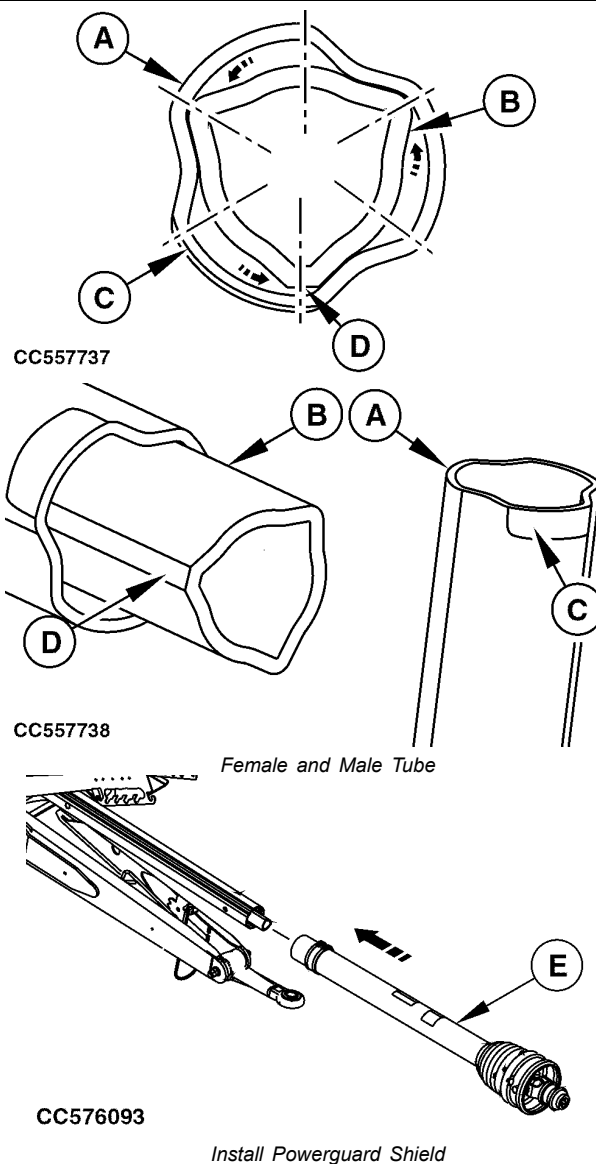
Install Telescoping Driveline

Intall PTO shaft by assembling male tube (B) in female tube (A) by aligning flat corner (D) with crushed face (C).

IMPORTANT: Male tube (B) can rotate inside female tube (A) freely about 30 degrees.

A—Female Tube
B—Male Tube
C—Crushed Face

D—Flat Corner
E—Shield



CC557737 —UN—03MAR23

CC557738 —UN—05APR23

CC576093 —UN—26APR23

ga87848,1679988549568 -19-26APR23-1/1

Connect Telescoping Driveline to Tractor PTO Shaft

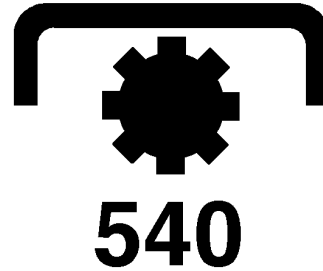
CAUTION: Never attach telescoping driveline while the tractor is running.

Never use a steel hammer to connect or disconnect the driveline on PTO shaft.

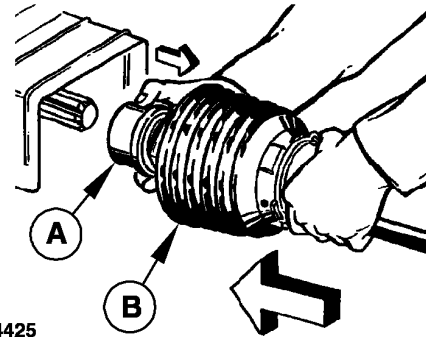
IMPORTANT: Keep driveline and PTO shaft splines free from paint, dirt, chaff and burrs.

1. Disengage the PTO, engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Pull back on locking collar (A). Locking collar (A) will "click" and remains in open position.
3. Connect telescoping driveline to tractor 540 rpm PTO shaft. Refer to tag on baler to select tractor PTO speed. Push telescoping driveline onto tractor PTO shaft until locking collar (A) snaps forward. Locking collar (A) will "click".
4. To check if telescoping driveline is latched, pull back on guard (B). Do not pull on locking collar (A), as this will release latch.

NOTE: Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to properly connect telescoping driveline to the tractor PTO shaft.



CC1020007



CC1034425

A—Locking Collar

B—Guard

NB02380,00003CA -19-20APR17-1/1

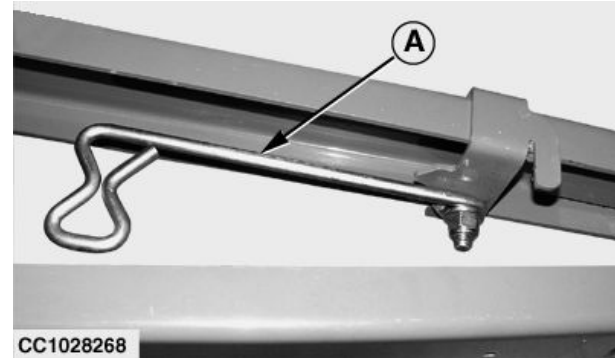
CC1020007—UN—09JUL01

CC1034425—UN—15SEP11

Telescoping Driveline Support

During baler operation store support (A) along the side tongue frame as shown.

A—Support



CC1028268

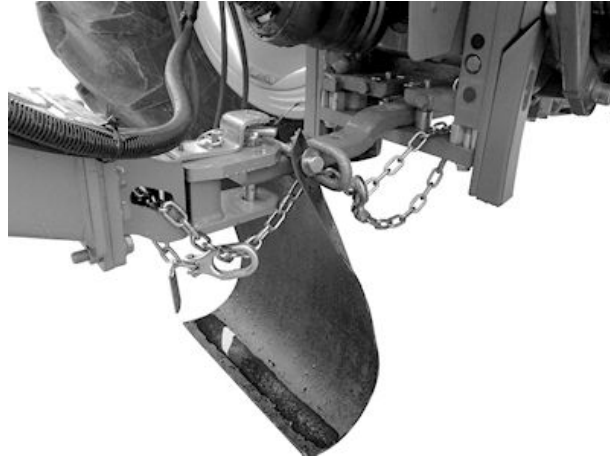
OUC006,0001AD9 -19-03SEP13-1/1

CC1028268—UN—21SEP06

Connect Safety Chain

If machine is equipped with a safety chain, route safety chain through the loop on drawbar (if equipped) and connect to tractor drawbar supporting structure, as shown. Do not fasten to drawbar. Remove all slack except what is needed for turns.

IMPORTANT: Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads.



CC657688 —UN—11FEB25

r2c13ue,1739265521218 -19-11FEB25-1/1

Connect to Tractor Hydraulic System

CAUTION: Maximum working pressure of baler hydraulic hoses is about 21000 kPa (210 bar; 3045 psi). To avoid injury from escaping fluid under pressure, stop engine and relieve the pressure in the system before disconnecting or connecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Before connecting hydraulic system, disengage PTO, engage park brake, shut off tractor engine and, remove key.

IMPORTANT: All hydraulic couplers must be clear of debris, dust and sand. Use protective caps on fluid openings until ready to make connection. Foreign material can damage the hydraulic system.

1. Connect gate lift hydraulic hoses

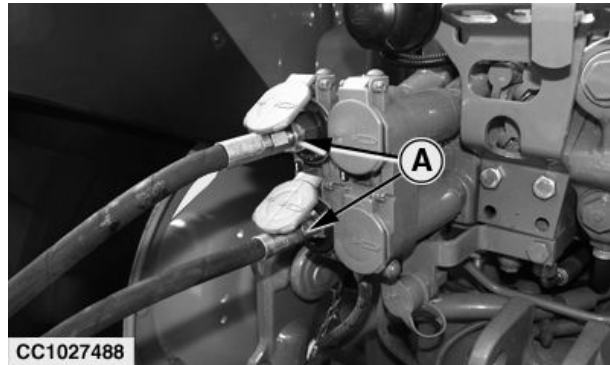
Connect gate hydraulic hoses (A) to a double-acting SCV to operate the gate.

Check to be sure symbols (B) on covers, indicating cylinder movement, match symbols (C) on hose identification plate (D).

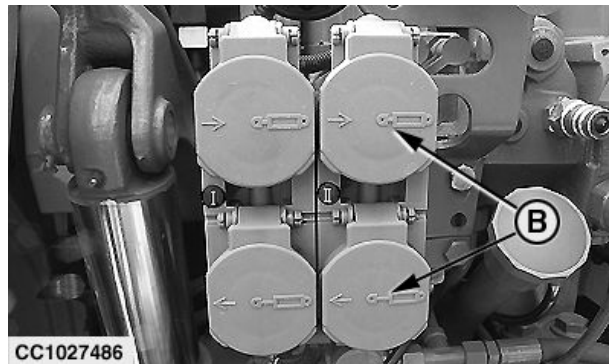
Push hoses firmly into tractor receptacles.

A—Gate Hydraulic Hoses
B—SCV Symbols

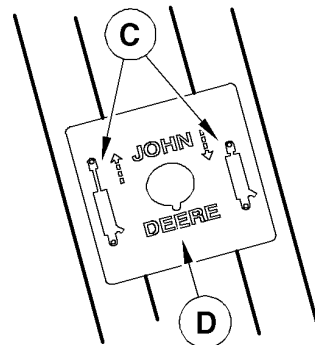
C—Identification Plate Symbols
D—Hose Identification Plate



CC1027488 —UN—11JUL05



CC1027486 —UN—11JUL05



CC1026711

CC1026711 —UN—03DEC04

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1732269985859 -19-22NOV24-1/2

2. Connect pickup control valve hydraulic hoses

NOTE: Refer to your tractor Operator's Manual to connect pickup hydraulic hose to the recommended outlet.

Connect pickup control valve hydraulic hoses (A) to a double-acting SCV to operate the pickup lift.

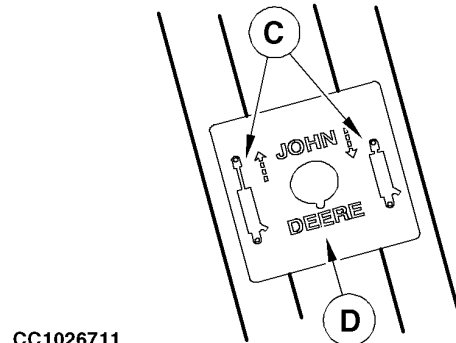
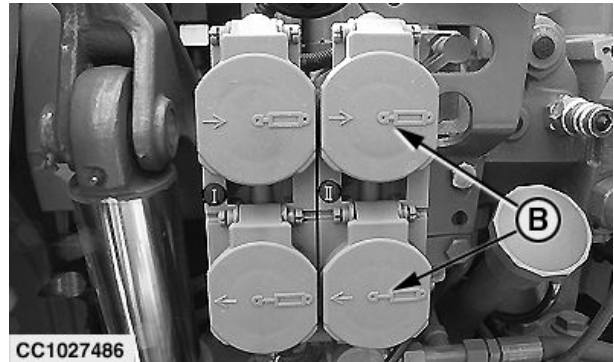
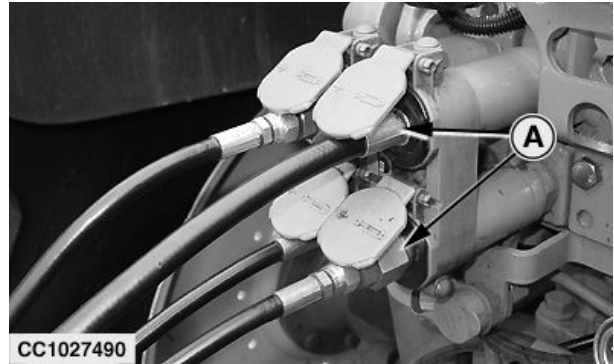
NOTE: Drop floor management uses the same selective control valve as the pickup raise or lower function.

Check to be sure symbols (B) on covers, indicating cylinder movement, match symbols (C) on hose identification plate (D).

Push hoses firmly into tractor receptacles.

A—Pickup Hydraulic Hose
B—SCV Symbol

C—Identification Plate Symbol
D—Hose Identification Plate



CC1027490 —UN—11JUL05

CC1027486 —UN—11JUL05

CC1026711 —UN—03DEC04

r2c13ue,1732269985859 -19-22NOV24-2/2

Connect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket

NOTE: Field installation of Seven-Terminal Auxiliary Electric Kit is required if towing tractor is not equipped with an electrical outlet. See your John Deere dealer.

Make sure baler tail and warning lights operate with tractor tail and warning lights and turn signals.

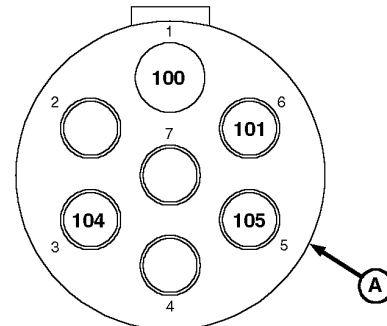
Connect road light plug to seven terminal socket of the tractor. Check road light function. See [Lighting Enhancement Module Operation](#) in Transporting and Parking section.

Terminal	Circuit	Function	Wire Color
1	100	Ground	Black
2		Open	
3	104	Left-Hand Turn/Warning Light	Yellow
4		Open	
5	105	Right-Hand Turn/Warning Light	Green
6	101	Tail Lights	Brown
7		Open	

A—Baler Road Light Plug



Tractor Seven-Terminal Outlet



Baler Road Light Plug

ga87848,1688635161646 -19-06JUL23-1/1

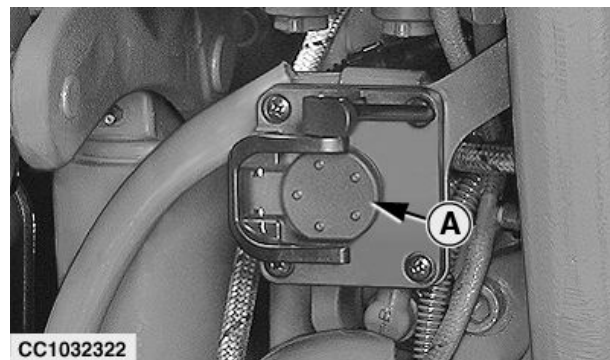
E62265 —UN—30MAR12

E47631 —UN—08JAN00

Connect Machine Wiring Harness

Connect machine wiring harness plug to the ISOBUS implement breakaway connector (A).

A—ISOBUS Implement Breakaway Connector



CC1032322

NB02380,0000233 -19-05DEC16-1/1

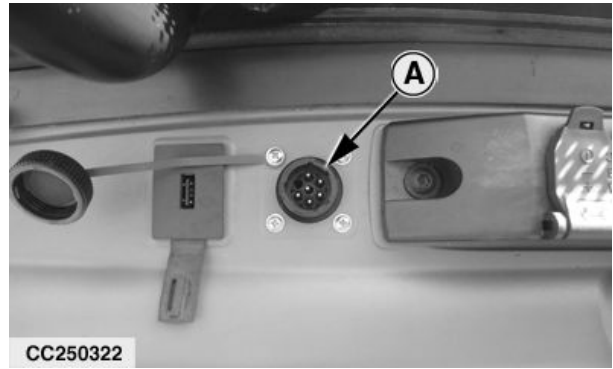
CC1032322 —UN—17DEC09

Connect Video Camera Harness(es) (If Equipped)

Connected video camera from the tractor camera socket (A) or from the external monitor socket (B). See your tractor Operator's Manual to locate it.

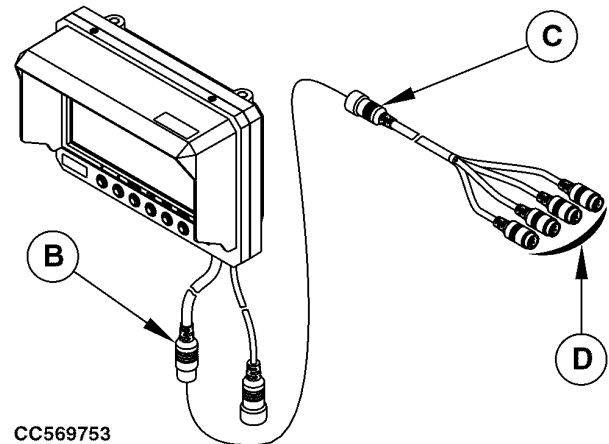
A—Socket - Tractor Video Camera
B—Plug - External Monitor Video Camera

C—Plug - Extention to Monitor
D—Plug - Extention to Camera



CC250322 —UN—30SEP15

Connect Video Camera Harness - Tractor



CC569753 —UN—09MAR23

Connect Video Camera Harness - External Monitor

ga87848,1677243495187 -19-11MAY23-1/1

Detaching

Detach Baler from Tractor

CAUTION: To prevent personal injury caused by unexpected movement:

- Park machines on a level surface.
- Engage tractor park brake and place transmission in PARK.
- Disengage PTO.
- Shut off tractor engine and remove key.

1. Park baler on a level surface.
2. Engage tractor park lock, shut off engine and remove ignition key.
3. Disconnect video camera wiring harness. See Disconnect Video Camera Harness(es) (If Equipped) in this section.

4. Disconnect machine wiring harness, see Disconnect Machine Wiring Harness in this section.
5. Disconnect trailer socket, see Disconnect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket in this section.
6. Disconnect tractor hydraulic system, see Disconnect from Tractor Hydraulic System in this section.
7. Disconnect telescoping driveline to tractor PTO shaft, see Disconnect Telescoping Driveline from Tractor PTO Shaft in this section.
8. Unfold jackstand, see Unfold Jackstand in this section.
9. Detach safety chain from the tractor.
10. Detach the baler.
11. Carefully drive tractor away from baler.

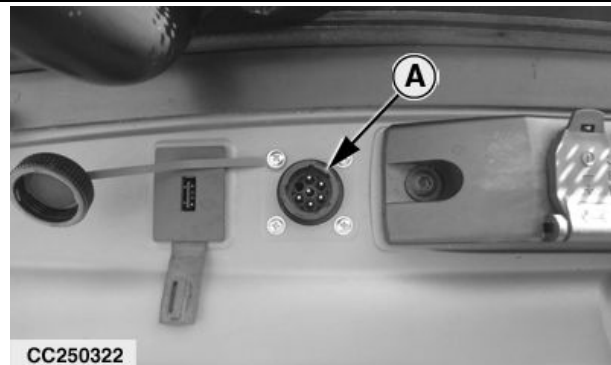
r2c13ue,1731582894989 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Disconnect Video Camera Harness(es) (If Equipped)

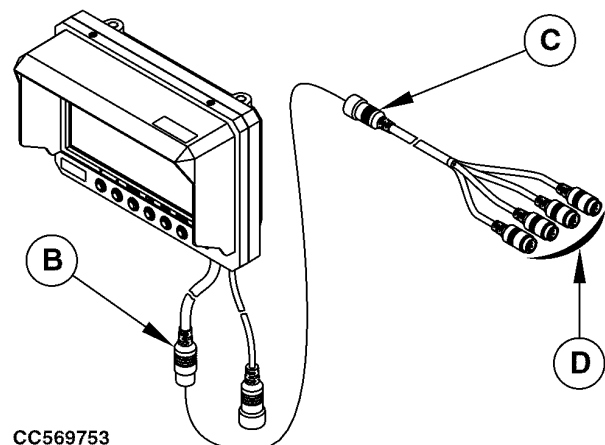
Disconnected video camera from the tractor camera socket (A) or from the external monitor socket (B). See your tractor Operator's Manual to locate it.

A—Socket - Tractor Video Camera
B—Plug - External Monitor Video Camera

C—Plug - Extention to Monitor
D—Plug - Extention to Camera



Connect Video Camera Harness - Tractor



Connect Video Camera Harness - External Monitor

ga87848,1678372040760 -19-10MAY23-1/1

CC250322 —UN—30SEP15

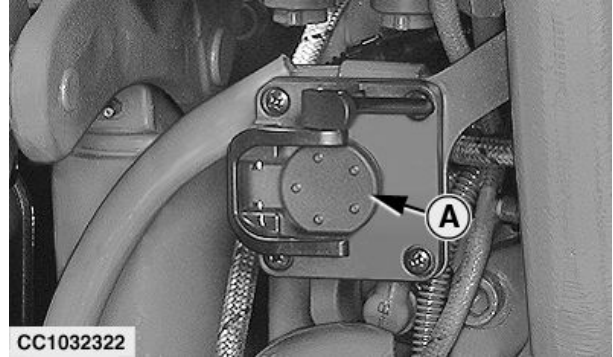
CC569753 —UN—09MAR23

Disconnect Machine Wiring Harness

NOTE: Switch power OFF before disconnecting the wiring harness.

Disconnect machine wiring harness from the ISOBUS implement breakaway connector (A).

A—ISOBUS Implement
Breakaway Connector



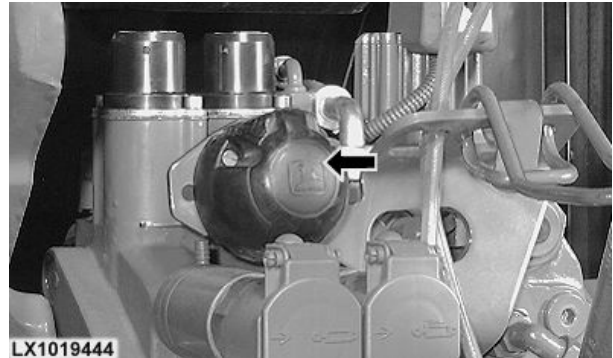
CC1032322

CC1032322 —UN—17DEC09

ga87848,1681994486668 -19-25APR23-1/1

Disconnect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket

Disconnect road light plug from seven terminal socket of the tractor.



LX1019444

LX1019444 —UN—17SEP99

Tractor Seven-Terminal Socket

NB02380,0000161 -19-31MAY16-1/1

Disconnect from Tractor Hydraulic System

CAUTION: Maximum working pressure of baler hydraulic hoses is about 21000 kPa (210 bar; 3045 psi). To avoid injury from escaping fluid under pressure, stop engine and relieve the pressure in the system before disconnecting or connecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Before disconnecting hydraulic system, disengage PTO, engage park brake, shut off tractor engine and, remove key.

IMPORTANT: All hydraulic couplers must be clear of debris, dust and sand. Use protective caps on fluid openings until ready to make connection. Foreign material can damage the hydraulic system.

1. Disconnect pickup control valve hydraulic hoses

Disconnect pickup control valve hydraulic hoses (A) from double-acting SCV.



CC1027490

CC1027490 —UN—11JUL05

A—Pickup Hydraulic Hose

Pull hoses firmly from tractor receptacles.

Continued on next page

ga87848,1687443316879 -19-22JUN23-1/2

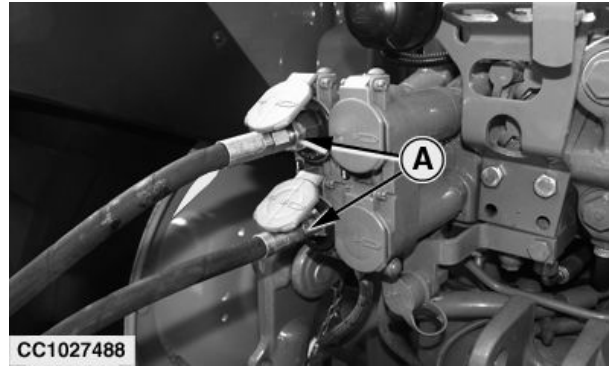
2. Disconnect gate lift hydraulic hoses

Disconnect gate hydraulic hoses (A) from double-acting SCV.

Pull hoses firmly from tractor receptacles.

3. Store hydraulic hoses, see [Store Hydraulic Hoses](#) in this Section.

A—Gate Hydraulic Hose



CC1027488 —UN—11JUL05

ga87848,1687443316879 -19-22JUN23-2/2

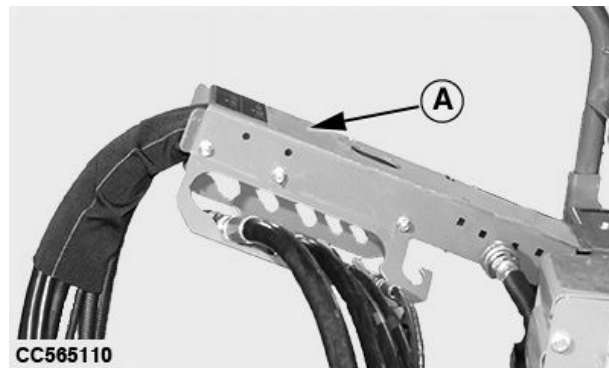
Store Hydraulic Hoses

CAUTION: Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.

Disconnect hydraulic hoses and install protective caps on couplers.

Store hydraulic hoses in the provided support (A) to keep them clean by avoiding contact with the ground.

A—Support



CC565110 —UN—19APR23

ga87848,1677246335484 -19-24FEB23-1/1

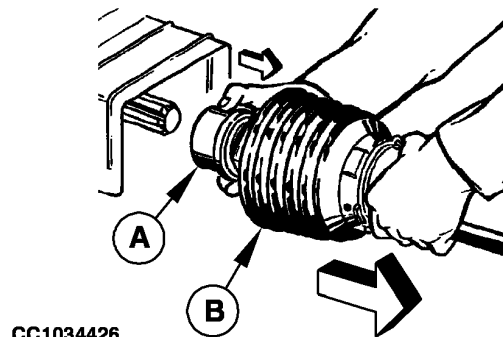
Disconnect Telescoping Driveline from Tractor PTO Shaft

CAUTION: Never detach telescoping driveline while the tractor is running.

Never use a steel hammer to connect or disconnect the driveline on PTO shaft.

IMPORTANT: Keep driveline and PTO shaft splines free from paint, dirt, chaff and burrs.

1. Disengage the PTO, engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Hold guard (B) and pull back on locking collar (A). Slide telescoping driveline off tractor PTO shaft.
3. Store telescoping driveline, see [Store Telescoping Driveline](#) in this Section.
4. Reinstall all shields, if removed.



A—Locking Collar

B—Guard

NOTE: Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to properly detach telescoping driveline from the tractor PTO shaft.

CC1034426 —UN—15SEP11

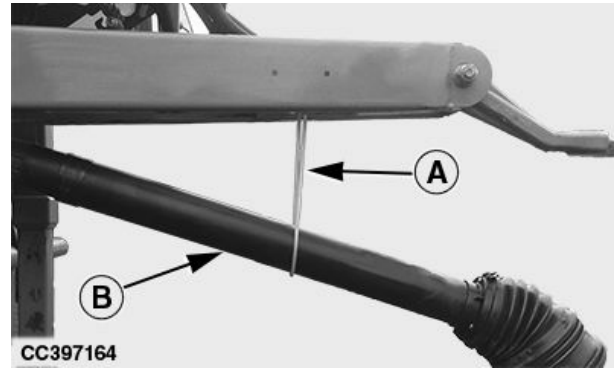
NB02380,000015C -19-25APR23-1/1

Store Telescoping Driveline

When baler tongue is adjusted in high position, install yellow cable as shown so that telescoping driveline can be stored on it.

A—Wire

B—Telescoping Driveline



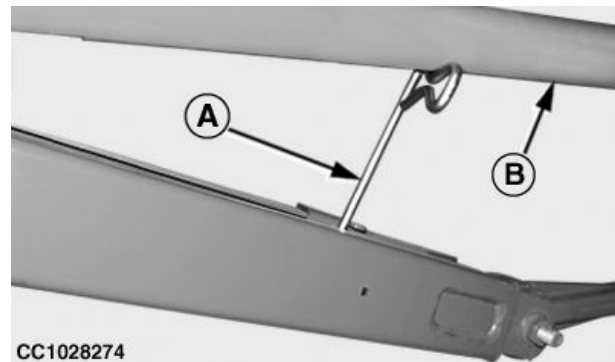
CC397164 —JUN—27NOV19

tl81334,1687181258122 -19-19JUN23-1/2

When baler tongue is adjusted in low position, use support (A) as shown so that telescoping driveline (B) can be stored on it.

A—Support

B—Telescoping Driveline



CC1028274 —JUN—21SEP06

tl81334,1687181258122 -19-19JUN23-2/2

Unfold Jackstand

Before detaching baler from tractor, remove jackstand (A) from storage position and place it in position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follows:

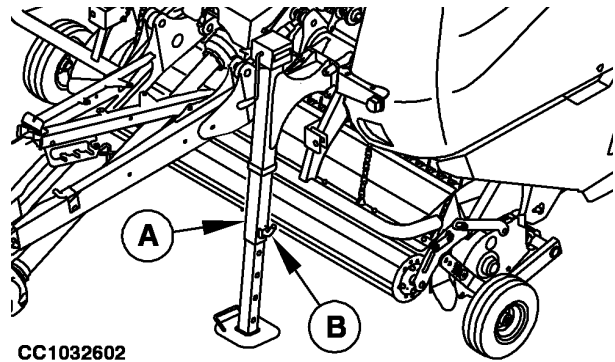
1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

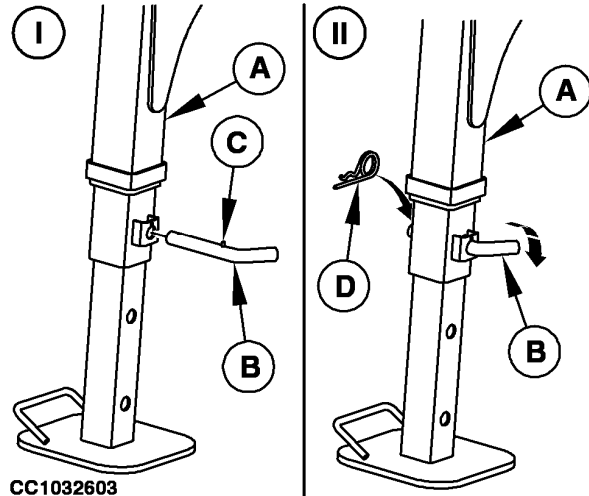
3. Insert spring locking pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter Pin
D—Spring Locking Pin



CC1032602



CC1032603

CC1032602 —UN—14SEP10

CC1032603 —UN—14SEP10

NB02380,0000481 -19-23JUN17-1/1

Transporting and Parking

Tow Baler on Public Roads

CAUTION: Use care when towing baler at transport speeds. Reduce speed if the weight of baler exceeds weight of tractor. Baler must be empty when towing it on roads.

IMPORTANT: Do not make sharp turns when towing baler. Damage could result if tongue strikes tractor tire.

IMPORTANT: Maximum transport speed is determined by local road traffic regulations and speed capability of the implement. To determine the appropriate tire pressure, see [Tire Inflation](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

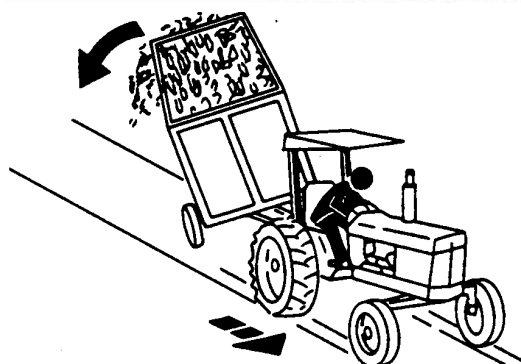
Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads.

Before towing the baler on public roads:

1. Close the gate
2. Raise pickup
3. Check the road lighting system

Use of beacon light is recommended.

When transporting baler at high speeds, a rocking motion may occur. Reduce speed until rocking stops.



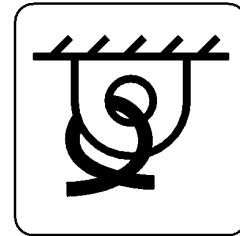
H28930 — UN — 30JUN89

TS216 — UN — 23AUG88

ga87848,1683103458730 -19-23MAY23-1/1

Transport Baler on Truck

Safely secure baler on truck using lashing points (B) identified on the baler by decals (A).



Lashing Point Decal (A)



Front Left

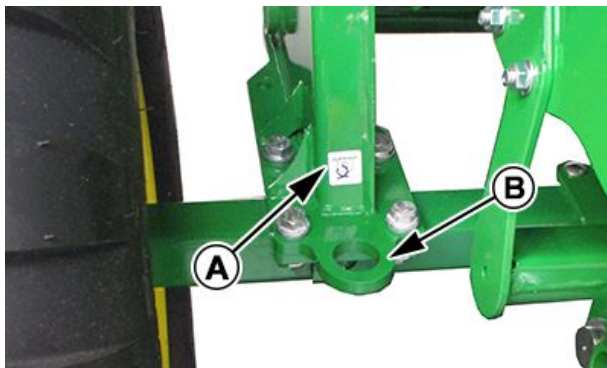
CC657708 —UN—19FEB25



Front Right

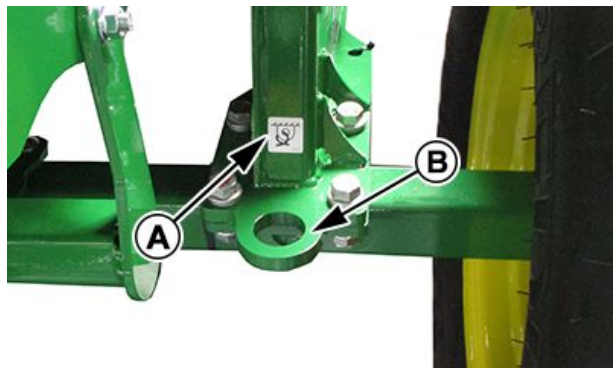
CC657711 —UN—20FEB25

CC657707 —UN—19FEB25



Rear Left

CC657710 —UN—19FEB25



Rear Right

CC657709 —UN—19FEB25

A—Lashing Point Decal

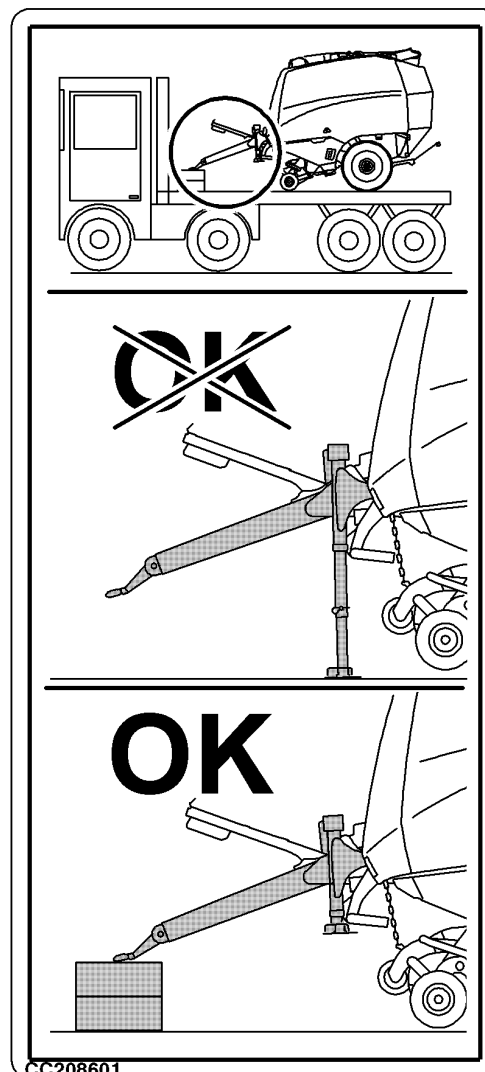
B—Lashing Point

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739968799800 -19-20FEB25-1/2

IMPORTANT: Never use jackstand during baler transportation. Secure baler tongue with wedges as shown.

Transporting the machine on jackstand could lead to belt tracking issue. If the machine was transported on the jackstand, see your John Deere dealer.



CC208601

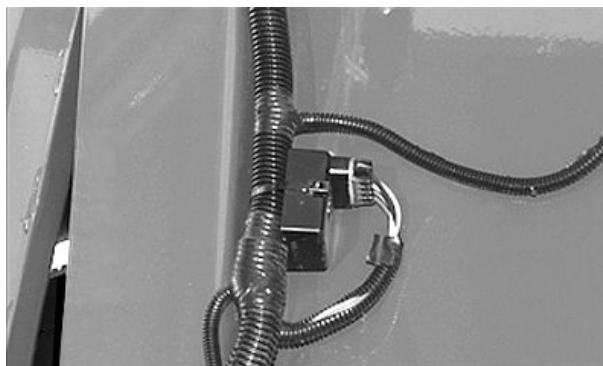
CC208601—UN—28JAN14

r2c13ue,1739968799800 -19-20FEB25-2/2

Lighting Enhancement Module Operation

In addition to tail and warning lights, the lighting circuit incorporates a lighting enhancement module. This module causes red tail lights to function as turn signals as well as tail lights. During normal transport, both amber warning lights will flash in unison at high intensity and both red tail lights will illuminate steady at low intensity.

When a turn is signaled, the red tail light in direction of turn will flash at high intensity in unison with the amber warning light. The opposite side amber and red lights will illuminate steady at high intensity.



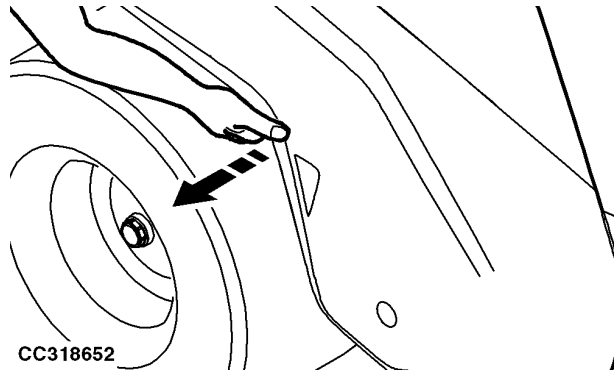
Located on Right-Hand Sidesheet

E48532—UN—24MAR00

CC03745,0000470 -19-21JAN03-1/1

Check Side Doors Are Locked

⚠ CAUTION: Pull on side doors to make sure they are locked.



CC318652 —UN—06JUN17

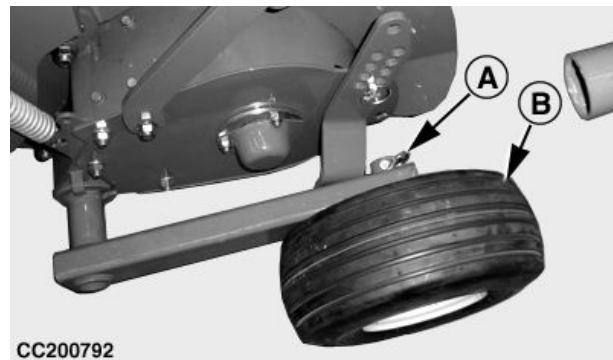
NB02380,000041A -19-07JUN17-1/1

Put Standard Gauge Wheels in Transport Position

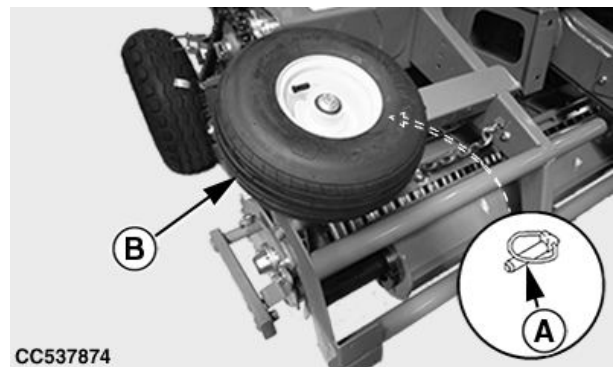
1. Remove quick-lock pin (A).
2. Remove gauge wheel (B) from pickup.
3. Position gauge wheel (B) on bracket as shown. Secure it with quick-lock pin (A).
4. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Quick-Lock Pin

B—Gauge Wheel



CC200792 —UN—12APR13



CC537874 —UN—01JUN22

r2c13ue,1731583447687 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Break-In Period

Break In Baler

IMPORTANT: If machine torque limiter disengages during operation, disengage PTO and re-engage at low idle until torque limiter re-engages, then operate again at rated PTO speed

Consider period of approximately first fifty bales as the break-in period, i.e. until paint inside bale chamber has worn off.

aysdijz,1683183701738 -19-04MAY23-1/1

After the First 10 Hours: Check Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.



CC652846—UN—14NOV24

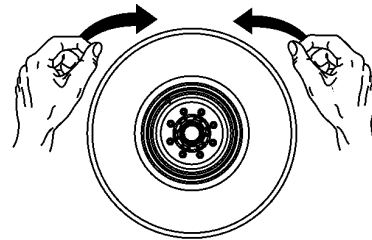
r2c13ue,1731588442255 -19-14NOV24-1/1

After the First 10 Hours: Check End Play of Wheel Hub Bearing

Check the wheel have no play:

1. Lift the wheel from the ground. See [Remove and Install Wheel](#) in Service section.
2. Rotate slowly the wheel on both directions to detect jam or hard point.
3. Rotate the wheel faster and check any sound or any hard point.
4. Push and pull the wheel on all directions. The wheels should not be wobbly.

If necessary, see your John Deere dealer.



CC574077

CC574077—UN—19APR23

aysdijz,1681894083926 -19-25APR23-1/1

After the First 50 Hours: Drain and Refill Gear Case

Change the oil in the gear case after the first 50 hours of operation. See [Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Drain and Refill Gear Case](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

ga87848,1684914700495 -19-24MAY23-1/1

Break-in Period: After the First 500 Bales - Check Net Feed Roll Brake

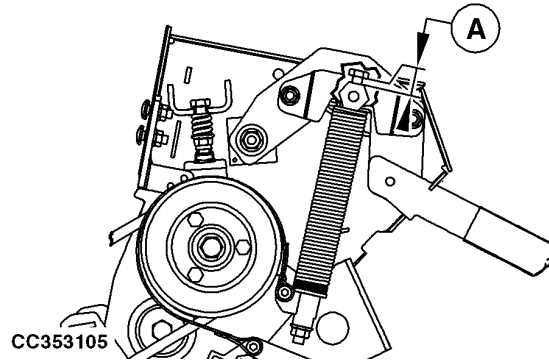
Check that distance (A) is within specification:

Specification

Screw-to-
Bracket—Distance.....3—5 mm
(1/8—3/16 in)

If necessary, see Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in
Service section.

A—Distance



CC353105 —UN—17MAY18

ga87848,1685626280402 -19-01JUN23-1/1

Operating the Baler—General Purposes

Before Each Use of the Baler

IMPORTANT: Belt and drive loads increase as the bale size approaches maximum diameter. Frequent forming of oversize bales can lead to premature failures.

Check the Baler:

1. Check that there is no wrapped crop around bale chamber rolls, recheck as frequently as required. See [As Required: Clean Bale Chamber Rolls](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
2. Check that belt hooks and hook wires are clean, recheck as frequently as required. See [As Required: Clean Belt Hooks and Hook Wires](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Adjust the Baler:

1. Adjust the pickup gauge wheels. See [Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels](#) in this section.
2. Adjust the pickup float spring. See [Adjust Pickup Float Spring](#) in this section.
3. Adjust windrow compressor roll. See [Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll](#) in this section.
4. Install net roll. See [Load Net Roll](#).

Lubricate the Baler:

Refill the chain oiling system reservoir. See [As Required: Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Set Control Monitor Functions:

1. Adjust the bale diameter. See [Set Bale Diameter](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Adjust the bale density. See [Adjust Bale Density](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
3. Select the binding system. See [Select Binding System](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
4. Select the binding start mode. See [Select Binding Start Mode](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
5. Adjust net binding system. See [Adjust Net Binding](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
6. Adjust the soft core diameter and density. See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
7. Select the customer and field number. See [Customer and Field Counters](#) in Operating Baler Application section.

Beginning of Baling:

IMPORTANT: When the monitor is switched off for an extended period of time, the gate will unlatched. The gate has to be latched again before bailing.

1. Raise then close the gate. Check that the gate is latched correctly.
2. Check that the drop floor is in raised position. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in Operating Baler Application section.

r2c13ue,1731590058586 -19-21NOV24-1/1

Clean the Machine to Prevent Fire

 **CAUTION:** Before working on the machine, disengage PTO, engage parking brake, shut off tractor engine and remove key. Wait for all moving parts to come to a standstill.

IMPORTANT: Pressurized water can damage safety signs, cylinders, seals, and roll bearings.

Avoid to direct high-pressure jet on safety signs, cylinders, seals, and roll bearings.

Use compressed air to clean the machine.

To reduce risk of fire, clean the machine several times per day, adjust cleaning frequency based on baling conditions.

Remove buildup of crop material and other debris by hand or using any other available tools, especially near bearings and moving parts.

r2c13ue,1731590087566 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Crop Preparation

Windrow Size

Good, uniform bales are made by feeding either full pickup width windrows or narrow windrows having a width of half or less than half of the pickup width.

Avoid medium-sized windrows. As the operator crosses this size windrow to crowd material into the ends of the pickup, material is continuously being fed to the center. As a result, more material will be fed into the center of the bale than in the ends. This results in barrel-shaped bales with low density at the ends and high density in the center.

Preparing the Hay Crops for Baling

The crop to be baled can be prepared in a number of ways, depending on your preference and equipment available. The most desirable bales are produced when the crop is cut, conditioned and then raked into windrows of the proper size. This allows the operator to weave and properly position the material in the baler, producing compact, uniform bales. See Windrow Size above.

If moisture content is too high, spoilage can be expected.

If moisture content is too low, excessive leaf loss and shatter will occur.

Cut the crop as long as possible. In most crops, longer material is easier to bale and results in smoother finished, more weather-resistant bales.

Do not overcondition the material, particularly legume-type crops such as alfalfa and clover.

Overconditioning will cause the leaves to dry too quickly and break off where they are damaged, resulting in losses. If the bales are to be stored outside, excessive shattering of stems will invite moisture absorption.

Underconditioning can also cause spoilage, particularly when baling cane-type crops and other heavy-stemmed materials.

NOTE: Excessively dry, slippery material sometimes encountered in maize stalks, certain grasses, and various types of grain straws can be successfully baled provided the material is of sufficient length to hold the bale together.

Preparing the Silage Crops for Baling

The crop can be cut and prepared with the usual equipment such as mower or a mower-conditioner and a tedder rake.

Produce uniform windrows. A flat, full windrow is desirable. The best results for conservation are obtained when the crop is baled at a dry matter content between 40 and 50%.

Preparing the Straw Crops for Baling

If at all possible, ensure at the time of combining a grain crop, that the straw is not chopped excessively by the combine's threshing mechanism. Do not stir up the windrow prior to baling if the straw is already very dry and short. A properly sized, full windrow, produced by a large combine will give better results than a very small windrow.

OUCC006,0001A54 -19-03APR13-1/1

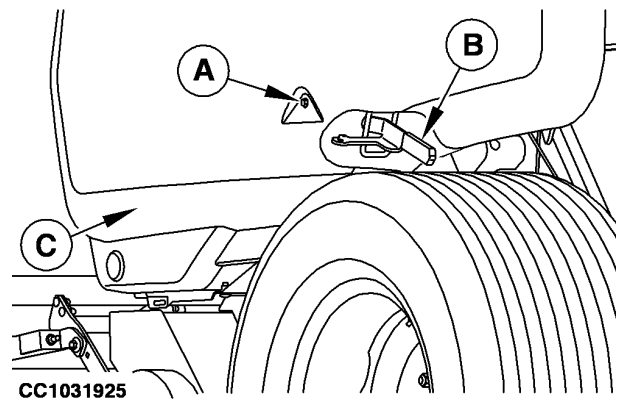
Open and Close the Side Door

1. Turn lock (A).
2. Pull latch (B).
3. Open the side door (C).

After closing a side door, pull on door to make sure it is locked.

A—Lock
B—Latch

C—Door



CC1031925

CC1031925—UN—30NOV09

GA87848,0000474 -19-24OCT17-1/1

Gate Lock Valve

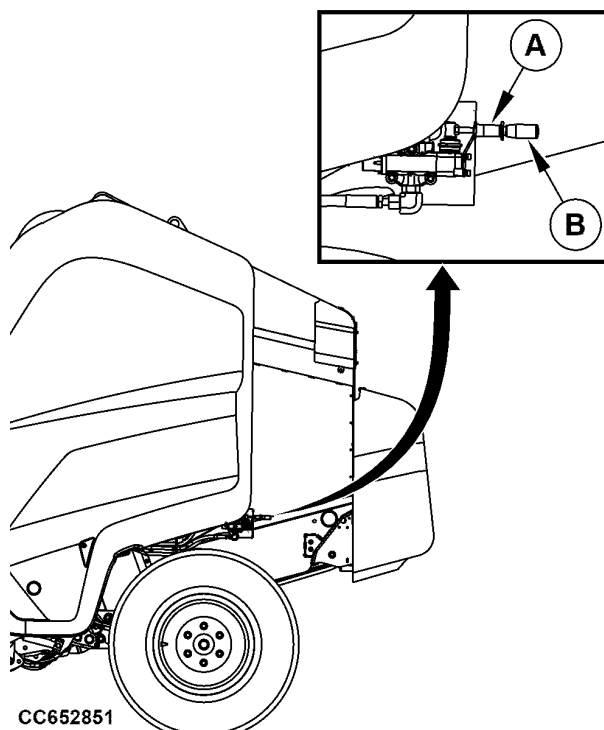
CAUTION: Before working inside or around the baler with an open gate, gate lock lever (B) must be moved to locked position by pulling the lock bushing (A). Always use this safety feature when gate is open. Close gate when leaving baler unattended.

IMPORTANT: Never travel with an open gate at a speed higher than 2 km/h (1.2 mph). Damage to the gate could occur.

To engage gate lock, pull bushing (A) and move lever (B) in lock position. The gate can be locked in any position by means of the gate lock valve.

A—Lock Bushing

B—Gate Lock Lever



CC652851

r2c13ue,1731590110689 -19-19NOV24-1/1

CC652851 —UN—20NOV24

Adjust Pickup Float Spring

1. Unlock nut (A).
2. Adjust the pickup float spring by tightening screw (B) into spring plug until distance (C) is obtained.

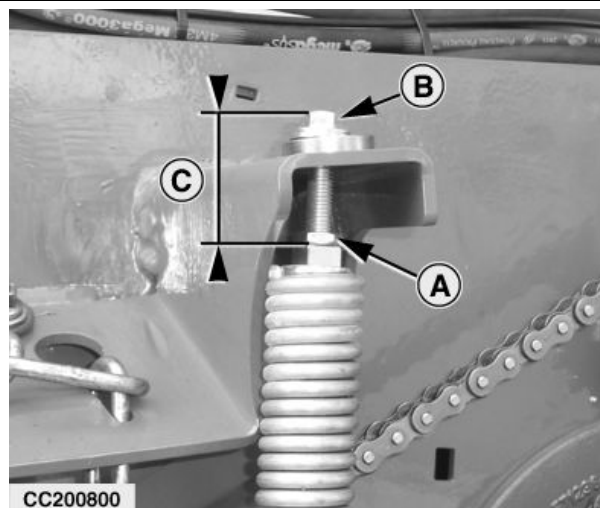
Specification

Pickup Float
Spring—Distance.....49—53 mm
(1-15/16 in—2-3/32 in)

3. Lock nut (A).
4. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

This setting should allow the pickup to drop completely when lowered. If not, slightly reduce spring setting.

NOTE: When operating at heights other than the extreme down position, additional spring force will be required to obtain adequate float.



A—Nut
B—Screw

C—Distance

CC200800

ga87848,1670490078966 -19-11APR23-1/1

CC200800 —UN—12APR13

Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels

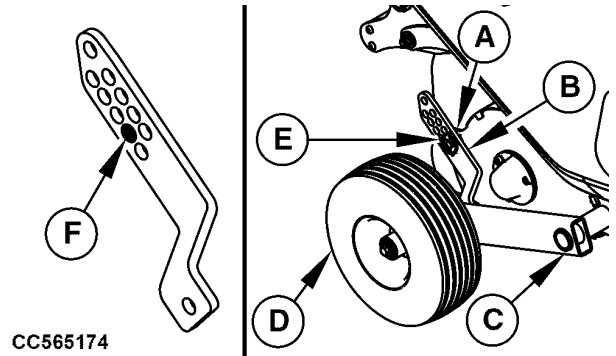
Depending on crop and field conditions, the initial gauge wheel setting may need to be reconsidered whether there is crop left on the ground or pickup teeth too close to the ground. Adjust to next available hole as required.

Adjust Pickup Standard Gauge Wheels:

1. Remove quick-lock pin (A) and pin (E).
2. Select a hole position (F) on support (B).

NOTE: Hole position (F) shown on the illustration is the recommended starting position.

3. Install quick-lock pin (A) and pin (E).
4. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.



CC565174

A—Quick-Lock Pin
B—Support
C—Wheel Arm

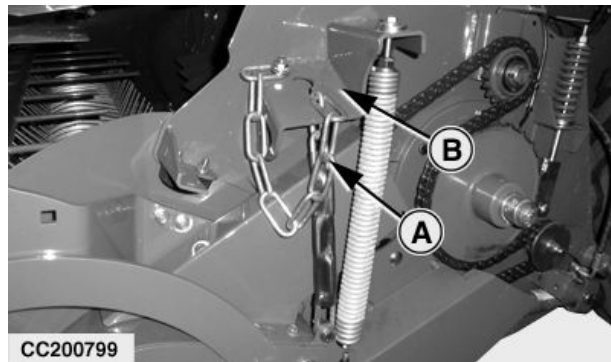
D—Gauge Wheel
E—Pin
F—Hole Position

r2c13ue,1731590143855 -19-18FEB25-1/1

Adjust Pickup Downstops

NOTE: Gauge wheels must be used as down stop. However chain can replaced gauge wheels in case of extreme rough conditions

1. Fully raise the pickup with selective control valve lever.
2. Remove chain (A) from anchor (B) on the left side.
3. Lower the pickup until the desired pickup height is reached.
4. Attach chain (A) on anchor (B) leaving the minimum of chain links (A) hanging.
5. Act on selective control valve lever to fully lower the pickup.
6. Check pickup height.
7. Repeat procedure until the desired height is reached.



CC200799

A—Chain

B—Anchor

ga87848,1682425584846 -19-25APR23-1/1

Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll

Windrow compressor roll is designed to help feed crop as evenly as possible through the pickup and rotor.

The windrow compressor roll should turn continuously while compressing the crop.

It should raise only occasionally due to a lump in the windrow. If the compressing effect needs to be increased, then adjust the roll to a lower position.

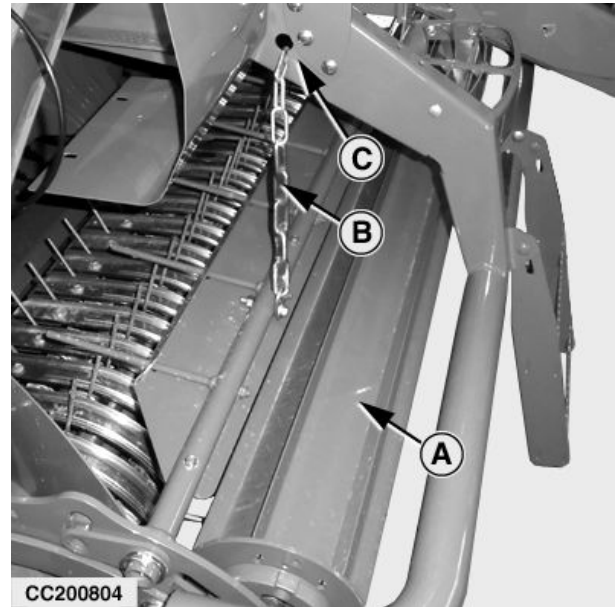
However it should not continuously shake up and down while baling. If this happens, it must be adjusted to a higher position.

Adjust height of windrow compressor roll (A) as follows:

1. Fully raise the pickup with selective control valve lever.
2. Remove chain (B) from bracket (C) on both sides.
3. Adjust roll position by increasing chain length for a lower position or by reducing chain length for a higher position.
4. Attach chain (B) to bracket (C) as shown.

NOTE: Check that the number of chain links (B) is the same on both sides.

5. Fully lower the pickup.
6. Attach the loose end of chain to the highest link under tension using a tie band.

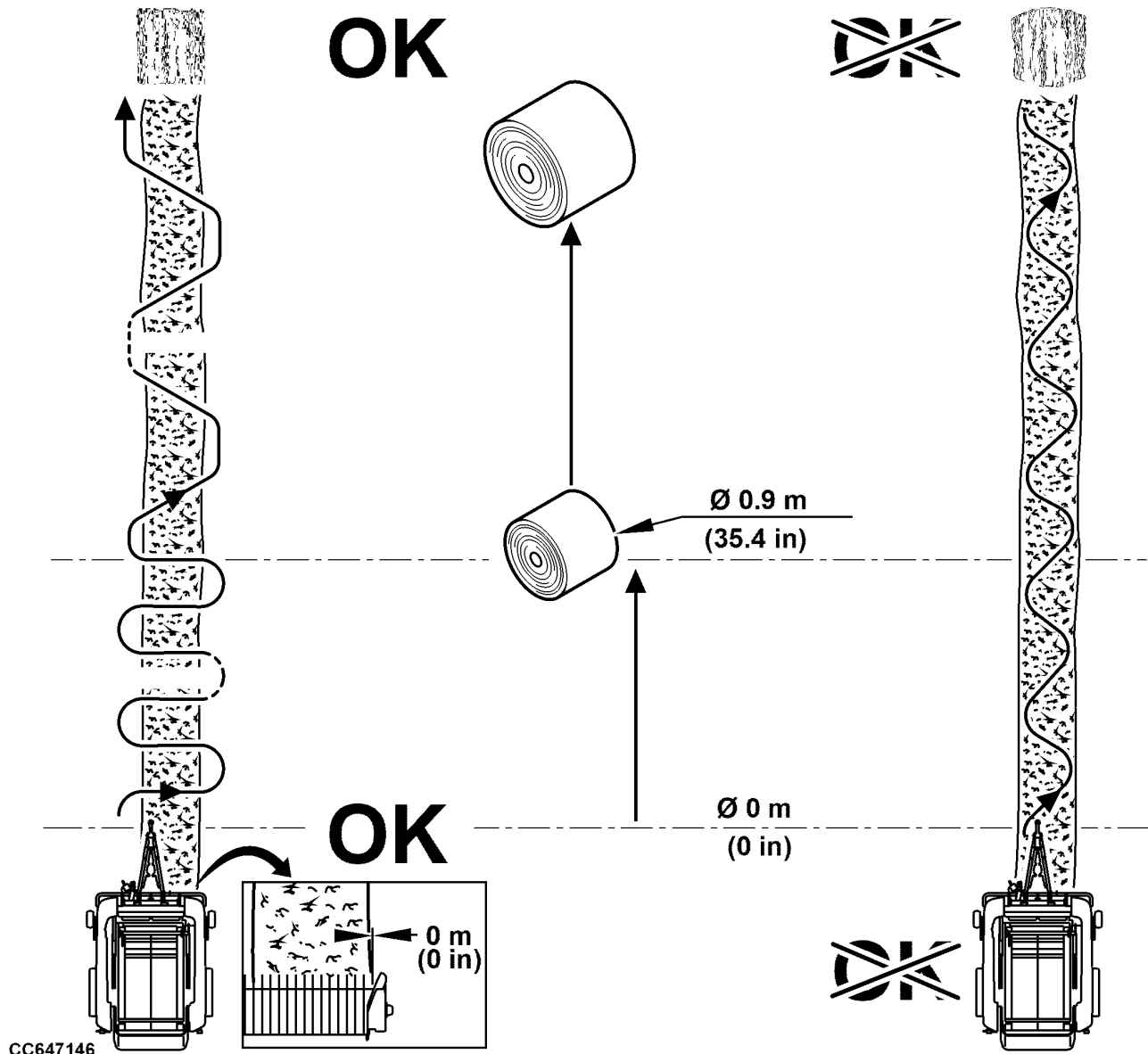


A—Windrow Compressor Roll C—Bracket
B—Chain

CC200804—UN—12APR13

r2c13ue,1728566893735 -19-11OCT24-1/1

Guidelines to Form a Good Bale



CC647146—UN—11OCT24

1. Start feeding windrow.

NOTE: When baling in hillside conditions, always feed in first the downstream side of the machine. See *Operate Baler Safely on Slopes* in Safety section.

2. Move quickly to one side feeding the baler for several meters, as close as possible to the sidesheet, without leaving crop in the field.

NOTE: Weaving back and forth across the windrow should be done quickly in a zigzag fashion to balance crop intake side-to-side.

3. Move quickly to the other side feeding the baler for several meters, as close as possible to the sidesheet, without leaving hay in the field.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739262498435 -19-12FEB25-1/2

4. Move quickly back to the other side feeding the baler, as close as possible to the sidesheet. Continue feeding in this manner until bale shape indicator (A) or (B) corresponding to feeding side rises, and a bale diameter of 0.9 m (35.4 in) is obtained.
5. Then drive to the other side by reducing weaving frequency across the windrow until bale shape indicator (A) or (B) corresponding to feeding side rises.
6. Continue to feed in this manner until the near full indicator is displayed. Then, finish up the bale by feeding one side of the baler, taking care that both bale shape indicators are at the same height.

NOTE: If bale shape indicators display incorrect information about the bale formation, see [Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322](#) in Baler Application Service section.

Full pickup width windrows:

This is the ideal windrow width.

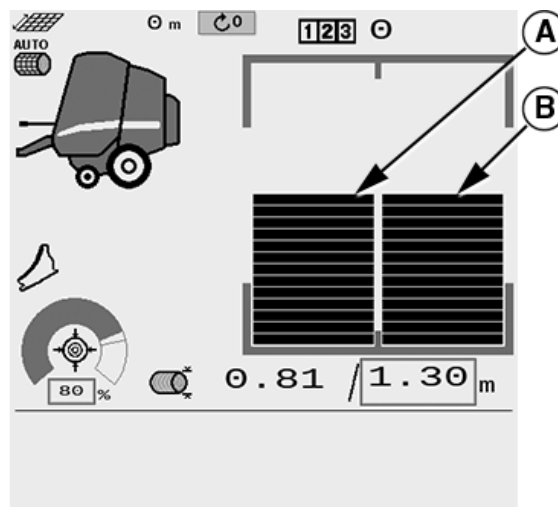
This windrow must be even with little or no crown. Too much crown will result in barrel-shaped bales.

Full-width windrows are desirable since no weaving or crossing the windrow is necessary.

Narrow windrows:

Once the core is formed (after 2 to 3 m; 8 to 10 ft. of forward travel), start the weaving pattern to feed material alternately into the sides of the pickup.

Bales formed in this way will be more uniform than bales formed by continuously driving the tractor in a weaving pattern, so that belt tracking problems, and potential net weaknesses will be avoided.



CC571134

A—Left Bale Shape Indicator

B—Right Bale Shape Indicator

It is preferable to work in full pickup width windrows.

Medium-sized windrows:

Whenever possible, avoid medium-sized windrows.

When the operator crosses this type of windrow to feed the ends of the pickup, material continues to be fed into the center. As a result, more material will be fed into the center of the bale than at the ends. Avoid barrel-shaped bales, belt tracking problems and potential net weaknesses by working in full pickup width windrows.

r2c13ue,1739262498435 -19-12FEB25-2/2

In Case of Plugging

In case of plugging, try one or more of the following methods:

- Raise pickup as high as needed.
- Reduce tractor PTO speed.

- Reduce working speed.
- Reduce bale density as necessary.
- Reduce bale diameter setting.
- Make larger windrows (rake together as necessary).
- Replace broken pickup teeth.

r2c13ue,1732270161066 -19-22NOV24-1/1

Set Net Guide Based on Field Condition

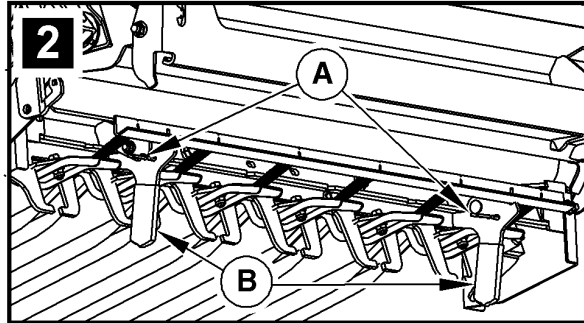
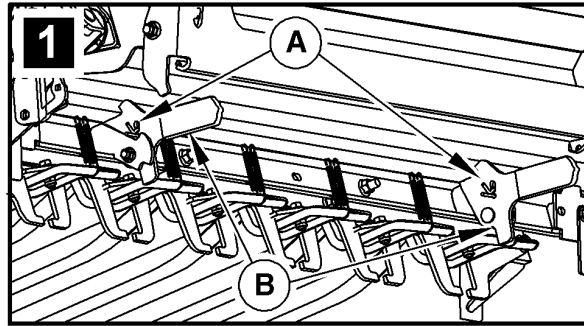
To avoid net from jamming, set net guide based on field condition.

Proceed as follows:

1. Remove pins (A).
2. Move levers (B) in the relevant position.
3. Install pins (A).

1— Dry Crop Condition
2— Wet and Sticky Crop Condition

A—Pin
B—Lever



CC334396

CC334396 —UN—30OCT17

TL81334,0000FCE -19-07JUL21-1/1

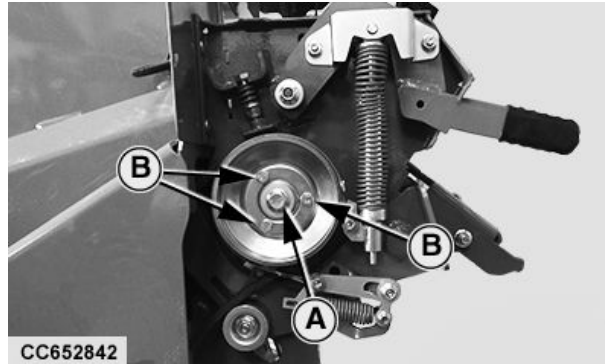
Adjust Net Binding Stretch

To adjust net binding stretch, proceed as follows:

1. Loosen cap screws (A) and (B).

A—Cap Screw

B—Cap Screw



CC652842

CC652842 —UN—06NOV24

r2c13ue,1731590199360 -19-25NOV24-1/5

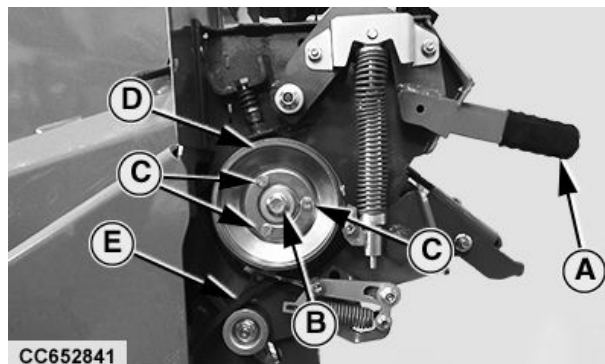
2. Remove cap screw (B) with washers (C).
3. Release net feed roll brake lever (A). Push lever (A) down and out, then raise it to disengage.

NOTE: Once unlocked, lever (A) is kept in upper position.

4. Remove sheave (D) and belt (E).

A—Brake Lever
B—Cap Screw
C—Washer

D—Sheave
E—Belt



CC652841

CC652841 —UN—06NOV24

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731590199360 -19-25NOV24-2/5

5. Remove cap screws (B) and separate sheave (A).

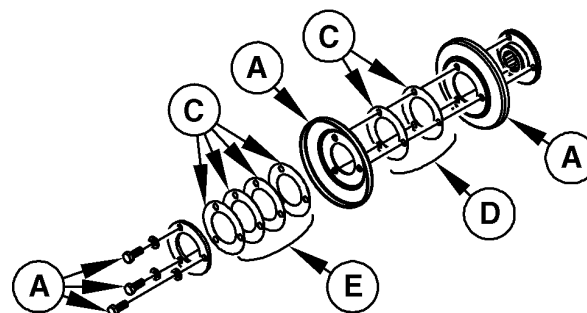
NOTE: During removal, record number and location of shims (C).

6. Net binding stretch depends on number of shims (C) in position (D).

- To increase net binding stretch, transfer shims (C) from position (D) to position (E).
- To decrease net binding stretch, transfer shims (C) from position (E) to position (D).

NOTE: Factory setting is two shims (C) in position (D).

Once the number of shims is adjusted, reassemble sheave.



CC332540

A—Sheave
B—Cap Screws
C—Shims

D—Adjustment Position
E—Storage Position

r2c13ue,1731590199360 -19-25NOV24-3/5

CC332540—UN—04OCT17

7. Reinstall sheave (D) and belt (E).

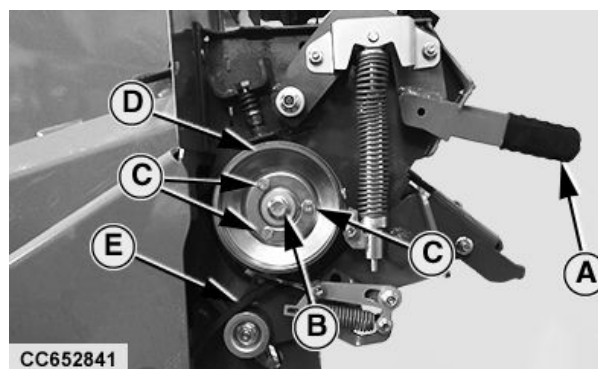
8. Apply net feed roll brake lever (A).

Pull lever (A) up and out, then lower.

9. Install cap screw (B) with washers (C).

A—Brake Lever
B—Cap Screw
C—Washer

D—Sheave
E—Belt



CC652841

r2c13ue,1731590199360 -19-25NOV24-4/5

CC652841—UN—06NOV24

10. Tighten cap screws (B).

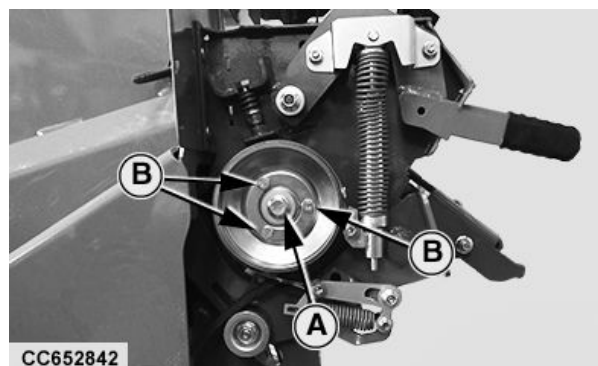
11. Tighten screw (A) to specified torque.

Specification

Net Binding System
Pulley Screw—Torque.....140 N·m
(103 lb·ft)

A—Cap Screw

B—Cap Screw



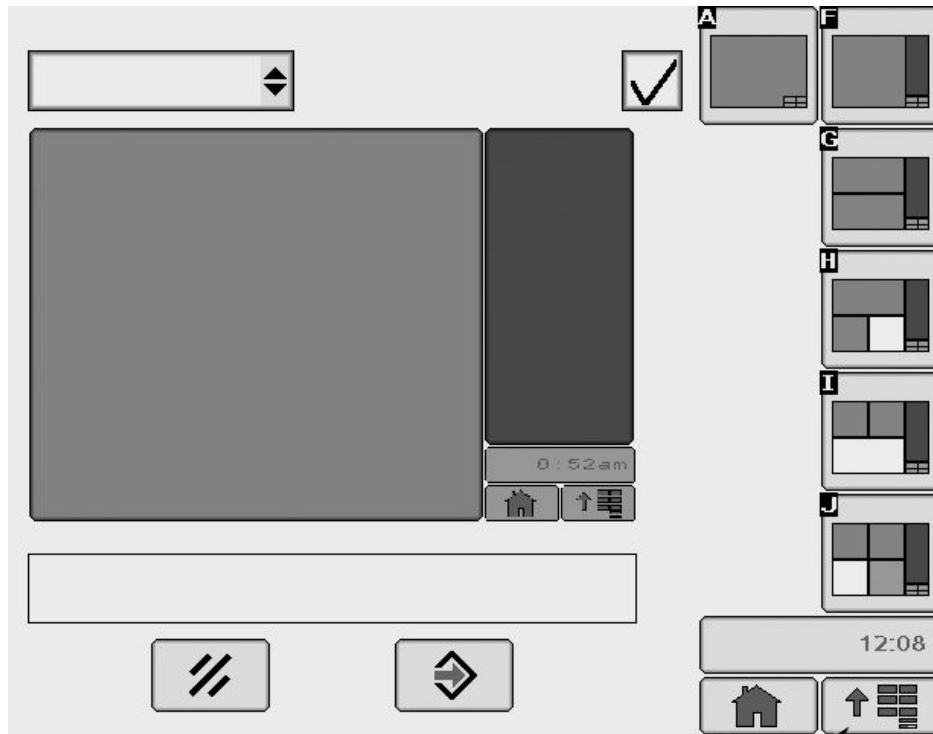
CC652842

r2c13ue,1731590199360 -19-25NOV24-5/5

CC652842—UN—06NOV24

Operating Baler Application

Baler Application Access



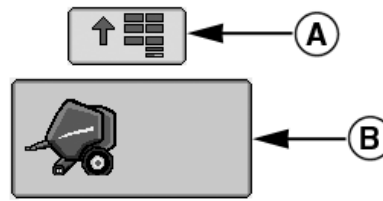
CC1032323

GreenStar 2600 Display Shown

CC295830 —UN—22SEP16

CC1032323 —UN—21DEC09

CC295830



Baler Application Access

A—Display Menu Softkey or Button

B—Baler Application Softkey

NOTE: John Deere monitors are automatically switched ON when the ignition key is turned ON.

The first time baler is connected to the monitor or after a software update, it is required to wait until the baler application is loaded (8 to 10 minutes).

If the baler application is not automatically displayed, select display menu softkey or button (A), then select baler application softkey (B).

NOTE: For more information about the display, see your monitor operator's manual.

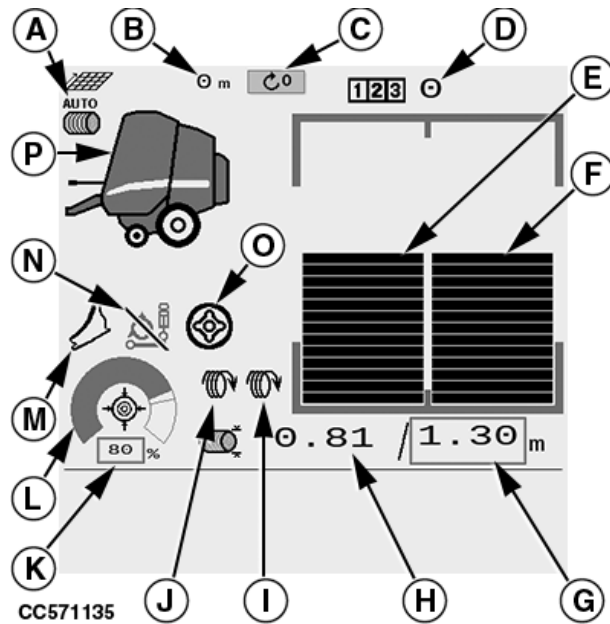
JC87117,0000283 -19-28NOV16-1/1

Units of Measure

In the baler application, units of measure depend on the monitor settings. Refer to your monitor operator's manual to select the desired units of measure.

OUC006,00015A0 -19-15DEC09-1/1

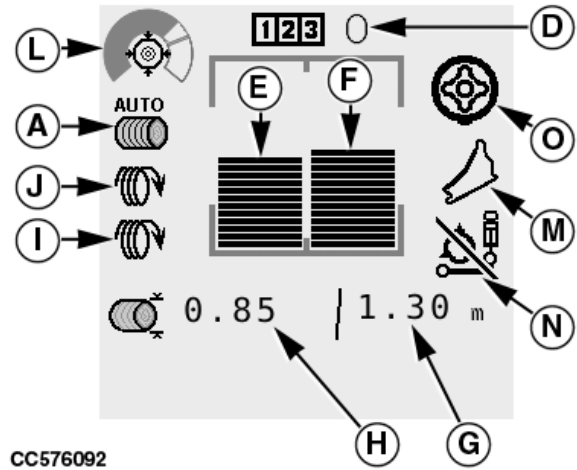
Baler Main Page Display Description



Baler Main Page Display with Other Display

- A—Binding Mode Symbol
- B—Net Binding Consumption Counter
- C—Reset Net Binding Consumption Counter Button
- D—Current Field Bale Counter
- E—Left Bale Shape Indicator
- F—Right Bale Shape Indicator
- G—Target Bale Diameter
- H—Actual Bale Diameter
- I—Right Twine Pulley Status Symbol

CC571135 —UN—11APR23



Baler Main Page Display with Implement Display 1100

- J—Left Twine Pulley Status Symbol
- K—Bale Density Pressure Setting
- L—Bale Density Indicator
- M—Precut Knives Status Symbol
- N—Drop Floor Position Symbol
- O—Soft Core Status Symbol
- P—Baler Status

NOTE: Screen layout can change depending on the monitor.

The main page allows the main baler functions to be controlled and monitored while operating in the field.

Binding Mode symbol (A) indicates the selected binding mode: net binding or twine binding. Symbol (A) also indicates the selected binding mode: Automatic or Manual. Symbol (A) is crossed out when the selected binding start mode is automatic but unavailable. See [Select Binding System](#) and [Select Binding Start Mode](#) in this section.

The Net Binding Consumption counter (B) indicates the actual consumption of net binding. The unit of the counter is in meter (m). Reset the counter (B) by pressing button (C).

Current Field Bale counter (D) indicates the total number of bales done for the selected field. See [Customer and Field Counters](#) in this section.

Bale shape indicators (E) and (F) allow the bale shape to be visualized on both sides. See [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) in [Operating the Baler - General Purpose](#) section and [Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators](#) in this section.

Input box (G) is used to adjust the bale diameter. See [Set Bale Diameter](#) in this section.

Actual bale diameter (H) indicates the bale diameter measured during bale formation (no value are displayed below 0.8 m (31.5 in)).

Symbols (I) and (J) are used to monitor the rotation of twine pulleys and indicate if twine is fed during the twine binding cycle. Symbols (I) and (J) are not displayed if twine pulley sensors are disabled. See [Adjust Twine Binding](#) in this section.

Bale Density Pressure setting (K) is used to set the desired bale density. Bale density indicator (L) indicates the relative pressure in bale chamber. See [Adjust Bale Density](#) in this section.

Symbol (M) indicates the precut knives position: retracted or engaged. Symbol (M) is crossed out when all precut knives are not engaged. See [Retract or Engage Precut Knives Function](#) in this section.

Drop Floor Position symbol (N) indicates that drop floor is down. When the drop floor is lowered, the symbol (N) is displayed until the drop floor is raised. When the drop floor is raised, the symbol (M) is not displayed. See [Unplug Pickup](#) in this section.

Symbol (O) is displayed only if soft core function is enabled. See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in this section.

Baler status (P) is used to monitor the bale size, the binding processes, and the rear gate position.

Continued on next page

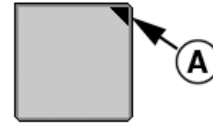
r2c13ue,1739349430396 -19-12FEB25-1/2

Softkey Description

CC1032341 —UN—15JAN10

In the baler application, softkeys allows to navigate, start a process and enable or disable an associated function.

NOTE: Some softkeys have a triangle (A) on the upper right corner. This triangle (A) indicates that a new page will be displayed if this softkey is activated.



CC1032341

A—Triangle

OUC006,00015C0 -19-15JAN10-1/1

Baler Application Softkey Designation

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16

"Main Page" softkey.

This softkey provides direct access to baler application main page. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



CC277965

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-1/32

"Soft Core" softkey.

CC1031617 —UN—16SEP09

See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in this section.



CC1031617

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-2/32

"Counters" softkey.

CC324600 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



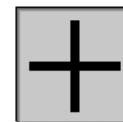
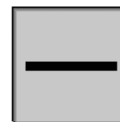
CC324600

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-3/32

"Remove Bales" and "Add Bales" softkeys.

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



CC1031852

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-4/32

"Clear Current Field Counter" softkey.

CC324601 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



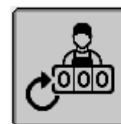
CC324601

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-5/32

"Clear Customers Counters" softkey.

CC324602 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



CC324602

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-6/32

"Clear Season Counter" softkey.

CC324604 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



CC324604

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-7/32

"Customer and Field Counter" softkey.

CC324603 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



CC324603

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-8/32

"Season and Total Counter" softkey.

CC324605 —UN—14SEP17

See [Customer and Field Counters](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters](#) in this section.



CC324605

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-9/32

"Start Net Binding Cycle" softkey.

CC321713 —UN—29JUN17

See [Manual Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.



CC321713

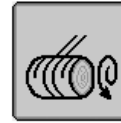
Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-10/32

"Start Twine Binding Cycle" softkey.

CC351782 —UN—29MAY18

See [Manual Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.



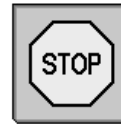
CC351782

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-11/32

"Stop Binding Cycle" softkey.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09

See [Manual Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.



CC1031890

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-12/32

"Net Binding Start Mode" softkey.

CC321714 —UN—29JUN17

See [Select Binding Start Mode](#) in this section.



CC321714

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-13/32

"Twine Binding Start Mode" softkey.

CC351783 —UN—29MAY18

See [Select Binding Start Mode](#) in this section.



CC351783

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-14/32

"Binding Settings" softkey.

CC351755 —UN—24APR18

See [Adjust Net Binding](#) in this section.



CC351755

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-15/32

"Retract Actuator" and "Extend Actuator" softkeys.

CC1031854 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031854

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-16/32

"Drop Floor and Precutter Knives Management" softkey.

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09

See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives Function](#) and [Unplug Pickup](#) in this section.



CC1031618

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-17/32

"Drop Floor and Precutter Knives" softkey.

CC1031805 —UN—16SEP09

See [Unplug Pickup](#) in this section.



CC1031805

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-18/32

"Drop Floor" softkey.

CC1031806 —UN—16SEP09

See [Unplug Pickup](#) in this section.



CC1031806

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-19/32

"Precutter Knives Set 1" softkey.

CC1031807 —UN—16SEP09

See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives Function](#) in this section.



CC1031807

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-20/32

"Precutter Knives Set 2" softkey.

CC1032652 —UN—24NOV10

See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives Function](#) in this section.



CC1032652

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-21/32

"Settings" softkey.

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

See this section, Operating Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode, and Baler Application Service section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



CC277966

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-22/32

Operating Baler Application

"Next Page" and "Previous Page" softkeys.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-23/32

"Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

See Baler Application Service section.



CC1031614

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-24/32

"Input Test" softkey.

CC277969 —UN—22SEP16

See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



CC277969

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-25/32

"Output Test" softkey.

CC277970 —UN—22SEP16

See Test Electro-Hydraulic Components in Baler Application Service section.



CC277970

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-26/32

"Baler Calibration" softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09

See Baler Application Service section.



CC1031658

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-27/32

"Twine Actuator Calibration" softkey.

CC341041 —UN—08JAN18

See Calibrate Twine Binding Actuator MB421 in Baler Application Service section.



CC341041

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-28/32

Operating Baler Application

"Bale Diameter Calibration" softkey.

CC341042 —UN—09JAN18

See [Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC341042

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-29/32

"Bale Shape Calibration" softkey.

CC341045 —UN—09JAN18

See [Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322](#) in Baler Application Service section.



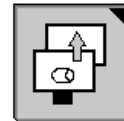
CC341045

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-30/32

"Select Virtual Terminal" softkey.

CC277988 —UN—22SEP16

See [Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal \(Display\) to Another](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC277988

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-31/32

"Advanced Settings" softkey.

CC1034498 —UN—07JUL11

See your John Deere dealer.



CC1034498

r2c13ue,1739349502584 -19-12FEB25-32/32

Set Bale Diameter

This adjustment determines the diameter at which the binding cycle will automatically start.

- On the main page, select input box (B) and set bale diameter:

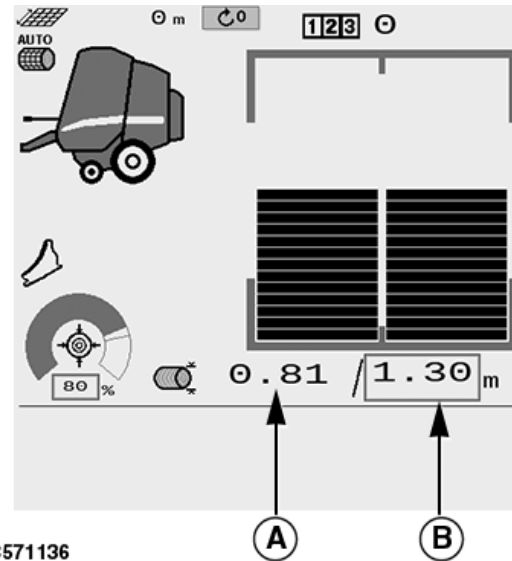
- From 1 to 1.63 m (39.4-3/8 in to 64 in) for V451M baler.
- From 1 to 1.83 m (39.4-3/8 in to 72 in) for V461M baler.

The actual bale diameter (A) allows the measured bale diameter to be monitored while baling.

NOTE: If bale diameter (B) is modified while baling, the new value is applied instantaneously.

A—Bale Diameter (Actual)

B—Bale Diameter (Target)



CC571136

CC571136 —UN—11APR23

r2c13ue,1739282074546 -19-12FEB25-1/4

- The bale diameter may also be adjusted on the baler settings page. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16



CC277966

r2c13ue,1739282074546 -19-12FEB25-2/4

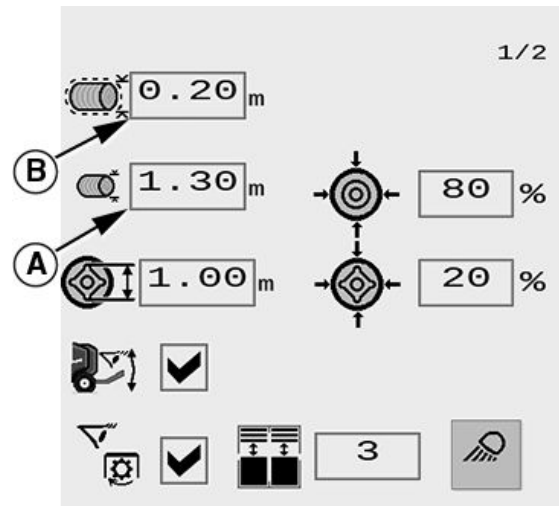
- Select input box (A) and set bale diameter:

- From 1 to 1.63 m (39.4-3/8 in to 64 in) for V451M baler.
- From 1 to 1.83 m (39.4-3/8 in to 72 in) for V461M baler.

NOTE: On the baler settings page, use input box (B) to adjust the near full alarm offset. See [Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset](#) in this section.

A—Bale Diameter

B—Near Full Alarm Offset



CC571137

CC571137 —UN—11APR23

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739282074546 -19-12FEB25-3/4

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

r2c13ue,1739282074546 -19-12FEB25-4/4

Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

The near full alarm offset represents the distance below the preset bale diameter at which the near full symbol is displayed.



CC277966

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.

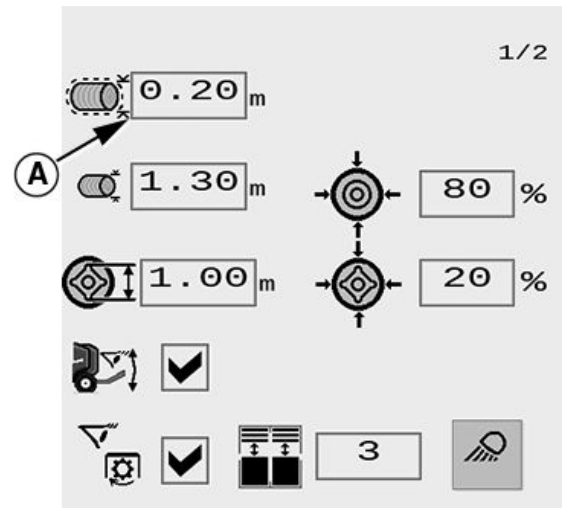
tl81334,1680855945518 -19-11APR23-1/3

2. Select input box (A) and set distance from 0 to 0.3 m (0 to 11.8 in.).

NOTE: The initial factory value is 0.2 m (7.9 in.).

See [Automatic Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section for more information about near full symbol.

A—Near Full Alarm Offset



CC571138

tl81334,1680855945518 -19-11APR23-2/3

CC571138 —UN—11APR23

3. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1680855945518 -19-11APR23-3/3

Select Binding System

CC351755 —UN—24APR18

1. From the baler application main page, select "Binding Settings" softkey.



Binding Settings Softkey

CC351755

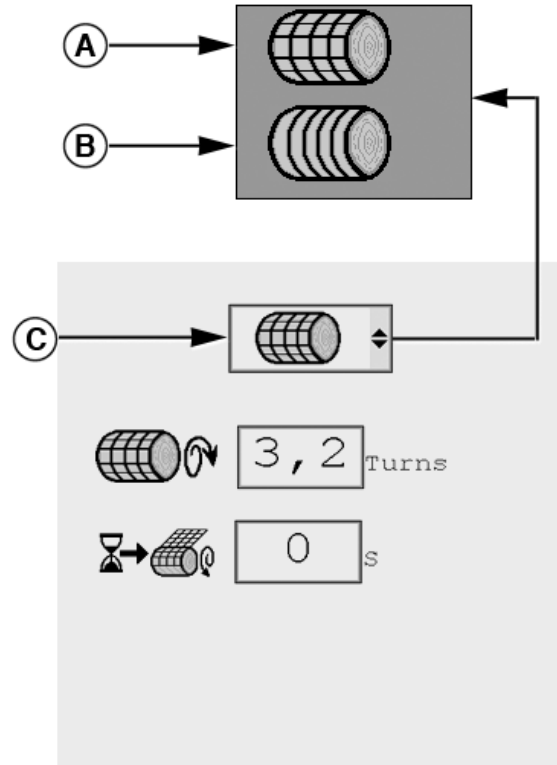
Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739347517653 -19-12FEB25-1/4

2. Select and activate the binding system selection drop-down list (C). Select the desired binding system.

A—Net Binding System
B—Twine Binding System

C—Binding System Selection



CC657689 —19—12FEB25

r2c13ue,1739347517653 -19-12FEB25-2/4

3. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

Continued on next page

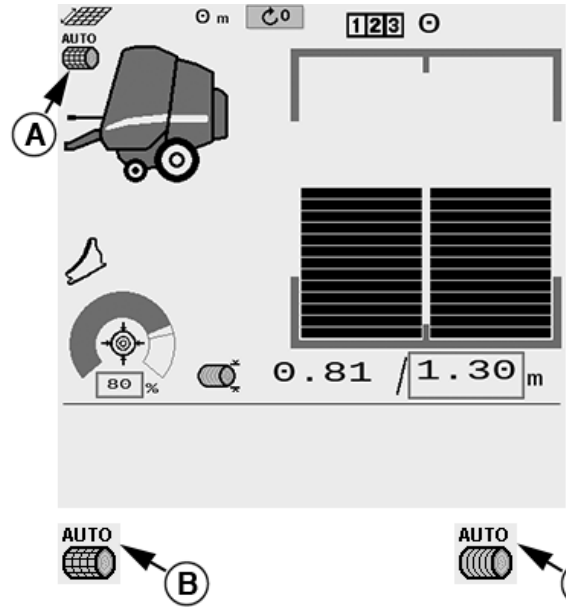
r2c13ue,1739347517653 -19-12FEB25-3/4

4. On the main page, symbol (A) indicates the selected binding system.

- Symbol (B) indicates that net binding system is selected.
- Symbol (C) indicates that twine binding system is selected.

A—Binding System Symbol
B—Net Binding Symbol

C—Twine Binding Symbol



CC657090 —UN—12FEB25

r2c13ue,1739347517653 -19-12FEB25-4/4

Select Binding Start Mode

CC321714 —UN—29JUN17

1. From the baler application main page, select and activate "Net Binding Start Mode" or "Twine Binding Start Mode" softkey to choose between automatic and manual mode.

NOTE: See Select Binding System in this section to select the desired binding system.



CC321714

Net Binding Start Mode Softkey

CC351783 —UN—29MAY18



CC351783

Twine Binding Start Mode Softkey

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739347639290 -19-12FEB25-1/2

2. Symbol (A) indicates the selected binding start mode.

If automatic is selected, the binding cycle starts automatically when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Automatic Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.

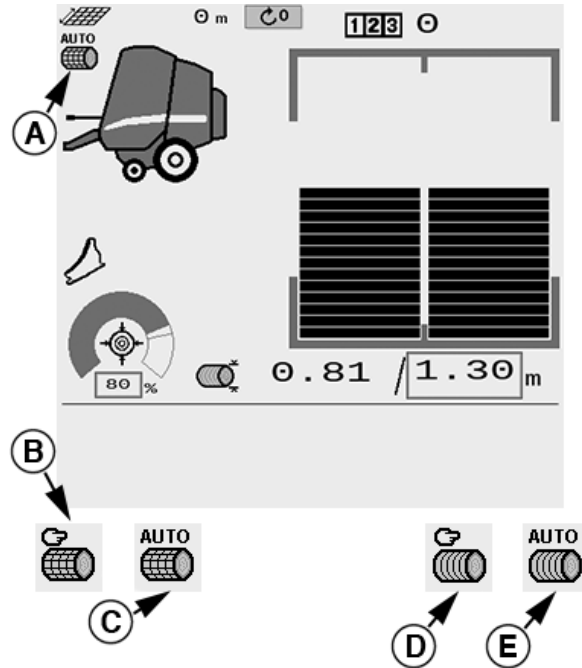
NOTE: Symbol (A) is crossed out when the selected binding start mode is automatic but unavailable if any of the following conditions exist:

- Automatic binding cycle is already running.
- Baler gate is not closed and latched.
- Diagnostic trouble code relating to the gate or the selected binding system is active.

If manual is selected, the binding cycle must be started manually. See [Manual Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.

A—Binding Start Mode
B—Manual Start (Net Binding)
C—Automatic Start (Net Binding)

D—Manual Start (Twine Binding)
E—Automatic Start (Twine Binding)



r2c13ue,1739347639290 -19-12FEB25-2/2

CC657691 —UN—12FEB25

Adjust Net Binding

CC351755 —UN—24APR18

NOTE: Before adjusting the net binding system, see [Select Binding System](#) in this section to select net binding system.



CC351755

1. From the baler application main page, select "Binding Settings" softkey.

Continued on next page

t181334,1680856211297 -19-11APR23-1/3

2. Set net binding as follows:

a. **Number of Net Turns (A):**

Set number of net turns between 1.2 and 10 net turns in input box (A).

The minimum recommended number of net turns is 2.2.

The number of net turns depends on crop material, harvesting condition (temperature, crop moisture), bale density, and net manufacturer. Adjust the number of net turns according to the field conditions.

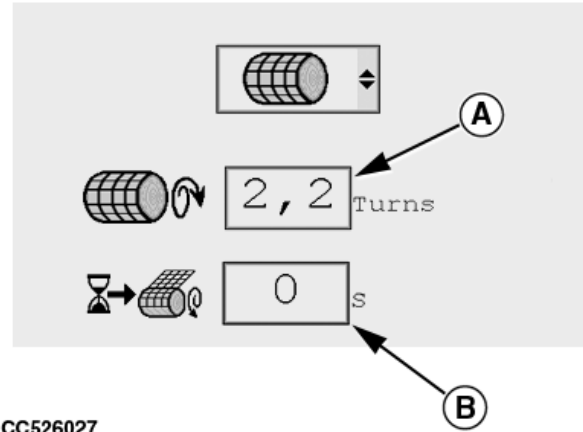
NOTE: To ensure a correct overlap of each net turn, we recommend to use decimal values between X.3 and X.5.

In any of the following conditions, set the number of net turns to a minimum of 3.2:

- Density is over 65%.
- Baling hay or straw.

b. **Net Binding Delay (B):**

Set net binding delay between 0 and 9 seconds in input box (B). The net binding delay is the time between the binding start indication on the monitor and the activation of the net actuator. The net binding delay provides time to stop tractor forward



CC526027

A—Number of Net Turns

B—Net Binding Delay

travel and to avoid crop getting trapped between net layers.

NOTE: The initial factory setting is 0 seconds.

tl81334,1680856211297 -19-11APR23-2/3

3. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1680856211297 -19-11APR23-3/3

Adjust Twine Binding

CC351755 —UN—24APR18

NOTE: Before adjusting the twine binding system, see Select Binding System in this section to select twine binding system.



CC351755

1. From the baler application main page, select "Binding Settings" softkey.

Continued on next page

tl81334,1680856240763 -19-11APR23-1/3

2.

- **Twine Spacing (A):**
Set value between 2 and 20 cm (0-13/16, and 8 in.) in input box (A).

NOTE: We recommend setting twine spacing value (A) to 8 cm (3 in.) for all crop types.

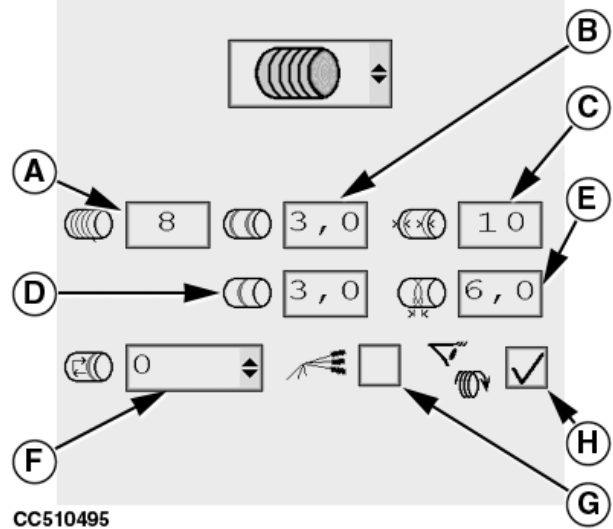
- **Number of Twine Coils on Sides (B):**
Set value between 1 and 7 turns in input box (B).
- **Distance of Binding Ends on Sides (C):**
Set value between 8 and 25 cm (3 and 10 in.) in input box (C).
- **Number of Twine Coils in the Middle (D):**
Set value between 1 and 7 turns in input box (D).
- **Distance of Twine Overlap in the Middle (E):**
Set value between 2 and 8 cm (0-13/16 and 3-1/8 in.) in input box (E). This setup is not used.

Two other specific twine binding modes are available:

- **Re-Extension Binding Mode (F):**
Set the desired re-extension distance in drop-down list (F) to 0 or 20 cm (0 or 8 in.). Do not set re-extension distance to 40 or 60 cm (16 or 24 in.). When the re-extension distance value is 0, the mode is disabled.
This mode is used to have more twine coils at the end of the bale binding and may help prevent twine unrolling. After the set number at binding end has been applied, the twine arms are extended again towards the center of the bale to the set distance and then, they are retracted.

- **Dry Straw Binding Mode (G):**
Check box (G) is used to enable or disable dry straw binding mode.
When baling dry straw, it may be desirable to quickly place twine across full width of bale to prevent straw from flaking off in the baler. This mode provides full speed twine arm movement from center to edge, then from edge to center. Then, the twine arms come back to the edge, pause to place the set number at binding start, and continue to apply twines as set in the monitor.

3. Check box (H) is used to enable or disable the twine pulley sensors. Disabling the twine pulley sensors allows the baler to be operated with a defective sensor. Before disabling this function, check adjustment of sensors. See [Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421](#) and [SB422](#) in Service section.



- A—Twine Spacing
B—Number of Twine Coils on Sides
C—Distance of Binding Ends on Sides
D—Number of Twine Coils in the Middle
E—Distance of Twine Overlap in the Middle
F—Re-Extension Binding Mode
G—Dry Straw Binding Mode
H—Twine Pulley Sensors

IMPORTANT: The twine pulley sensors must be activated. Operating the baler with twine pulley sensors disabled may cause malfunctions. See your John Deere dealer to replace defective parts as soon as possible.

4. The following table shows the recommended settings:

Twine Binding Recommended Settings			
	Silage	Hay	Straw
Twine Spacing (A)	5 cm (2 in.)	5 cm (2 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)
Number of Twine Coils on Sides (B)	4 turns	2 turns	3 turns
Distance of Binding Ends on Sides (C)	8 cm (3 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)	10cm (4 in.)
Number of Twine Coils in the Middle (D)	4 turns	2 turns	3 turns

†181334,1680856240763 -19-11APR23-2/3

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

†181334,1680856240763 -19-11APR23-3/3

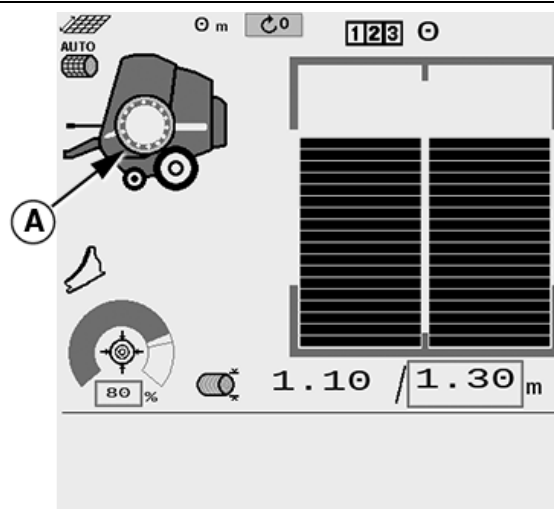
Automatic Start of Binding Cycle

NOTE: To allow automatic start of binding cycle, binding start mode must be automatic. See Select Binding Start Mode in this section.

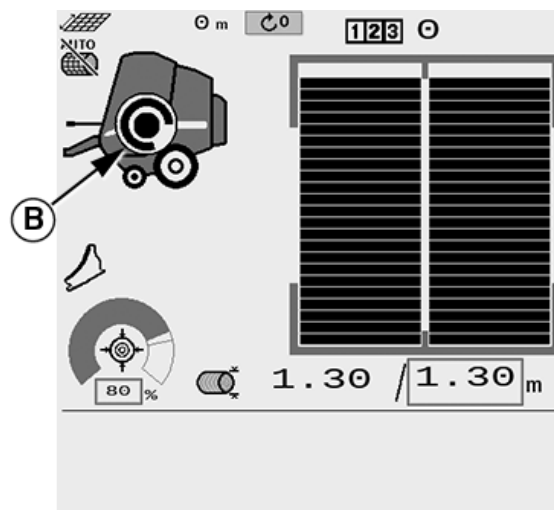
1. Just before the bale diameter is reached, the near full symbol (A) is displayed and the monitor beeps twice. To adjust near full alarm offset, see Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset in this section.
2. When the adjusted bale diameter is reached, the monitor beeps continuously for 3 seconds. Immediately stop the tractor. The binding process symbol (B) indicates that the net or twine actuator is moving.

A—Near Full Symbol

B—Binding Process Symbol



CC571145



CC571146

CC571145—UN—11APR23

CC571146—UN—11APR23

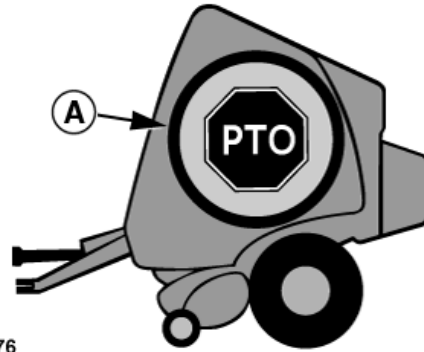
Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739284190640 -19-11FEB25-1/3

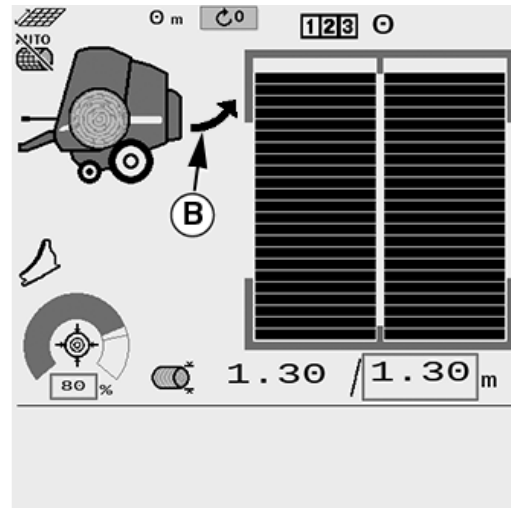
3. When the binding cycle is completed the bale ejection symbol (B) is displayed and the monitor beeps four times.
4. Open the rear gate of the baler with the tractor selective control valve lever to dump the bale. Use the display to monitor the rear gate position.

A—Stop PTO Symbol

B—Bale Ejection Symbol



CC274176



CC571147

CC274176—UN—29FEB16

CC571147—UN—11APR23

r2c13ue,1739284190640 -19-11FEB25-2/3

5. If a problem occurs during binding cycle, select "Stop Binding Cycle" softkey to interrupt binding cycle and retract actuator.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09



CC1031890

r2c13ue,1739284190640 -19-11FEB25-3/3

Manual Start of Binding Cycle

CC321713 —UN—29JUN17

An automatic net or twine binding cycle can be manually started at any time.

NOTE: If binding start mode is automatic, the binding cycle starts automatically when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Automatic Start of Binding Cycle](#) in this section.

1. To start an automatic binding cycle, select "Start Net Binding Cycle" or "Start Twine Binding Cycle" softkey from the baler application main page.



CC321713

Start Net Binding Cycle Softkey

CC351782 —UN—29MAY18



CC351782

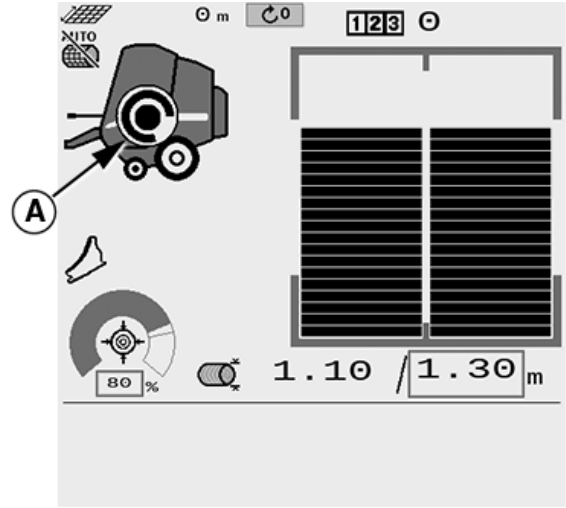
Start Twine Binding Cycle Softkey

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739284430569 -19-11FEB25-1/5

2. Binding process symbol (A) allows the binding cycle to be monitored.

A—Binding Process Symbol



CC571148

CC571148 —UN—12APR23

r2c13ue,1739284430569 -19-11FEB25-2/5

3. If a problem occurs during binding cycle, select "Stop Binding Cycle" softkey to interrupt binding cycle and retract actuator.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09



CC1031890

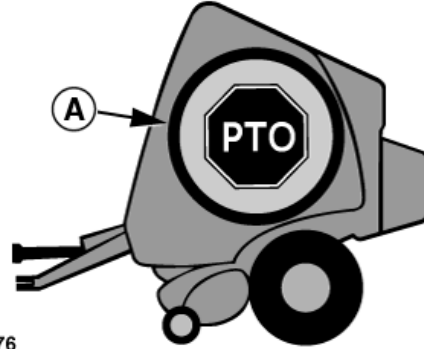
Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739284430569 -19-11FEB25-3/5

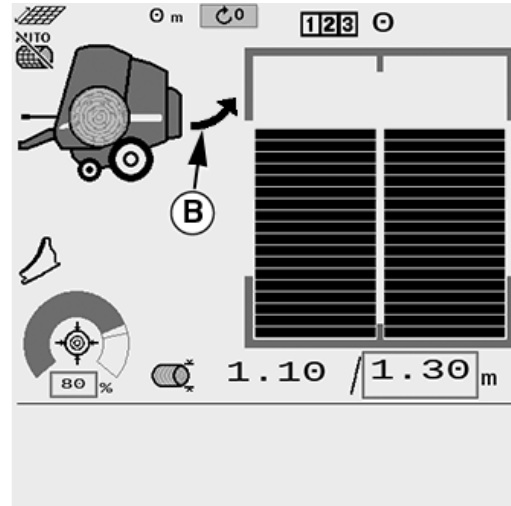
4. When the binding cycle is completed the bale ejection symbol (B) is displayed and the monitor beeps four times.
5. Open the rear gate of the baler with the tractor selective control valve lever to dump the bale. Use the display to monitor the rear gate position.

A—Stop PTO Symbol

B—Bale Ejection Symbol



CC274176



CC571149

CC274176—UN—29FEB16

CC571149—UN—12APR23

r2c13ue,1739284430569 -19-11FEB25-4/5

6. If a problem occurs during binding cycle, select "Stop Binding Cycle" softkey to interrupt binding cycle and retract actuator.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09



CC1031890

r2c13ue,1739284430569 -19-11FEB25-5/5

Operate Soft Core System

CC1031617 —UN—16SEP09

With soft core system enabled, the proportional density solenoid valve applies the soft core density setting until the soft core diameter setting is reached.

When bale size reaches core diameter setting, the proportional density solenoid valve applies the bale density setting. The bale is finished at adjusted bale density, forming tighter, and denser outer layers. This results in a lower density at the center of the bale. See [Adjust Bale Density](#) in this section to adjust the bale density.

Enable or Disable Soft Core System:



CC1031617

1. From the baler application main page, select and activate "Soft Core" softkey to enable soft core system.

Continued on next page

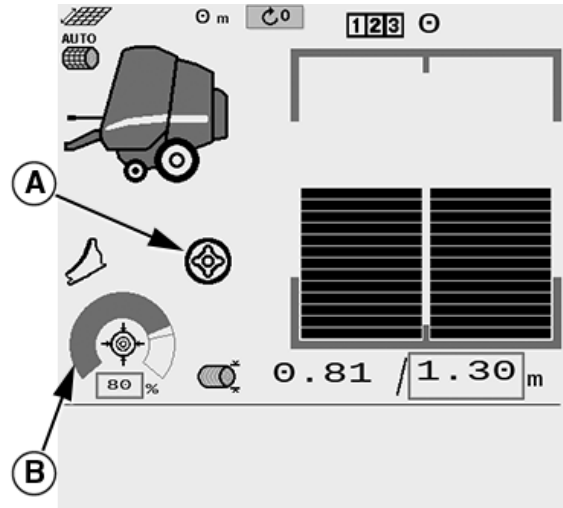
r2c13ue,1739351714958 -19-12FEB25-1/5

- The soft core symbol (A) is displayed when the soft core system is enabled.
- Select again "Soft Core" softkey to disable soft core system. The soft core symbol (A) disappears.

NOTE: Bale density indicator (B) indicates the relative pressure within the hydraulic bale tensioning system while forming a bale.

A—Soft Core Symbol

B—Bale Density Indicator



CC571150

CC571150—UN—12APR23

r2c13ue,1739351714958 -19-12FEB25-2/5

Adjust Soft Core Diameter and Density:

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

- From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

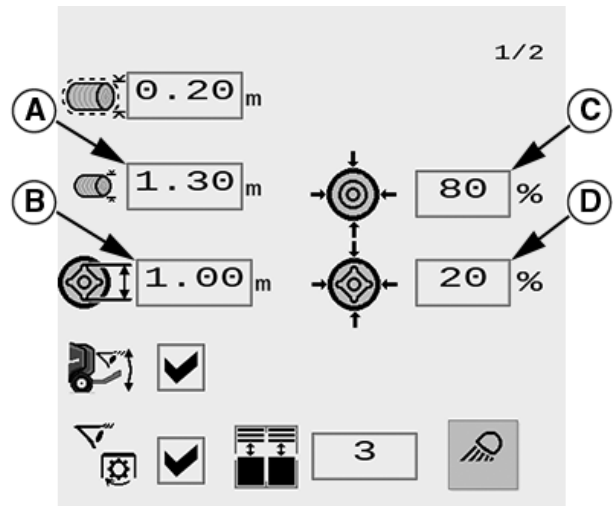
r2c13ue,1739351714958 -19-12FEB25-3/5

- Select input box (B) and set desired soft core diameter from 0.8 m (31.5 in) up to the adjusted bale diameter (A).
- Select input box (D) and set desired soft core density from 0 % (minimum density) to 100 % (maximum density).

NOTE: The initial factory setting is 20 %. To obtain a lower density at the center of the bale, soft core density value (D) must be less than bale density value (C).

A—Bale Diameter
B—Soft Core Diameter

C—Bale Density
D—Soft Core Density



CC574227

CC574227—UN—12APR23

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739351714958 -19-12FEB25-4/5

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

r2c13ue,1739351714958 -19-12FEB25-5/5

Adjust Bale Density

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



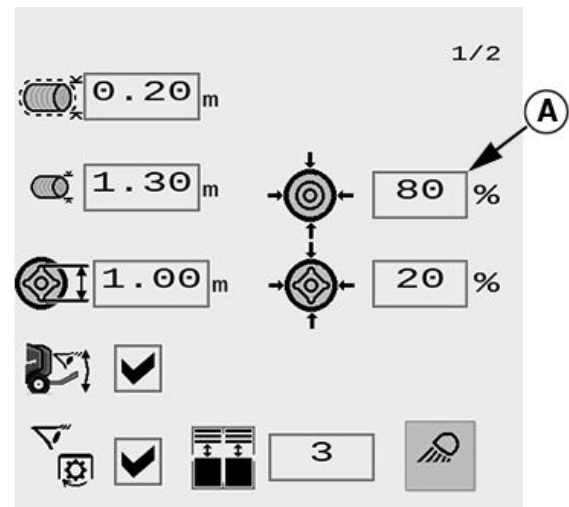
CC277966

tl81334,1680856375494 -19-12APR23-1/4

2. Select input box (A) and set the bale density from 0 % (minimum density) to 100 % (maximum density).

NOTE: The initial factory setting is 80 %. Bale density setting is limited to 80 % if density pressure sensor is defective or disconnected.

A—Bale Density



CC574228

CC574228 —UN—12APR23

tl81334,1680856375494 -19-12APR23-2/4

3. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

Continued on next page

tl81334,1680856375494 -19-12APR23-3/4

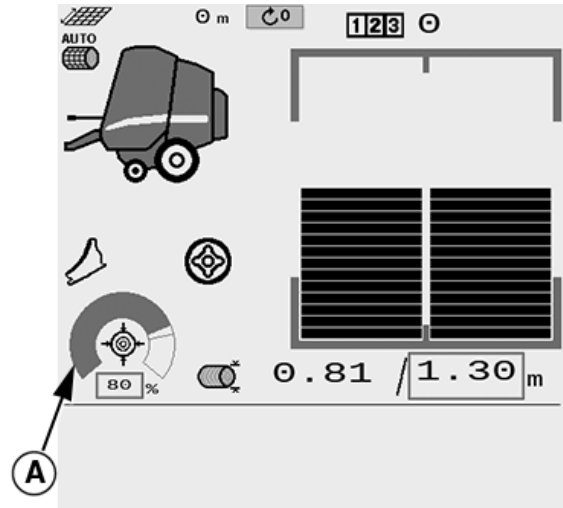
4. On the main page, indicator (A) indicates the relative pressure within the hydraulic bale tensioning system while forming a bale.

NOTE: Indicator (A) will not display a higher density setting until more material is fed into the baler.

Indicator (A) remains green while the baler is in normal operating pressure range.

Indicator (A) turns from green to red as soon as the baler exceeds the normal operating pressure range. In this case, reduce bale density.

A—Bale Density Indicator



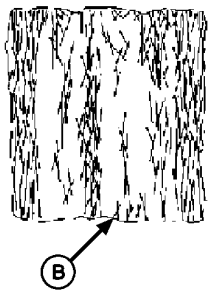
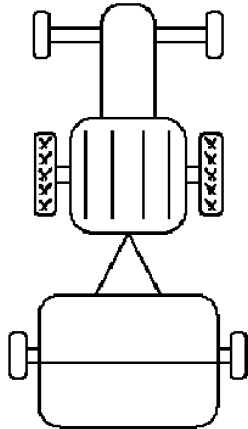
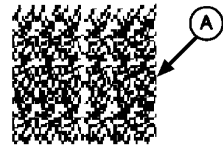
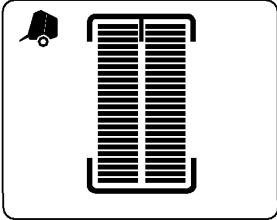
CC574229

CC574229 —UN—12APR23

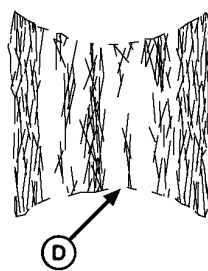
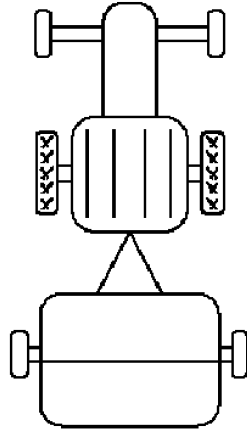
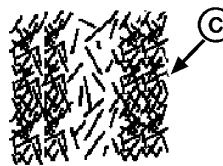
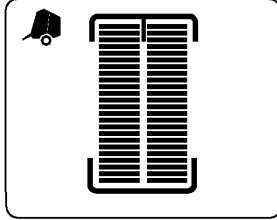
t81334,1680856375494 -19-12APR23-4/4

Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators

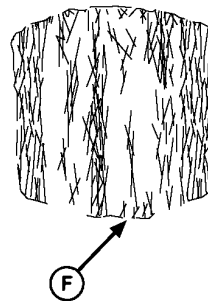
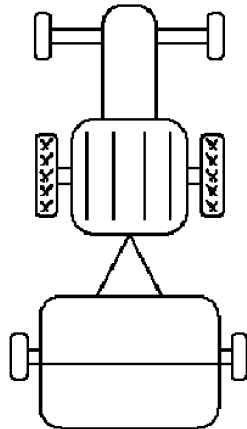
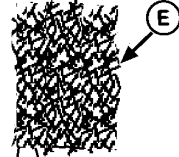
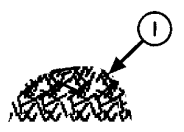
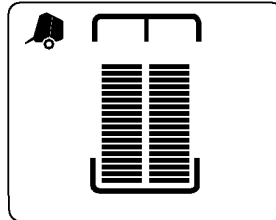
I



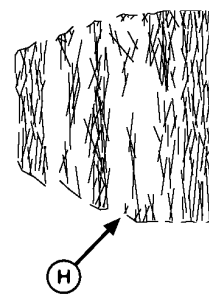
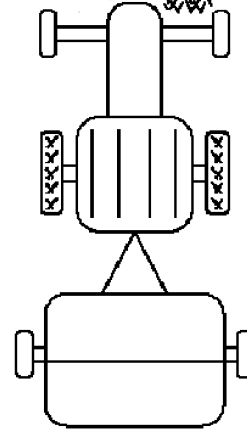
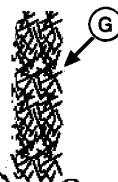
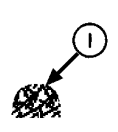
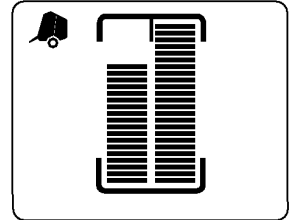
II



III



IV



E47515 —UN—07JAN00

Continued on next page

1181334,1680856525822 -19-12APR23-1/2

A—Correct Shape Windrow
B—Correct Shape Bale
C—Curve-Shaped Windrow

D—Hourglass-Shaped Bale
E—Round-Shaped Windrow
F—Barrel-Shaped Bale

G—Half Windrow
H—Cone-Shaped Bale
I— Top of the Windrow

The illustration on the facing page and the following information describe the relationship between the monitor-controller display, windrow variations, and current bale shape.

To ensure optimum bale shape and maximum bale density, the top bar is shown on both sides of the bale shape indicator display, as shown in Example I. The top bar is displayed when bale is being bound. See Guidelines to Form a Good Bale in Operating the Baler - General Purpose section.

I— Correct shape bale (B) is formed when correct shape windrow (A) has a uniform side-to-side density and bale width is the same as bale chamber width. Weaving is not necessary.

If this is not practical, create windrows up to one-half the width of the bale chamber and follow the bale shape bars. See Guidelines to Form a Good Bale in Operating the Baler - General Purpose section.

II— If curve-shaped windrow (C) is heavy on the edges and light at the center, an hourglass-shaped bale (D) is formed even though bale shape bars are balanced and all lit.

If possible, weaving back and forth across windrow helps fill the middle of the bale. Otherwise, proper windrow formation (raking, etc.) is needed.

III— The bale shape bars will not reach maximum height and a barrel-shaped bale (F) is formed if any of the following conditions exist:

- Windrow width is approximately 2/3—3/4 the width of the baler.

- Windrow is correct but the operator is not weaving over far enough.
- Windrow width is full but density in the middle of the windrow is greater.
- Weaving back and forth too frequently.

If windrow is almost as wide as bale chamber, reduce tractor rpm and increase ground speed to spread material across pickup.

Windrow preparation is less than one-half of the bale chamber width or as large as the bale chamber. If necessary, rake windrow to obtain correct width.

The bale shape bar will not reach maximum height when operating at reduced bale density and/or using variable core option. This is also true when operating in certain crops such as third cut grass or short wheat straw, because ends of bale are soft.

IV— If half windrow (G) is baled without weaving back and forth, a cone-shaped bale (H) is formed. The same result is obtained if operator feeds one side more than other.

Weave back and forth across the narrow windrow to keep bale shape bars as high as possible.

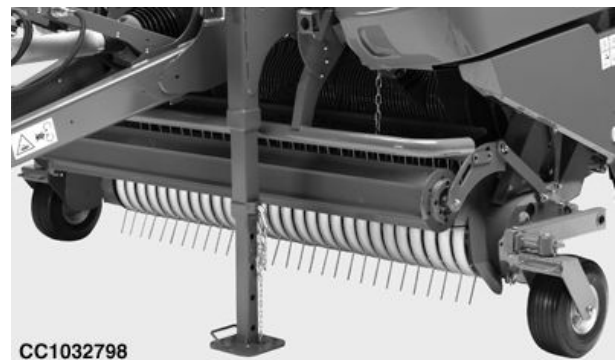
NOTE: *Bale shape bars may not reach maximum height when operating at reduced bale density and when the soft core option is enabled. This is also true when operating in certain crops such as third cut grass or short wheat straw, because ends of bale are soft.*

tt81334,1680856525822 -19-12APR23-2/2

Raise or Lower the Pickup Function

CAUTION: To help prevent personal injury caused by unexpected movement, disengage PTO, engage park brake, shut off the tractor engine, and remove key. Wait for all moving part to come standstill. The pickup is still able to move downwards.

The pickup raise or lower function is automatically selected. Actuate tractor selective control valve lever to raise or lower the pickup.



CC1032798 —UN—23NOV10

tt81334,1680077535591 -19-30MAR23-1/1

Retract or Engage Precutter Knives Function

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09

The precutter knives device is used to chop the crop.

NOTE: It is not recommended to work with precutter knives set 1 and 2 engaged at the same time. Ground speed will be highly reduced.



CC1031618

1. From the baler application main page, select "Drop Floor and Precutter Knives Management" softkey.

ti81334,1680856560192 -19-23MAY23-1/4

2. Select "Precutter Knives Set 1" or "Precutter Knives Set 2" (if equipped) softkeys, to activate the retract or engage knives function for the desired precutter knives set.

CC1031807 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: The precutter knives set 1 includes 13 precutter knives and the precutter knives set 2 includes 12 precutter knives.

Distance between knives is 40 mm (1-9/16 in) with 25 knives engaged and 80 mm (3-2/16 in) with 12 or 13 knives engaged.



CC1031807

Precutter Knives Set 1 Softkey

CC1032652 —UN—24NOV10



CC1032652

Precutter Knives Set 2 Softkey

ti81334,1680856560192 -19-23MAY23-2/4

3. Actuate tractor selective control valve lever to retract or engage the selected set of precutter knives.

NOTE: Retract or engage knives function uses the same selective control valve as raise or lower the pickup.

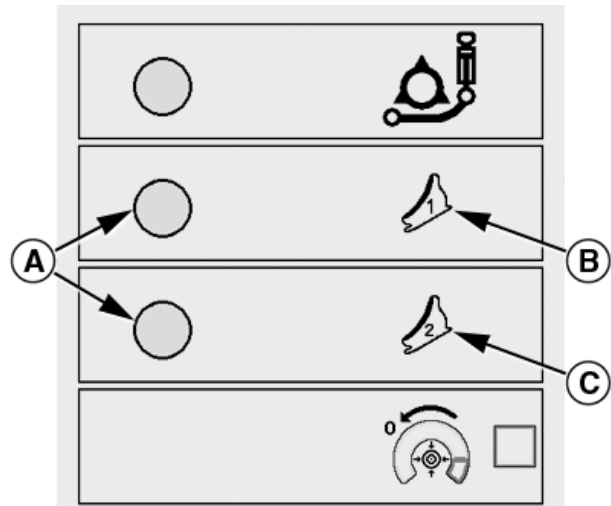
The retract or engage knives function status (A) is displayed green, to indicate that the retract or engage knives function is activated for the precutter knives sets.

The retract or engage knife function status (A) is displayed red, to indicate that the retract or engage knives function is deactivated for the precutter knives sets.

4. Knives position symbol (B) and (C) are crossed out when precutter knives set is not engaged.

IMPORTANT: Retract and engage precutter knives several times after each working day to prevent from jamming.

NOTE: When using baler with precutter knives retracted for a long time, it is recommended to remove knives, and install fillers to plug the knife slot. See Replace Precutter Knives in Service section.



CC353861

Baler with Precutter, 25 Knives Shown

CC353861 —UN—31MAY18

A—Retract or Engage Knives Function Status
B—Precutter Knives Set 1 Position Symbol

C—Precutter Knives Set 2 Position Symbol

Continued on next page

ti81334,1680856560192 -19-23MAY23-3/4

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16

NOTE: When you return to baler application main page, the raise or lower the pickup function is automatically selected.



CC277965

ti81334,1680856560192 -19-23MAY23-4/4

Unplug Pickup

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09

Whenever it is necessary to unplug the baler, lower the drop floor to increase the empty space beneath the rotary feeder.



CC1031618

1. Stop tractor and disengage the PTO.
2. From the baler application main page, select "Drop Floor and Precutter Knives Management" softkey.

Continued on next page

ti81334,1680856580374 -19-23MAY23-1/3

IMPORTANT: Checkbox (K) should never be activated otherwise gate latch opening could occurs. This functionality is hidden on software version higher than 12.84a.

3. Select the "Drop Floor" softkey to activate the raise or lower drop floor function only. If needed, select "Drop Floor and Precutter Knife" softkey to activate the raise or lower drop floor, and the retract or engage knife functions at the same time.

NOTE: "Raise or lower the drop floor function" uses the same selective control valve as raise or lower the pickup.

Drop floor function status (A) is displayed green to indicate that the "Raise or Lower Drop Floor" function is activated. Precutter knife function status (C) is automatically displayed green if precutter knife function is selected too.

4. Actuate selective control valve lever to lower the drop floor and retract precutter knives (if engaged) at the same time.

Drop floor lowered symbol (G) and precutter knives retracted symbol (H) and (J), indicate that the drop floor is lowered and the precutter knives are retracted.

5. When the drop floor is lowered, slowly engage the PTO at slow tractor idle until rotary feeder turns freely.
6. When the machine is unplugged, Actuate selective control valve lever to raise the drop floor, and engage precutter knives (if activated).
7. Put the selective control valve lever to neutral position.

- | | |
|--|---|
| A—Drop Floor Function Status | F—Precutter Knives Set 2 Engaged Symbol |
| B—Drop Floor Raised Symbol | G—Drop Floor Lowered Symbol |
| C—Precutter Knives Set 1 Function Status | H—Precutter Knives Set 1 Retracted Symbol |
| D—Precutter Knives Set 1 Engaged Symbol | J—Precutter Knives Set 2 Retracted Symbol |
| E—Precutter Knives Set 2 Function Status | K—DO NOT TICK |

CC1031806 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031806

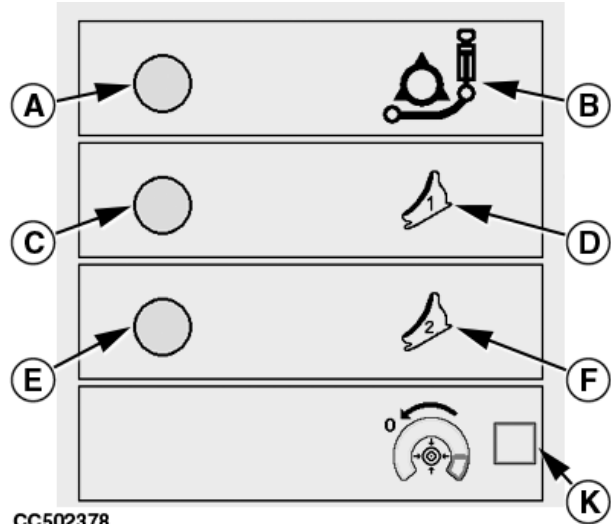
Drop Floor Softkey

CC1031805 —UN—16SEP09



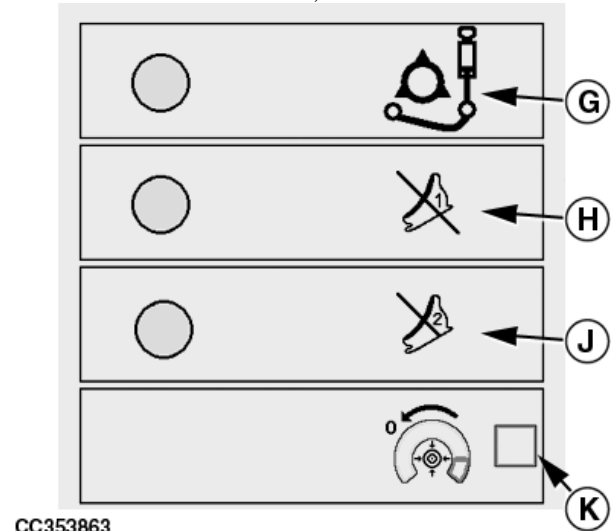
CC1031805

Drop Floor and Precutter Knives Softkey



CC502378

Baler with Precutter, 25 knives Shown



CC353863

Baler with Precutter, 25 knives Shown

Continued on next page

1181334,1680856580374 - 19-23MAY23-2/3

8. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

NOTE: When you return to baler application main page, the raise or lower the pickup function is automatically selected.

tl81334,1680856580374 -19-23MAY23-3/3

Customer and Field Counters

CC324600 —UN—14SEP17

The counter function includes 10 possible customers and a list of 10 field counters per customer. These counters can be used to store daily number of bales or number of bales per field.

The bale must be bound, and the rear gate must be fully opened and closed to add a bale to the current field counter.

1. From the baler application main page, select "Counters" softkey.

2. Select Customer and Field Number:

Select customer:

- a. Select and activate drop-down list (B).
- b. Select the desired customer name (10 customer name are available).
- c. The list shows the number of bales per fields and shows the total number of the 10 fields for the selected customer.

Select field number:

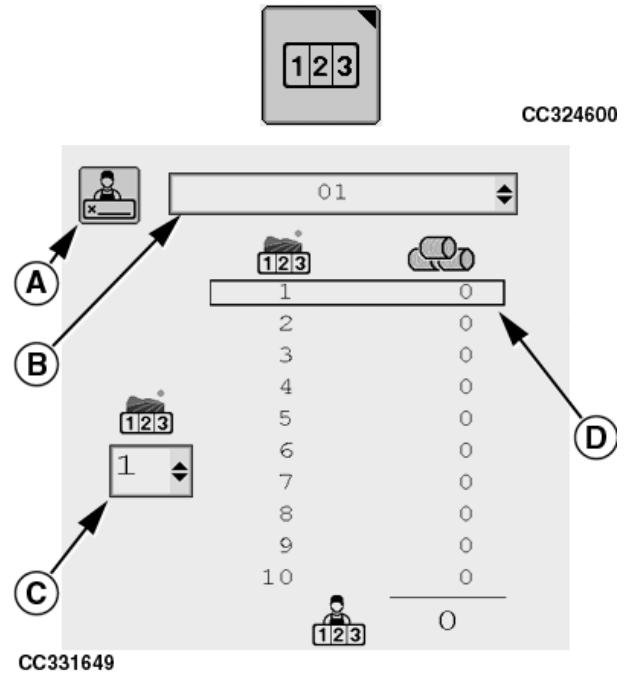
- a. Select and activate drop-down list (C).
- b. Select the desired field number from 1 to 10.

NOTE: Current field indicator (D) is displayed to indicate which field number is selected.

The bale counter of the current field is also displayed on the main page. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

Rename Customer name:

NOTE: The "Rename Customer" button (A) is not available with the Implement Display 1100 monitor.



A—Rename Customer Name Button
B—Customer Name

C—Field Selection
D—Current Field Indicator

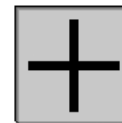
- a. Select the desired customer name in the drop-down list (B).
- b. Press the button (A).
- c. Use keys and softkeys which correspond to alphabetical characters.

tl81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-1/7

3. Add or Remove Bales in Current Field Counters:

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

If needed, select "Remove Bales" or "Add Bales" softkey to adjust the total number of bales for the current field counter.



CC1031852

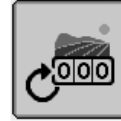
Continued on next page

tl81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-2/7

4. Clear Current Field Counter:

CC324601 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Clear Current Counter" softkey to clear the current field bale counter.



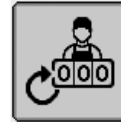
CC324601

ti81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-3/7

5. Clear Current Customer Counters:

CC324602 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Clear Current Customer Counters" softkey to clear information about all fields of the selected customer.



CC324602

ti81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-4/7

6. Customer and Field Counters Softkey:

CC324603 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Customer and Field Counters" softkey to go to the customer and field counters page.



CC324603

ti81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-5/7

7. Season and Total Counters Softkey:

CC324605 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Season and Total Counters" softkey to go to the season and total counters page.



CC324605

ti81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-6/7

8. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

ti81334,1681293693671 -19-12APR23-7/7

Season and Machine Total Counters

CC324600 —UN—14SEP17

1. From the baler application main page, select "Counters" softkey.



CC324600

Continued on next page

ti81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-1/8

2. From the counter page, select "Season and Total Counters" softkey.

CC324605 —UN—14SEP17

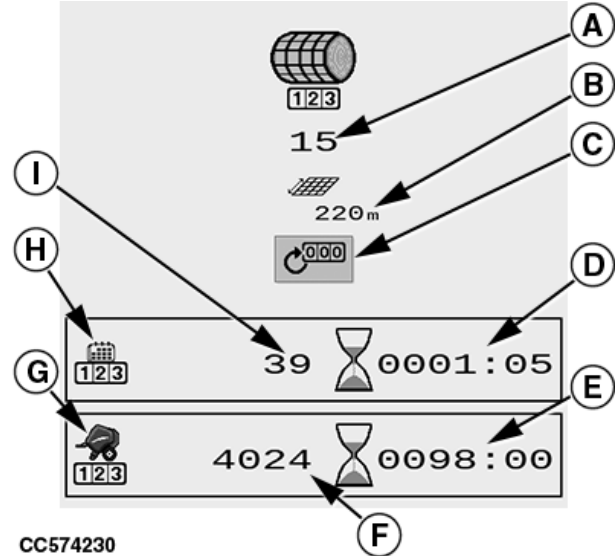


CC324605

†81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-2/8

3. Read and reset season and machine total counters:

- Bale with net binding counters:**
The bale with net binding counter (A) shows the total number of bales bound with the net binding device for the season. The net binding season consumption counter (B) shows the season consumption of the net binding. Use the button (C) to reset counters (A) and (B).
- Season counter (H):**
The season counter (H) shows total number of bales for season (I) and total time of season (D).
- Machine total counters (G):**
The machine total counters (G) shows the total number of bales done by the machine (F) and the total time done by the machine (E).



- | | |
|--|---|
| A—Bale with Net Binding Counter | F—Total Number of Bales Done by the Machine |
| B—Net Binding Season Consumption Counter | G—Machine Total Counter |
| C—Reset Bale with Net Binding Counter Button | H—Season Counter |
| D—Total Time of Season | I—Total Number of Bales for Season |
| E—Total Time done by the Machine | |

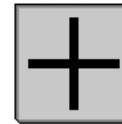
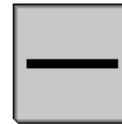
CC574230 —UN—04MAY23

†81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-3/8

4. Add or Remove Bales in Season Counters:

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

Select "Remove Bales" or "Add Bales" softkey to adjust if necessary the total number of bales for season counter.



CC1031852

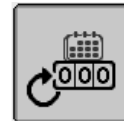
NOTE: Changing the total number of bales for season does not modify the current field bale counter.

†81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-4/8

5. Clear Season Counters:

CC324604 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Clear Current Counters" softkey to clear the total number of bales for season and total time of season.



CC324604

Continued on next page

†81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-5/8

6. Customer and Field Counters Softkey:

CC324603 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Customer and Field Counters" softkey to go to the customer and field counters page.



CC324603

tl81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-6/8

7. Season and Total Counters Softkey:

CC324605 —UN—14SEP17

Select "Season and Total Counters" softkey to go to the season and total counters page.



CC324605

tl81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-7/8

8. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1680856614623 -19-12APR23-8/8

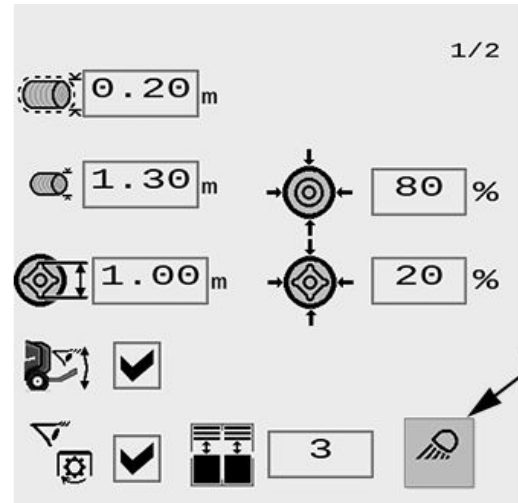
Operate Side Door Lights (If Equipped)

Different lights can be turned ON or OFF from the virtual terminal.

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.
2. Select "Side Door Lights" button to active or deactivate the side door lights.

Button background is yellow when the side door lights are activated or gray when lights are deactivated.

A—Side Door Lights Button



CC574231

CC574231 —UN—12APR23

Continued on next page

tl81334,1681305964707 -19-12APR23-1/3

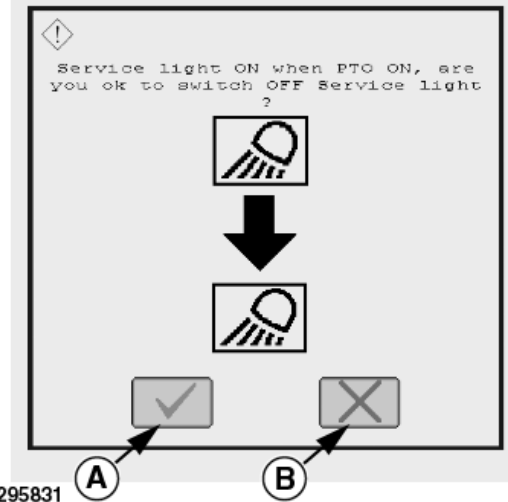
- If the operator engages the PTO whereas side door lights are ON, a message is displayed to ask if lights should be switched OFF.

Select "Accept" button to switch OFF side door lights or "Cancel" button to keep side door lights ON.

NOTE: The user cannot activate side door lights when PTO is ON.

A—Accept Button

B—Cancel Button



CC295831

CC295831 —19—21DEC16

†81334,1681305964707 -19-12APR23-2/3

- Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

†81334,1681305964707 -19-12APR23-3/3

Video Application

PC15312 —UN—15MAY13

The video application is used to observe areas around the machine that are difficult to see from the operator's station. See your tractor Operator's Manual.



DC82261,0000647 -19-15SEP15-1/1

Operating Baler in Automation Mode

Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely

The Baler Automation system is intended to aid the operator in performing field operations more efficiently. The operator is always responsible for controlling the machine's path and behavior as well as the behavior of the bale. To prevent injury to operator and bystanders,

always remain alert and pay attention to the surrounding environment. Do not rely on the system to stop the vehicle when an obstacle or bystander is present.

Read and understand Operating Baler in Automation Mode section before using automation.

OUCC006,00015C2 -19-18JAN10-1/1

Tractor-Implement Automation Prerequisites

Tractor-Implement Automation (TIA) relies on ISOBUS information exchange between tractor and baler.

TIA requires an ISOBUS Ready tractor with at least electronic selective control valves to operate the baler in automation mode level 1 (baler gate automation). ISOBUS Ready tractor equipped with electronic selective control valves and IVT allows the baler to be operated in automation mode level 2 (baler gate automation and tractor automatic stop). To operate the baler in automation mode, a TIA activation key needs to be installed on the

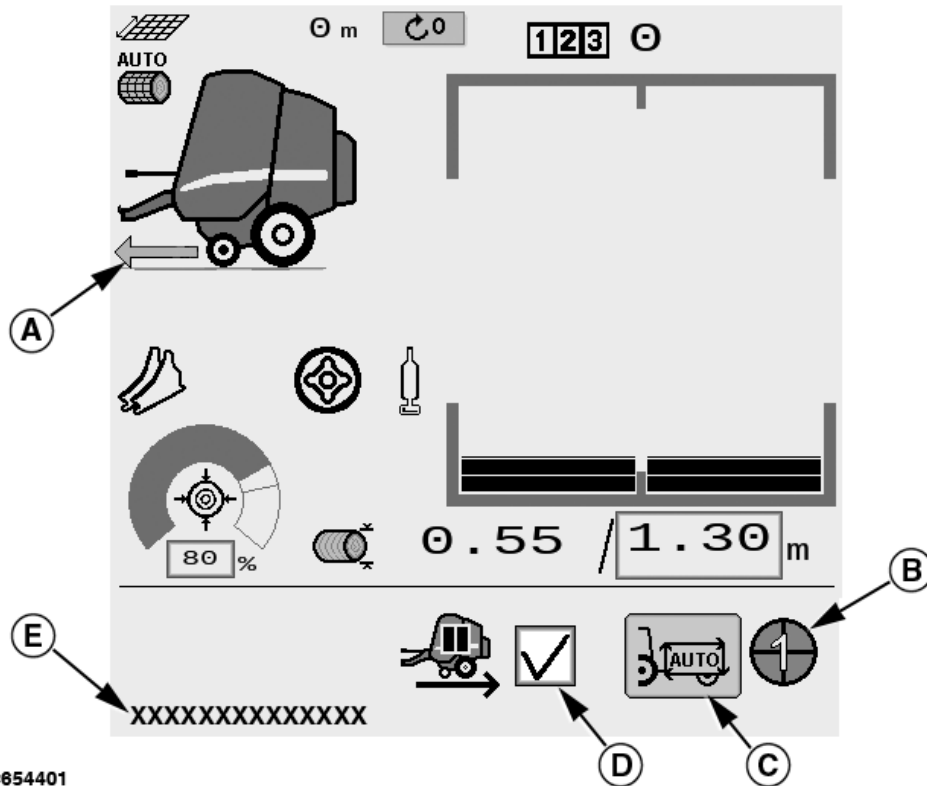
tractor and on the baler. For more information see your John Deere dealer.

Theory of operation:

- Baler commands tractor to brake until tractor stops forward travel when adjusted bale diameter is reached.
- Baler commands tractor to activate electronic selective control valve to open and close the gate to unload the bale.
- Baler commands tractor to disengage the PTO and brake until tractor stops forward travel when baler plugging occurs.

OUCC006,0001801 -19-20SEP11-1/1

Baler Automation Main Page Display Description



CC654401

- A—Baler Ready to Go Symbol
 B—Automation States Pie Symbol
 C—Enable or Disable Automation Button
 D—Manual Bale Unload
 E—Automation Deactivation Message

The main page allows the baler automation functions to be controlled and monitored while operating in the field.

Symbol (A) indicates that the baler is ready to continue operation in automation mode after the bale unloading process. See [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this section.

Symbol (B) indicates the current automation state. See [Automation States Pie](#) in this section.

Button (C) is used to enable or disable the automation mode. See [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this

section. If automation was deactivated or cannot be activated, button (C) provides direct access to the automation diagnostic pages. See [Automation Diagnostic](#) in this section.

Manual bale unload (D) function places automation mode in a paused state when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Manual Bale Unload](#) in this section.

Message (E) indicates why automation was deactivated or cannot be activated. See [Automation Diagnostic](#) and [Automation Deactivation Message List](#) in this section.

†81334,1731927163256 -19-18NOV24-1/1

Automation Softkey Designation

“Automation Settings” softkey.

See this section.



CC1034499

Continued on next page

TL81334,000038C -19-08JUN18-1/2

“Automation Diagnostic” softkey.

CC1031799 —UN—16SEP09

See Automation Diagnostic in this section.



CC1031799

TL81334,000038C -19-08JUN18-2/2

Operate Baler in Automation Mode

Before automation mode activation, check following conditions:

- Automation level is selected. See [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.
- Baler rear gate selective control valve is selected. See [Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve](#) in this section.
- Automation states pie symbol (B) shows Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie). See [Automation States Pie](#) in this section.

1. Select and activate button (C) to switch automation state (B) to Enabled (3/4 of pie).
2. Move tractor reverse drive lever to Power Zero™, center park, or forward position (automation level 2 only), and press “Tractor-Implement Automation™” hot key or button (resume switch) (D). See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.
3. Automation states pie (B) is switched to Active (4/4 pie) and monitor beeps to indicate that automation mode is activated.
4. Set the travel speed and start baling. See your tractor operator's manual.
5. According to the selected binding start mode, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward (automation level 2 only). See [Select Binding Start Mode](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
 - If binding start mode is Automatic, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward when the binding cycle start automatically.
 - If binding start mode is Manual, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward when the operator selects “Start Net Binding Cycle” softkey.

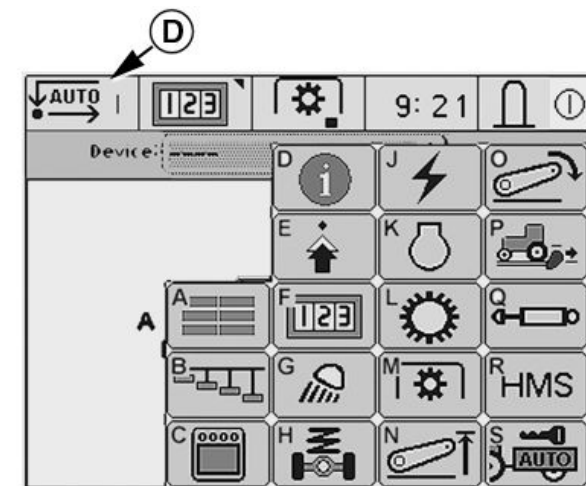
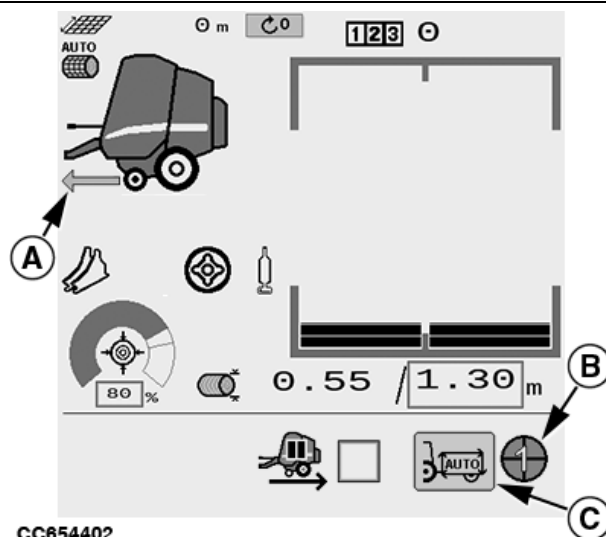
NOTE: See [Adjust Tractor Behavior](#) in this section to adjust the tractor deceleration.

6. After the binding process, tractor actuates electronic selective control valve to unload the bale.

NOTE: To unload the bale at a specific place, activate the manual bale unload function. See [Manual Bale Unload](#) in this section.

7. After bale unloading, symbol (A) is displayed to indicate that the baler is ready to proceed in automation mode.
8. Move tractor reverse drive lever to the center park position then in forward position to baling again (automation level 2 only). See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

NOTE: Instead of moving tractor reverse drive lever, operator can press and hold brake or clutch pedal when the bale diameter is reached and until symbol (A) is displayed.



Tractor-Implement Automation™ Hot Key on Tractor Virtual Terminal



Tractor-Implement Automation™ Button on Tractor Instrument Panel.

- A—Baler Ready to Go Symbol
- B—Automation States Pie Symbol
- C—Enable or Disable Automation Button
- D—Tractor-Implement Automation™ Hot Key or Button

Continued on next page

†81334,1731927235732 -19-12FEB25-1/2

9. Tractor starts moving forward automatically and accelerates until adjusted travel speed is obtained (automation level 2 only).

NOTE: See *Adjust Tractor Behavior* in this section to adjust the tractor acceleration.

IMPORTANT: Moving tractor speed control lever while the tractor automatically decelerates or accelerates may deactivate automation.

10. To deactivate automation mode, select and activate button (C) to switch automation states pie (B) to Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie).

tl81334,1731927235732 -19-12FEB25-2/2

Unplug Pickup in Automation Mode

When operating the baler in automation mode, and plugging occurs, the system is capable of disengaging the tractor PTO automatically if automatic tractor PTO disengagement function is enabled. See *Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement* in this section.

1. Whenever it is necessary to unplug the pickup, the tractor disengages the PTO automatically.
 - If working in automation level 1:
A warning screen appears to indicate that the pickup is plugged. The tractor must be stopped manually.
 - If working in automation level 2:
A warning screen appears to indicate that the pickup is plugged. Then the tractor slows down, and stops moving forward automatically.
2. When the tractor stops moving forward, automation state is switched from Active (4/4 pie) to Enabled (3/4 of pie).
3. Move tractor PTO control lever to the disengaged position.
4. Unplug the pickup. See *Unplug Pickup* in Operating Baler Application section.
5. When the pickup is unplugged successfully, move tractor reverse drive lever to Power Zero™, center park, or forward position (automation level 2 only), and press “Tractor-Implement Automation™” hot key, or button (resume switch) to continue baling in automation mode. See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.



CC1035194

Automation Level 1



CC1035195

Automation Level 2

CC1035194 —19—31AUG11

CC1035195 —19—31AUG11

TL81334,000038E -19-18JUN18-1/1

Select Automation Level

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select “Settings” softkey.



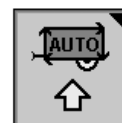
CC277966

Continued on next page

tl81334,1731927349415 -19-18NOV24-1/4

2. Select "Automation Settings" softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

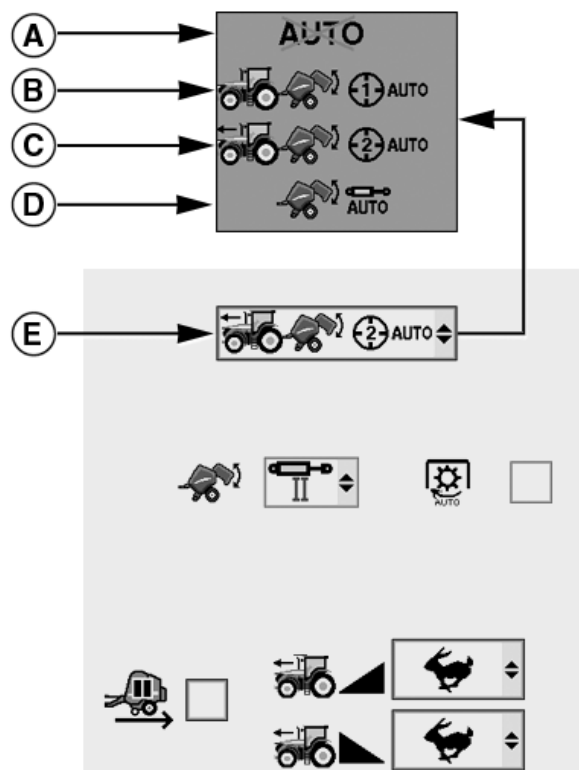
†81334,1731927349415 -19-18NOV24-2/4

3. Select and activate drop-down list (E) then select the desired automation level:

- **Automation OFF (A)** - Tractor does not receive commands from the baler. The baler does not execute automation functions.
- **Automation level 1 (B)** - Tractor receives commands from the baler to actuate the SCV to unload the bale after binding cycle (requires tractor with E-SCV).
- **Automation level 2 (C)** - Tractor receives commands from the baler to brake until tractor stops moving forward when the adjusted bale diameter is reached (requires tractor with IVT). After the binding cycle, tractor receives commands from the baler to actuate the SCV to unload the bale (requires tractor with E-SCV).
- **Automatic Tailgate Mode (D)** - See Operating Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode section.

A—Automation OFF
B—Automation Level 1
C—Automation Level 2

D—Automatic Tailgate Mode
E—Automation Level Drop-Down List



CC342482

CC342482 —UN—19APR18

†81334,1731927349415 -19-18NOV24-3/4

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

†81334,1731927349415 -19-18NOV24-4/4

Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



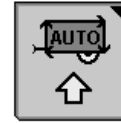
CC277966

Continued on next page

†81334,1731927395109 -19-18NOV24-1/4

2. Select "Automation Settings" softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

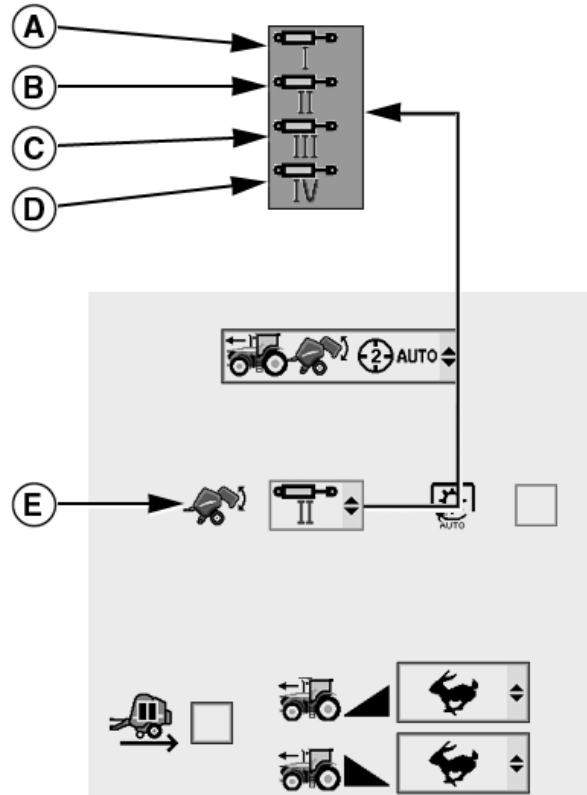
ti81334,1731927395109 -19-18NOV24-2/4

3. Select, and activate drop-down list (E).
4. Select the corresponding tractor SCV (A), (B), (C), or (D) to operate the baler rear gate.

NOTE: The number of SCVs available in the drop-down list (A) depends on the tractor configuration.

A—Tractor SCV 1
B—Tractor SCV 2
C—Tractor SCV 3

D—Tractor SCV 4
E—Rear Gate SCV



CC342483

CC342483 —UN—19APR18

ti81334,1731927395109 -19-18NOV24-3/4

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

ti81334,1731927395109 -19-18NOV24-4/4

Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



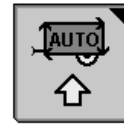
CC277966

Continued on next page

ti81334,1731927435448 -19-18NOV24-1/4

2. Select “Automation Settings” softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



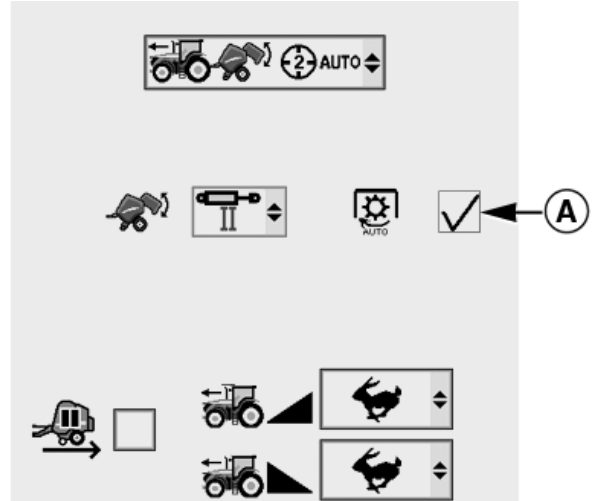
CC1034499

tt81334,1731927435448 -19-18NOV24-2/4

3. Check box (A) is used to enable, or disable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function.

- Tick check box (A) to enable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function.
The automatic tractor PTO disengagement function disengages the tractor PTO when operating the baler in automation mode, and plugging occurs. For more information, see [Unplug Pickup in Automation Mode](#) in this section.
- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function.

A—Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement



CC342484

CC342484 —UN—19APR18

tt81334,1731927435448 -19-18NOV24-3/4

4. Select “Main Page” softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tt81334,1731927435448 -19-18NOV24-4/4

Adjust Tractor Behavior

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select “Settings” softkey.

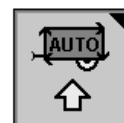


CC277966

tt81334,1731927504821 -19-18NOV24-1/4

2. Select “Automation Settings” softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

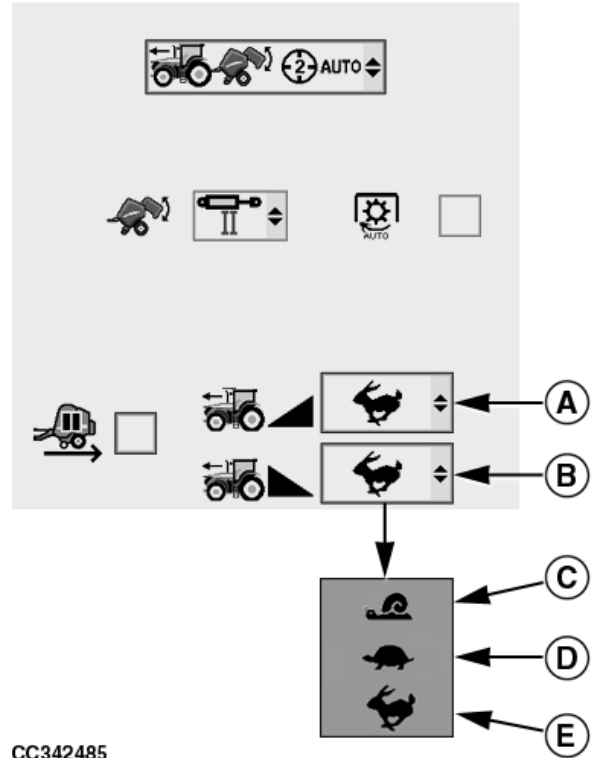
tt81334,1731927504821 -19-18NOV24-2/4

- When working in automation level 2, tractor acceleration, and deceleration can be adjusted. See [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.

- Adjust tractor acceleration:
Select, and activate drop-down list (A), and set the desired tractor acceleration (C), (D), or (E). This value is applied when tractor reverse drive lever is moved to center park position, and then to forward position after the bale unloading process.
- Adjust tractor deceleration:
Select, and activate drop-down list (B), and set the desired tractor deceleration (C), (D), or (E). This value is applied when the adjusted bale diameter is reached, and the tractor brakes, and stops moving forward.

A—Tractor Acceleration
B—Tractor Deceleration
C—Minimum

D—Normal
E—Maximum



CC342485

CC342485 —UN—19APR18

ti81334,1731927504821 -19-18NOV24-3/4

- Select “Main Page” softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

ti81334,1731927504821 -19-18NOV24-4/4

Manual Bale Unload

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

- From the baler application main page, select “Settings” softkey.



CC277966

ti81334,1731927542772 -19-18NOV24-1/4

- Select “Automation Settings” softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

ti81334,1731927542772 -19-18NOV24-2/4

3. Check box (A) is used to enable, or disable the manual bale unload function.

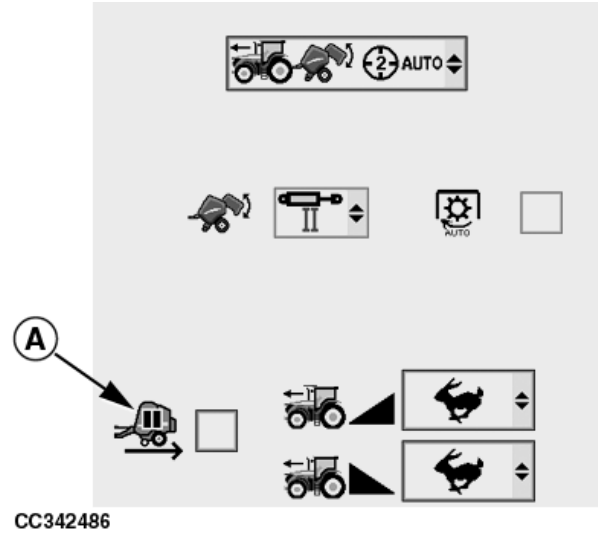
- Tick check box (A) to enable the manual bale unload function.

The manual bale unload function places automation in Paused state when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. This function allows the tractor to be placed at the desired location before unloading the bale and is recommended for hilly conditions.

To unload the bale, move tractor reverse drive lever to center park position then place automation in Active state by pressing “Tractor-Implement Automation™” hot key, or button (resume switch). See [Automation States Pie](#) in this section, and see TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the manual bale unload function. The bale is automatically unloaded at the end of the binding cycle.

NOTE: This function is also available from the baler application main page. See [Baler Automation Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.



A—Manual Bale Unload

tl81334,1731927542772 -19-18NOV24-3/4

4. Select “Main Page” softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1731927542772 -19-18NOV24-4/4

Automation States Pie

CC1031913 —UN—30OCT09

On the main page, automation states pie indicates the current automation state. Automation has six different states.

NOTE: The number (1, or 2) displayed inside the automation states pie indicates the automation level selected. See [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.

1. Unavailable:

If tractor is not “Automation Ready”, automation states pie is Unavailable (does not appear on the main page). The tractor is not capable to receive commands from the baler.

2. Disabled:



Disabled

CC1031913

If tractor and baler are “Automation Ready”, automation state is Disabled (1/4 of pie). The tractor is capable to receive commands from the baler.

Continued on next page

TL81334,0000395 -19-11JUN18-1/5

3. Ready-to-Enable:

CC1031919 —UN—30OCT09

Automation state switches automatically to Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie) state some time after ignition key is turned ON. If not, see [Automation Diagnostic](#) in this section.



Ready-to-Enable

CC1031919

TL81334,0000395 -19-11JUN18-2/5

4. Enabled:

CC1031920 —UN—15NOV10

When automation states pie is Ready-to-Enable, select, and activate the enable, or disable automation icon on the baler application main page to switch automation state to Enabled (3/4 of pie). See [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this section.



Enabled

CC1031920

TL81334,0000395 -19-11JUN18-3/5

5. Active:

CC1031921 —UN—30OCT09

When automation state is enabled, press tractor automation resume switch to switch automation state to Active (4/4 of pie). When automation states pie shows an active state, the baler commands the tractor. See [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this section and see TIA — Tractor-Implement Automation section in your tractor operator's manual.

NOTE: Following conditions must be met to switch automation state from Enabled to Active.

- Tractor reverser lever is in "Power Zero", center park, or forward position.



Active

CC1031921

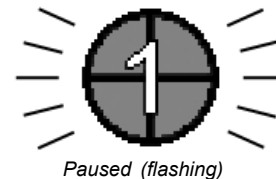
- The baler rear gate is closed and latched.
- Current bale diameter is less than 98% of the adjusted bale diameter.
- Tractor detects an operator on the seat.
- Tractor PTO is engaged.

TL81334,0000395 -19-11JUN18-4/5

6. Paused:

CC1031923 —UN—30OCT09

Automation state switches automatically from Active (4/4 of pie) to Paused (4/4 of pie flashing) when the manual bale unload function is enabled, and adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Manual Bale Unload](#) in this section.



Paused (flashing)

CC1031921

TL81334,0000395 -19-11JUN18-5/5

Automation Diagnostic

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



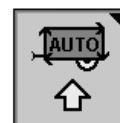
CC277966

Continued on next page

tl81334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-1/7

2. Select "Automation Settings" softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

†81334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-2/7

3. Select "Automation Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031799 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031799

†81334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-3/7

4. Message (A) indicates why automation was deactivated, or cannot be activated. See [Automation Deactivation Message List](#) in this section.

On the baler application main page, message (A) is also displayed for 3 seconds then disappears if automation was deactivated, or cannot be activated. See [Baler Automation Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

Automation table page 1/2 shows information about the required conditions for automation, and automation state: disabled (B) (1/4 of pie), and ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie). When a condition is met, the condition status (D - J) displayed is OK.

Disabled (B) (1/4 of pie):

- Status (D) is OK if the tractor is capable of receiving commands from the baler. If status (D) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

Ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie):

- Status (E) is OK if the baler automation activation key is successfully saved. If status (E) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.
- Status (F) is OK if there is no active diagnostic trouble code. If status (F) is not OK, see [Recent Problems](#) in Baler Application Service section.
- Status (G) is OK if there is no error regarding the Tractor-Implement Automation™ hot key, or button (resume switch). If status (G) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.
- Status (H) is OK if the tractor ignition key is turned ON. If status (H) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (I) is OK if the tractor automation activation key is successfully saved. If status (I) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

Last Exit Code Issued: 1/2
Manual tying timeout

Conditions	OK
Tractor Automation Ready	OK
Baler Activation	OK
No Active Baler Codes	OK
Resume Switch Status	OK
Key Switch On	OK
Security Authorized	OK
Automation ON	OK

CC1038509

A—Automation Deactivation Message
B—Automation State Disabled
C—Automation State Ready-to-enable
D - J— Condition Status

- Status (J) is OK if the selected automation level is automation level 1 or automation level 2. If status (J) is not OK, see [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.

NOTE: On the baler application main page, if automation state ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie) cannot be obtained, check missing condition, and see your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

†81334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-4/7

5. Select "Next Page", or "Previous Page" softkey to access page 2/2.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

1181334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-5/7

6. Automation table page 2/2 shows information about the required condition for automation, and automation state: enabled (A) (3/4 of pie), and active (B) (4/4 of pie). When a condition is met, the condition status (C - I) displayed is OK.

Enabled (A) (3/4 of pie):

- Status (C) is OK if the enable, or disable automation icon is pressed. If status (C) is not OK, see [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this section.

Active (B) (4/4 of pie):

- Status (D) is OK if the selected binding system is not already running. If status (D) is not OK, retract selected binding system actuator, see [Test Electro-Hydraulic Components](#) in Baler Application Service section.
- Status (E) is OK if the current bale diameter is less than 98% of the target bale diameter. If status (E) is not OK, see [Set Bale Diameter](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
- Status (F) is OK if an operator is detected on the tractor seat. If status (F) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (G) is OK if the tractor PTO is engaged. If status (G) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (H) is OK if the tractor ignition key is turned ON. If status (H) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual, or your John Deere dealer.
- Status (I) is OK if the Tractor-Implement Automation™ hot key, or button (resume switch) is pressed. If status (I) is not OK, see [TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™](#) section in your tractor operator's manual.

Last Exit Code Issued: 2/2
Manual tying timeout

Conditions	OK
Enable Button Pressed	OK
Tying Process Idle	OK
Bale < 98% Diameter	OK
Operator in Seat	OK
PTO On	OK
Bale Gate Shut	OK
Resume Switch Pressed	OK

CC1038510

CC1038510 —19—26SEP12

A—Automation State Enabled C—I— Condition Status
B—Automation State Active

is pressed. If status (I) is not OK, see [TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™](#) section in your tractor operator's manual.

1181334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-6/7

7. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

1181334,1731927577358 -19-18NOV24-7/7

Automation Deactivation Message List

The automation deactivation messages (last exit code issued), and descriptions are given in the following table:

Automation deactivation message	Description
Activation key expired. ^a	See your John Deere dealer.
Active baler codes. ^a	Check your baler Diagnostic Trouble Codes, and see Diagnostic Trouble Code List in Baler Application Service section.
Automation aborted due to PTO. ^b	Engage PTO.
Automation aborted due to speed. ^b	Re-engage automation mode.
Automation aborted due to valve 1. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 2. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 3. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 4. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 5. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 6. ^b	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation command message time-out. ^c	Check wiring harness between tractor, and baler.
Communication error. ^a	Disconnect, and reconnect baler wiring harness. See your John Deere dealer.
Driver fault. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Driver out of range. ^c	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Function not authorized. ^c	Tractor TIA™ activation key not OK.
Invalid PTO configuration. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Lever fault. ^c	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Manual binding time-out. ^a	Check net binding device and restart binding cycle.
Net binding problem. ^a	Check net binding device. Check your baler diagnostic trouble codes, and see Diagnostic Trouble Code List in Baler Application Service section.
Oil level low. ^c	Refill tractor with oil.
Operator is no longer on the seat. ^a	Operator should be on the seat to operate baler in automation mode.
Oversized bale. ^a	If working in automation level 1, stop tractor then bind current bale as soon as possible. If working in automation level 2, tractor stops moving forward then binding cycle starts automatically. Eject current bound bale, and re-engage automation mode.
Over-speed fault. ^c	Reduce engine speed.
Pause mode, tractor speed is 0. ^a	Unload bale, and re-engage automation mode.
Pickup is plugged. ^a	Unplug the pickup. See Unplug Pickup in Automation Mode in this section.
Power out of range. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
PTO not calibrated. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
PTO not enabled in current gear. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO re-engagement fault. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO switch conflict. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO switch Off. ^c	Engage PTO.
RBC Security challenge failed. ^a	Restart tractor. See your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

TL81334,0000397 -19-08JUN18-1/2

Operating Baler in Automation Mode

Automation deactivation message	Description
Remote armed. ^c	Check PTO operation. See your tractor operator's manual.
Remote PTO enable switch fault. ^c	Disengage the PTO. See your John Deere dealer.
Remote PTO switch fault. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Resume switch error. ^a	Check Tractor-Implement Automation™ hot key, or button(resume switch). See your John Deere dealer.
Reverse command. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
SCV lock. ^c	Unlock SCV.
Security error 1. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 2. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 3. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 4. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 5. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 6. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Tractor does not resume. ^a	See your John Deere dealer.
Tractor in reverse. ^c	Leave reverse position.
Tractor is in park. ^c	Leave park.
Tractor is stopped. ^a	Increase ground speed and re-engage automation mode.
Tractor speed is not 0. ^a	Stop tractor, and restart binding cycle.
Under-speed fault. ^c	Increase engine speed.
Valve circuit error. ^c	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Valve error other. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Valve missing. ^c	Switch valves, and see your John Deere dealer.
Valve not calibrated. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.

^aDeactivation message from the baler

^bDeactivation message generic

^cDeactivation message from the tractor

TL81334,0000397 -19-08JUN18-2/2

Operating Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode

Automatic Tailgate Description

The Automatic Tailgate is a function that allows to open and close the gate automatically without actuate tractor SCV each time. This function has several modes of use between the Automatic mode, Manual mode, and Stop mode. For more information, see Operate Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode in this section.

The Automatic tailgate is compatible with all tractor brands and models. The function needs some condition from the baler to be functional:

- The baler must be equipped with the Automatic Tailgate system which is used with continuous hydraulic oil flow.
- The baler must be equipped with the bale discharging ramp and it sensor. See Enable or Disable Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor (If Equipped) in Baler Application Service section.
- The gate latch and gate latch sensors must be correctly adjusted. See Adjust Gate Latch and Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section.

tl81334,1681309493469 -19-23MAY23-1/1

Operate Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode Safely

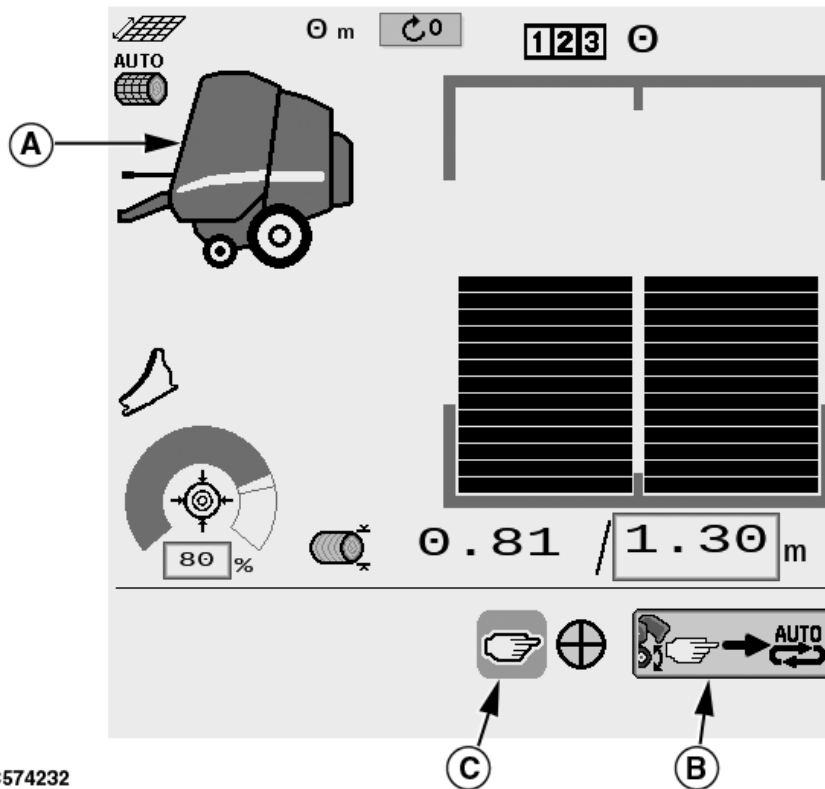
The Baler Automatic Tailgate system is intended to aid the operator in performing field operations more efficiently. The operator is always responsible for controlling the path of the machine and behavior as well as the behavior of

the bale. To prevent injury to the operator and bystanders, always remain alert and pay attention to the surrounding environment. Do not rely on the system to stop vehicle when an obstacle or bystander is present.

Read and understand Operating Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode before using the Automatic Tailgate.

tl81334,1680078316825 -19-31MAR23-1/1

Baler Automatic Tailgate Main Page Display Description



CC574232

CC574232 —UN—13APR23

A—Baler Status
B—Automatic Tailgate Mode Button

C—Automatic Tailgate Status

The main page allows the baler automatic tailgate mode to be monitored and controlled while operating in the field.

Baler status symbol (A) is used to monitor the binding processes and the gate position.

The "Automatic Tailgate Mode" button (B) is used to select the automatic tailgate mode between the Automatic mode, Manual Mode, and Stop mode.

The automatic tailgate status symbol (C) is used to monitor the automatic tailgate mode or request from the baler.

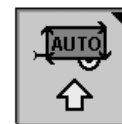
tl81334,1681309533964 -19-13APR23-1/1

Automatic Tailgate Softkey Designation

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11

"Automation Settings" softkey.

See this section.



CC1034499

TL81334,000036C -19-02MAY18-1/1

Operate Baler in Automatic Tailgate Mode

The automatic tailgate mode has several modes: Stop, Manual, Automatic, and Pause.

The automatic tailgate status (D) indicates the current mode.

NOTE: There is no symbol for the Pause mode.

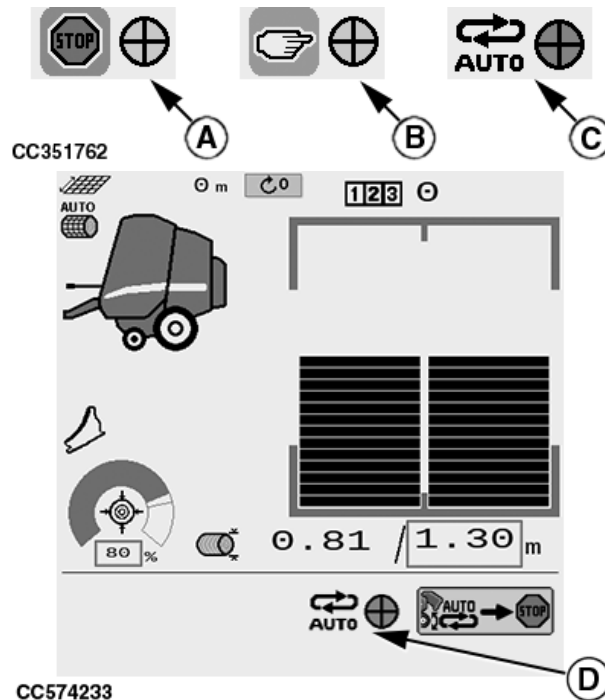
A—Stop Mode Symbol

B—Manual Mode Symbol

C—Automatic Mode Symbol

D—Automatic Tailgate Status

CC351762 —UN—13JUN18



CC574233

CC574233 —UN—13APR23

Continued on next page

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-1/11

1. Stop Mode:

CC351764 —UN—13JUN18

Stop mode locks any movement of the gate without stopping hydraulic and mechanical power supplied by the tractor.

The system has two buttons: "Automatic Mode to Stop Mode" or "Manual Mode to Stop Mode". Only one of these buttons is available during the Automatic mode and during the Manual to the Automatic mode procedure.

- Activating Stop mode during an opening or a closing cycle interrupt the cycle.
- If the tractor SCV is in the continuous flow position when the Stop mode is active, the symbol (B) replaces the button (A). The button (A) is displayed when the tractor SCV is in neutral or floating position.
- If an external event activates Stop mode, clear the external event. Disengage the tractor SCV before switch Stop mode to Manual mode.

CAUTION: Before working inside or around the baler, do the following: Disengage the PTO and the tractor SCV, place transmission in PARK, engage park brake, shut off engine, and remove the ignition key.

A—Stop to Manual Mode Button

B—Request for Tractor SCV in Neutral or Floating Position Symbol



CC351764

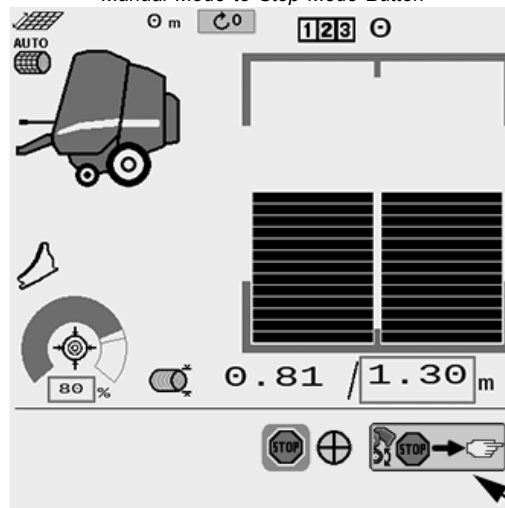
Automatic Mode to Stop Mode Button

CC353872 —UN—13JUN18



CC353872

Manual Mode to Stop Mode Button



CC574234

Stop Mode Main Page

CC356293 —UN—13SEP18



CC356293

Request for Tractor SCV in Neutral, or Floating Position

tl81334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-2/11

2. Switch from Stop to Manual Mode:

CC351766 —UN—13JUN18

The tractor SCV must be in neutral or floating position to allow the switch in Manual mode. To access Manual mode, select and activate "Stop Mode to Manual Mode" button. "Stop Mode to Manual Mode" button is available in Stop mode.



CC351766

Stop Mode to Manual Mode Button

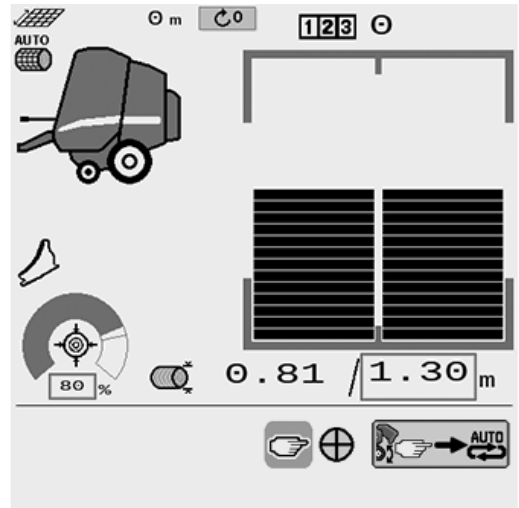
Continued on next page

tl81334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-3/11

3. Manual Mode:

This mode is used to move the gate manually by using the tractor SCV. The operator can operate normally in field in Manual mode.

NOTE: Each time the ignition is switched ON, Manual mode is activated by default.



CC574235

Manual Mode Main Page

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-4/11

CC574235 —UN—13APR23

4. Switch from Manual to Automatic Mode:

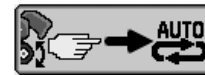
CC351768 —UN—13JUN18

The following conditions are required to switch from Manual to Automatic mode:

- The gate must be correctly calibrated.
- The PTO must be engaged.
- The gate must be fully closed.

To activate the Automatic mode, proceed as follows:

- Select and activate the "Manual Mode to Automatic Mode" button.



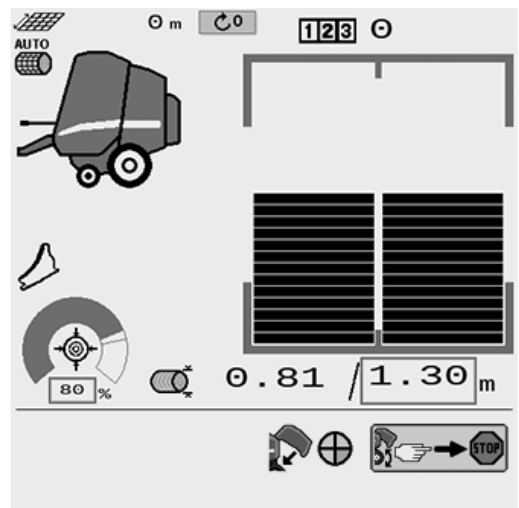
CC351768

Manual Mode to Automatic Mode Button

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-5/11

- If the Gate is not close, the monitor request to close the gate.

NOTE: If the gate is not close within 6 seconds, the baler returns to Manual mode.



CC574236

Manual Mode to Automatic Mode Close Gate Request

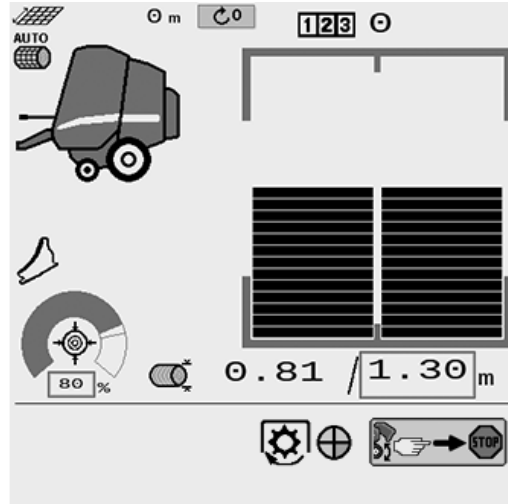
Continued on next page

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-6/11

CC574236 —UN—13APR23

- c. If the PTO is not engaged, the monitor request to engage the PTO.

NOTE: If the PTO is not engaged within 6 seconds, the baler returns to Manual mode.



CC574237

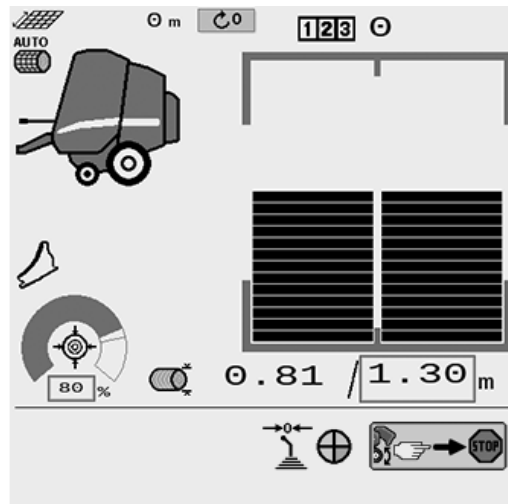
Manual Mode to Automatic Mode Engage PTO Request

tt81334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-7/11

CC574237 —UN—13APR23

- d. If the tractor SCV is already continuous flow position, the monitor requests to deactivate the tractor SCV.

NOTE: If the tractor SCV is not deactivated within 10 seconds, the baler returns to Manual mode.



CC574238

Manual to Automatic Mode Deactivate SCV Request

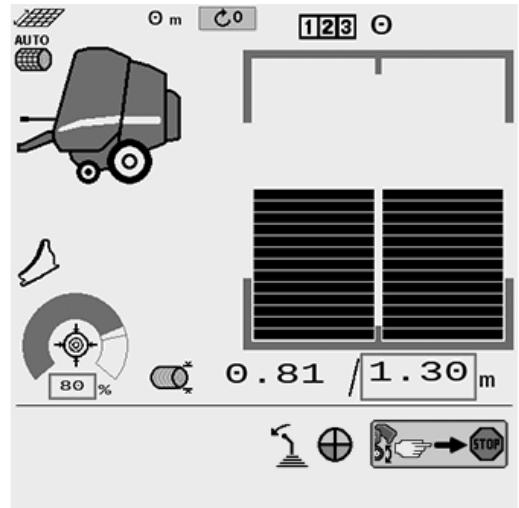
Continued on next page

tt81334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-8/11

CC574238 —UN—13APR23

- e. Put the tractor SCV in the continuous flow position when the monitor request it. See your tractor Operator's Manual.

NOTE: If the tractor SCV is not activated within 10 seconds, the baler returns to Manual mode.



CC574239

Manual to Automatic Mode Activate SVC Request

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-9/11

CC574239 —UN—13APR23

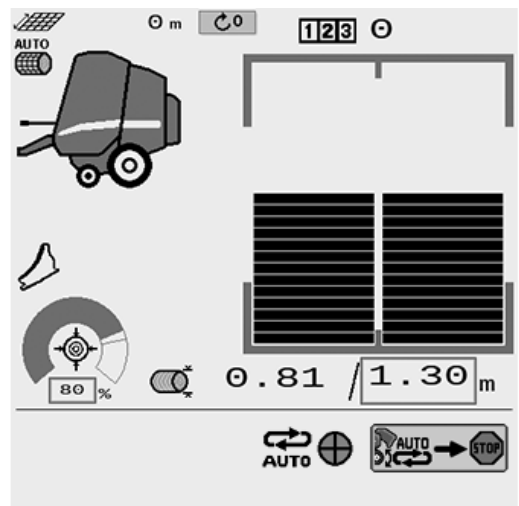
5. Automatic Mode:

This mode allows the baler to open and close the gate automatically according to this process:

- a. At the end of the binding cycle, the baler opens the gate to unloading the bale.
- b. When the bale has left the discharging ramp, the baler closes the gate.

6. Switch from Automatic to Pause Mode:

The baler switch from Automatic mode to Pause mode when the PTO is disengaged without interrupt the hydraulic flow. Before disengaging the PTO, ensure that gate is correctly closed.



CC574240

Automatic Mode Main Page

Continued on next page

1181334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-10/11

CC574240 —UN—13APR23

7. Pause Mode:

This mode allows the baler to be in standby for the transit between two fields. This mode is automatically set when the PTO is disengaged without interrupt the hydraulic flow.

When the PTO is engaged, the baler asks the operator to go in Automatic mode or in Manual mode. Press button (A) to go in Automatic mode or press button (B) to go in Manual mode.

The baler switches from Pause mode to Stop mode when:

- The operator selects and activates the "Automatic Mode to Stop Mode" button.
- The gate is not fully closed.
- There is a DTC related to the automatic tailgate function.

The baler switch from Pause mode to Manual mode when:

- The tractor SCV is used by the operator.
- The hydraulic flow has been interrupted.

8. Switch from Automatic to Stop Mode or Manual Mode:

The baler switches from Automatic mode to Stop mode when:

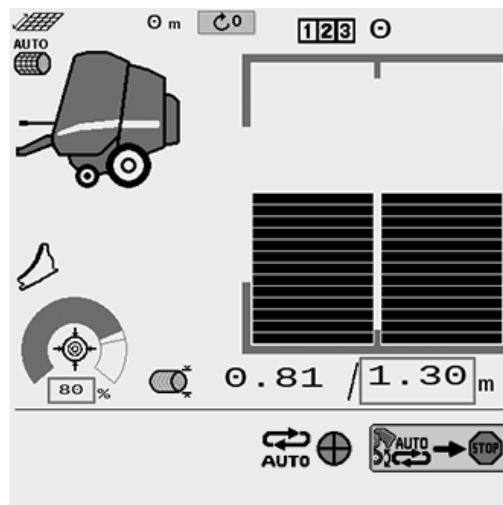
- The operator selects and activates the "Automatic Mode to Stop Mode" button.
- The binding cycle is too long and is not finished.
- There is a DTC related to the automatic tailgate function.

The baler switch from Automatic mode to Manual mode when:

- The tractor SCV is used by the operator.
- The hydraulic flow has been interrupted.

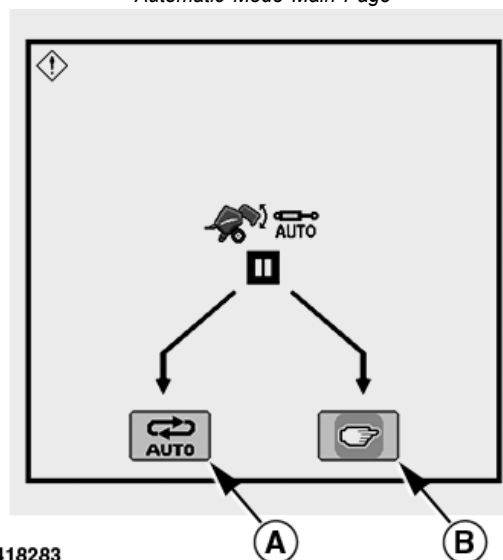
A—Go to Automatic Mode Button

B—Go to Manual Mode Button



CC574240

Automatic Mode Main Page



CC418283

Returns to Automatic Mode Request Page

tl81334,1681309646497 -19-13APR23-11/11

Select Automatic Tailgate Mode

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, Select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

Continued on next page

tl81334,1680078370893 -19-25APR23-1/4

2. Select "Automation Settings" softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

†81334,1680078370893 -19-25APR23-2/4

3. Select and activate drop-down list (E) then the desired automatic tailgate mode:

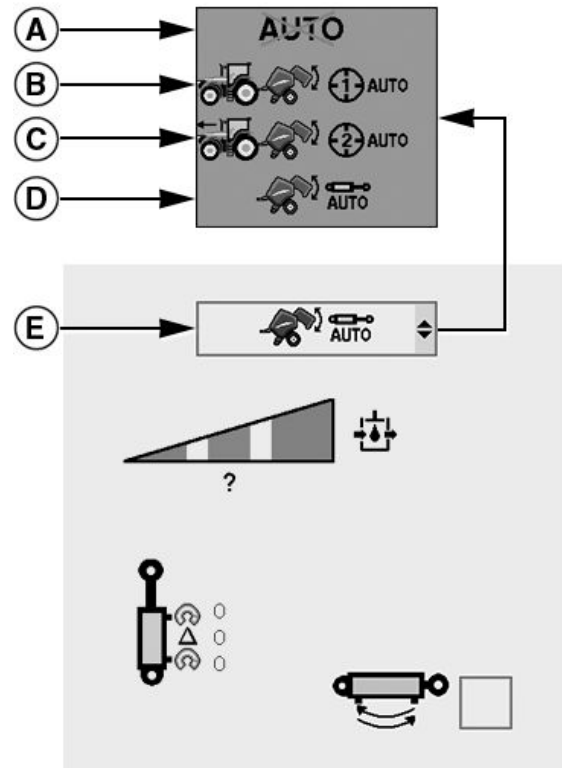
- **Automation OFF (A)** - No automation mode or automatic tailgate mode is enabled. The gate is not controlled automatically.
- **Automation level 1 (B)** - See Operating Baler in Automation Mode section.
- **Automation level 2 (C)** - See Operating Baler in Automation Mode section.
- **Automatic Tailgate mode** - Select this mode to use the automatic tailgate mode. After the end of binding cycle, the baler opens and closes the gate automatically to unload the bale.

NOTE: The baler rotation speed sensor and the discharging ramp sensor must be equipped to select this mode. See Enable or Disable Baler Rotation Speed Sensor (If Equipped) and Enable or Disable Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor (If Equipped) in Baler Application Service section.

The baler rotation speed sensor must be activated.
The discharging ramp sensor must be activated.

A—No Automatic Control of Gate
B—Automation Level 1
C—Automation Level 2

D—Automatic Tailgate Mode
E—Automation Drop-Down List



CC571121

CC571121 —UN—03APR23

†81334,1680078370893 -19-25APR23-3/4

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

†81334,1680078370893 -19-25APR23-4/4

Set Automatic Tailgate Hydraulic Flow

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



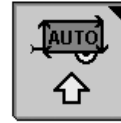
CC277966

Continued on next page

†81334,1680078381182 -19-05APR23-1/5

2. Select "Automation Settings" softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

tl81334,1680078381182 -19-05APR23-2/5

3. Hydraulic Flow Indicator:

The Hydraulic Flow indicator allows the operator to monitor and set the hydraulic flow.

In Manual mode, the Indicator (D) is displayed under the graph. In Automatic or Stop mode, the indicator (E) is displayed and show the current hydraulic flow on the system.

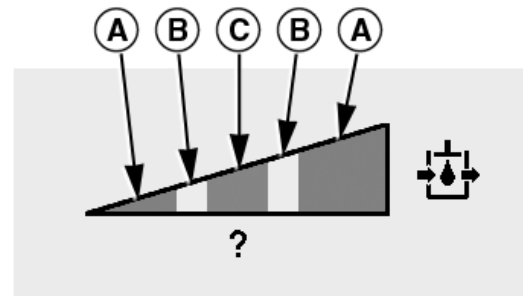
For a good performance in the field, the indicator (E) must be in the green zone (C). The tractor must provide a sufficient hydraulic flow. Proceed as follow to provide a sufficient hydraulic flow:

1. Switch the baler in Stop or Automatic mode.
2. Adjust the hydraulic flow with the corresponding command. See your relevant tractor Operator's manual.
3. The indicator (E) must be in the green zone (C) and near the right yellow zone (B) to ensure good performance during the cycle.

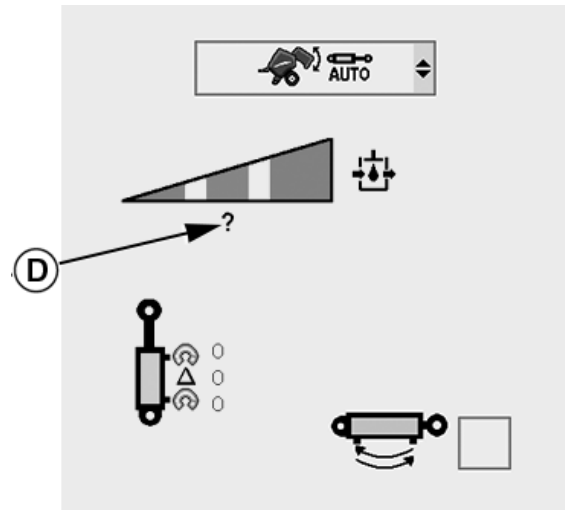
NOTE: Set the hydraulic flow with engine at working speed and PTO engaged.

A—Red Zone
B—Yellow Zone
C—Green Zone

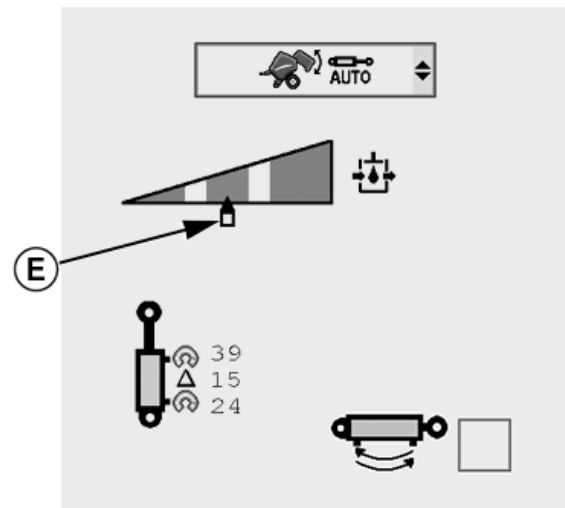
D—Unknown Hydraulic Flow Indicator
E—Hydraulic Flow Indicator



CC351773



CC571122



CC571123

Continued on next page

1181334,1680078381182 -19-05APR23-3/5

CC351773 —UN—27JUN18

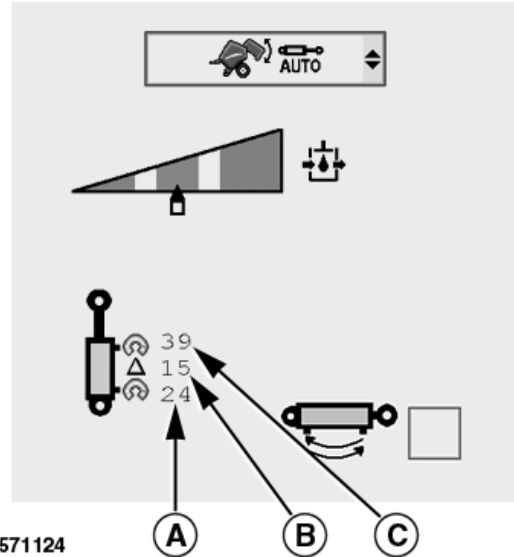
CC571122 —UN—03APR23

CC571123 —UN—03APR23

4. Hydraulic Pressure Indicator:

The Hydraulic pressure Indicator is a diagnostic aid. The indicator (A) indicates the oil pressure that enters in the baler. The indicator (B) indicates the difference in pressure between the indicators (A) and (C). The indicator (C) indicates the oil pressure that returns to the tractor.

A—High-Pressure Oil Indicator
B—Difference of Pressure Indicator
C—Return Pressure Oil Indicator



CC571124

CC571124 —UN—03APR23

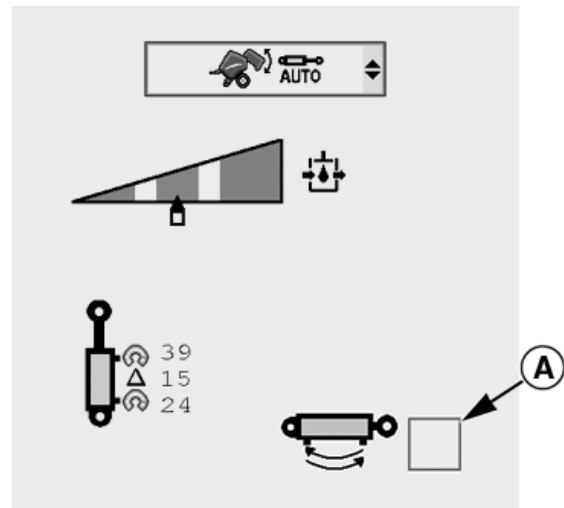
1181334,1680078381182 -19-05APR23-4/5

5. Reverse Hydraulic Flow:

Depending on how the hydraulic hose is connected to the tractor, the gate can move in the wrong direction when the tractor SCV is used. The check box (A) can resolve the problem.

- Tick checkbox (A) to enable the reversal of hydraulic flow.
- Do not tick checkbox (A) to disable the reversal of hydraulic flow.

A—Reverse Hydraulic Flow Checkbox



CC571125

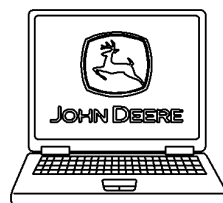
CC571125 —UN—03APR23

1181334,1680078381182 -19-05APR23-5/5

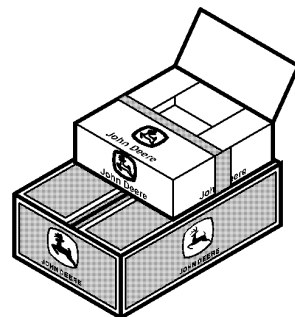
Attachments

Find Attachments

See your John Deere dealer or the John Deere online attachment website to check the attachments suitable for your machine.



CC208612



CC208612—UN—14APR14

DC82261,0000447 -19-18OCT14-1/1

Lubrication and Maintenance

Lubricate and Maintain Machine Safely

CAUTION: This machine feature automatic sequence with dwelling positions: the machine may seem to be stopped and restart unexpectedly.

Do not lubricate or maintain the machine while it is in motion.

To avoid bodily injury or death always:

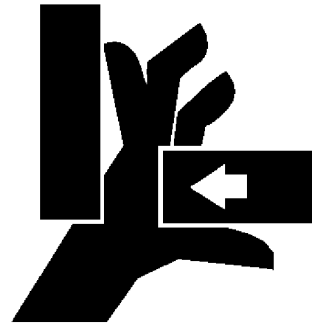
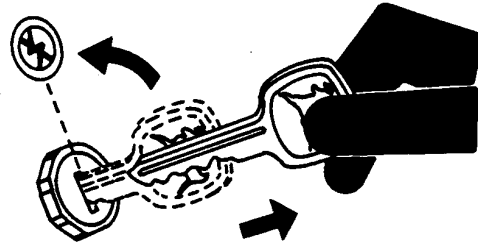
- Disengage PTO
- Engage tractor parking brake and/or place transmission in "Park"
- Shut off tractor engine
- Remove main switch key
- Relieve hydraulic pressure
- Lock gate. See Gate Lock Valve in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
- Engage parking lock
- Apply handbrake
- Wait until all moving parts have stopped
- Let all components cool

before servicing the machine.

To help prevent personal injury caused by unexpected movement, be sure to service machine on a level surface.

If machine is detached from tractor, block wheels to prevent movement.

IMPORTANT: Disconnect power supply to all electronic components when welding on machine. Over-voltage can damage electronic controls.



LX002 510

TS230 —UN—24MAY89

E41125 —UN—25OCT96

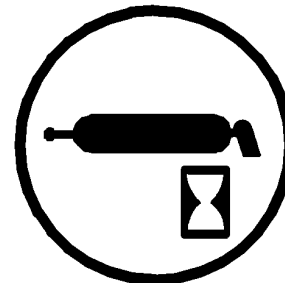
LX002510 —UN—17JAN95

r2c13ue,1739864178034 -19-18FEB25-1/1

Observe Service Intervals

Using tractor hour meter as a guide, perform services at the hourly intervals indicated on following pages.

IMPORTANT: Recommended service intervals are for average conditions. Service **MORE OFTEN** if baler is operated in adverse conditions.



CC 000934

CC000934 —UN—05APR95

CC03745,00002A9 -19-27AUG01-1/1

Perform Lubrication and Maintenance

Clean lubrication fittings before using grease gun. Replace any lost or broken fittings immediately. If a new fitting fails to take grease, remove and check for failure of adjoining parts.

Carefully perform lubrication and maintenance at hour intervals provided in this section to ensure optimum performance and avoid premature failure.

Bearing failures or overheating can result in a fire. To reduce bearing failures or overheating, thoroughly lubricate all greasing points of the machine:

- After each time the machine is washed.
- When placing the machine in storage.
- Just before using the machine after it has been stored.

Regularly check that grease is coming out of bearings while greasing them.

Crop material and other debris may accumulate around bearings and bearing covers. Inspect and clean these areas periodically throughout the working day.

DC82261,0000538 -19-18OCT14-1/1

Grease for Lubrication

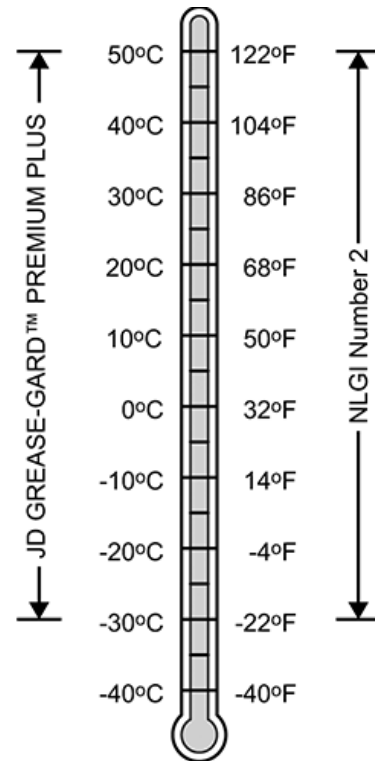
The following grease is recommended:

- John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus

Other greases may be used if they meet the following:

- NLGI 2 Classification
- ISO-L-X-BDHB 2 or DIN KP 2 N-10 Lithium Complex, Non-Synthetic Base Oil (160 to 220 mm²/s @ 40°C)
- With Extreme Pressure Additive

IMPORTANT: Some types of thickeners, base oils, and additives used in greases are not compatible with others. Mixing greases should be avoided. Consult your grease supplier before mixing different types of grease.



Greases for Air Temperature Ranges

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

GA87848,0001049 -19-25NOV20-1/1

Grease for Automatic Greasing System

IMPORTANT: Grease lubricants containing solid lubricants must not be used. Moly grease will plug the distributors and should not be used (Lubricants like graphite or MoS₂ on request).

The system is designed for commercially available multi-purpose grease lubricants up to NLGI Class 2 for use in summer and wintertime.

Use greases with high-pressure additives (EP greases).

Use only greases of same kind of saponification.

For specification see "Grease" in this section.

OUCC006,000147E -19-17SEP08-1/1

Gear Oil

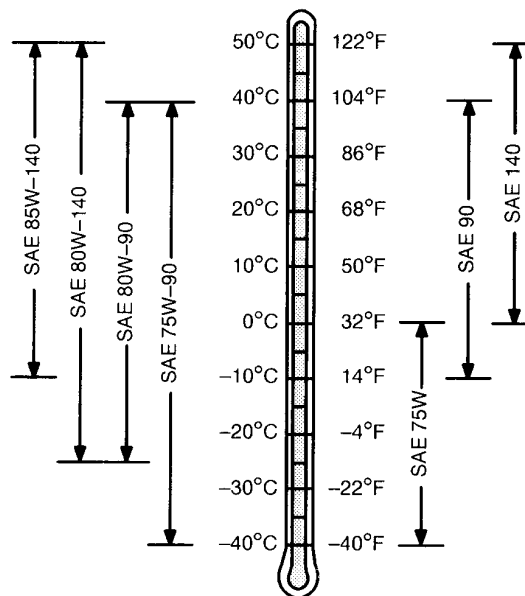
Use oil viscosity based on the expected air temperature range during the period between oil changes.

The following oils are preferred:

- John Deere GL-5 Gear Lubricant
- John Deere EXTREME-GARD™

Other oils may be used if they meet the following:

- API Service Category GL-5



Oil Viscosities for Air Temperature Ranges

EXTREME-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company

DX,GEOIL -19-14APR11-1/1

TS1653 —UN—14MAR96

Multiluber Chain Oil

Use the following oil for the multiluber chain oiling system:

John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL¹

Other equivalent biodegradable oils may also be used.

IMPORTANT: Never use mineral oil for this application.

¹John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL meets or exceeds minimum biodegradability of 80% within 21 days according to CEC-L-33-T-82 test method. BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL must not be mixed with mineral oil.

NOTE: John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL is available at the John Deere dealer.

- DC43300: BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL 5 liters

OUC006,00019AE -19-09NOV12-1/1

Alternative and Synthetic Lubricants

Conditions in certain geographical areas may require lubricant recommendations different from those printed in this manual.

Some John Deere brand coolants and lubricants may not be available in your location.

Consult your John Deere dealer to obtain information and recommendations.

Synthetic lubricants may be used if they meet the performance requirements as shown in this manual.

The temperature limits and service intervals shown in this manual apply to John Deere branded fluids or fluids that have been tested and/or approved for use in John Deere equipment.

Re-refined base stock products may be used if the finished lubricant meets the performance requirements.

DX,ALTER -19-13JAN18-1/1

Lubricant Storage

Your equipment can operate at top efficiency only when clean lubricants are used.

Use clean containers to handle all lubricants.

Store lubricants and containers in an area protected from dust, moisture, and other contamination. Store containers on their side to avoid water and dirt accumulation.

Make certain that all containers are properly marked to identify their contents.

Properly dispose of all old containers and any residual lubricant they may contain.

DX,LUBST -19-11APR11-1/1

Mixing of Lubricants

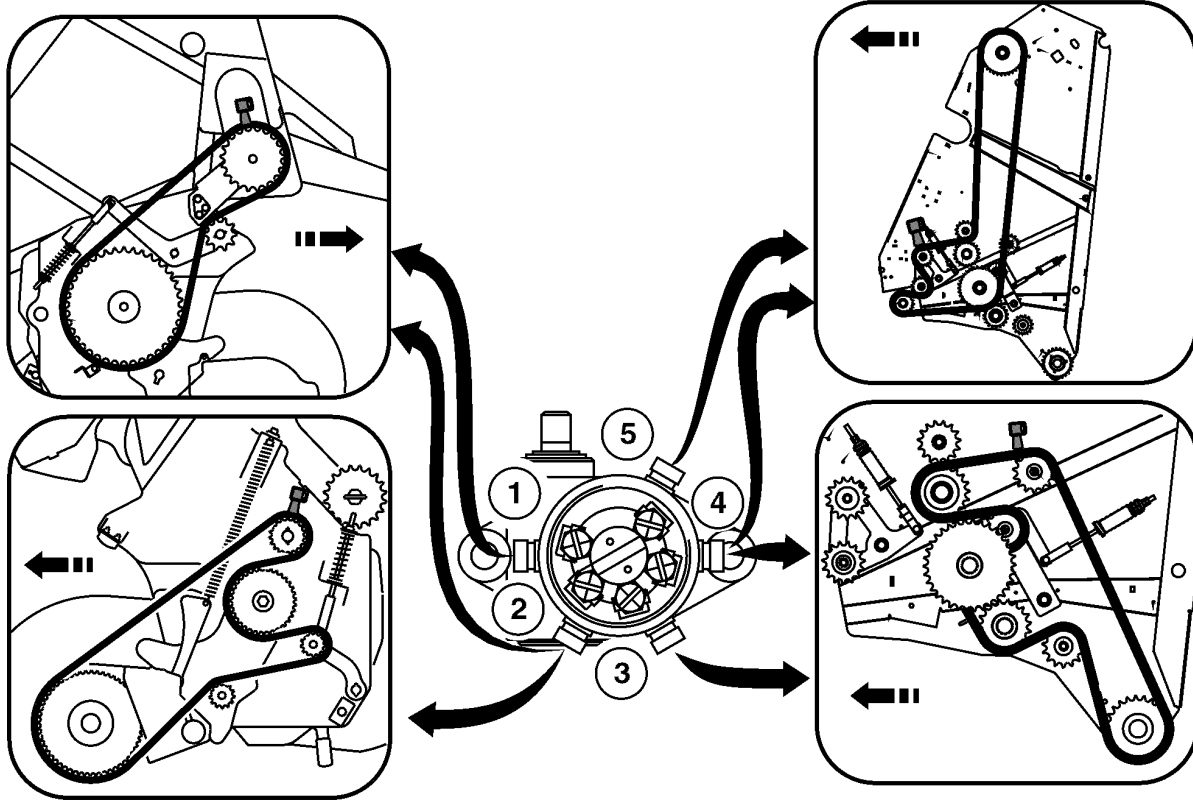
In general, avoid mixing different brands or types of oil. Oil manufacturers blend additives in their oils to meet certain specifications and performance requirements.

Mixing different oils can interfere with the proper functioning of these additives and degrade lubricant performance.

Consult your John Deere dealer to obtain specific information and recommendations.

DX,LUBMIX -19-18MAR96-1/1

Chain Oiling Component Location



CC397166

- | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------------|
| 1—Rotary Feeder Drive Chain (Green Ring) | 3—Frame Roll Drive Chain (Blue Ring) | 5—Main Drive Chain (Orange Ring) |
| 2—Pickup Drive Chain (Red Ring) and Rotary Feeder Drive Chain (Green Ring) | 4—Main Drive Chain (Orange Ring) and Frame Roll Drive Chain (Blue Ring) | |

NOTE: Each hose is identified on pump and brush side with a number on a color ring.

ga87848,1682587892909 -19-27APR23-1/1

CC397166—UN—28NOV19

Adjust Oil Flow

The oil flow can be adjusted for each chain.

1. Unscrew and remove cover.
2. Identify the screw allowing the oil flow of the relevant brush(es) to be adjusted.
3. Turn the screw clockwise to increase oil flow and counterclockwise to decrease oil flow.

NOTE: When the screw is totally screwed in (maximum flow), the minimum flow will be obtained by unscrewing four turns.

For screw of brush location, see Chain Oiling Component Location in this section.

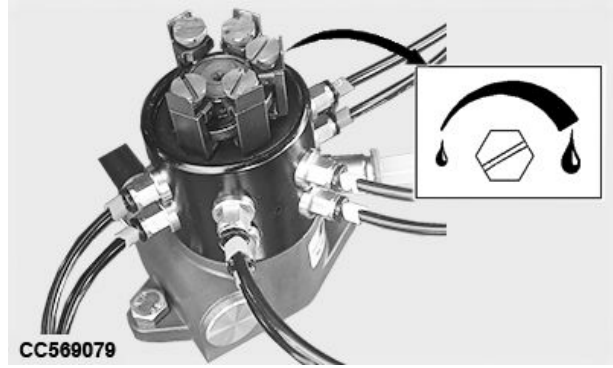
1 turn = 6 clicks

To apply initial factory settings, proceed as follows:

Fully screw in the relevant screw.

For screw of brush 1, unscrew 1 turn and 4 clicks.

For screw of brush 2, unscrew 3 turns.



A—Pump Cover

For screw of brush 3, unscrew 2 turn and 3 clicks.

For screw of brush 4, unscrew 2 turns and 3 clicks.

For screw of brush 5, unscrew 1 turn and 1 click.

4. Install cover.

ga87848,1685022691900 -19-25MAY23-1/1

CC569079—UN—10MAY23

As Required: Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir

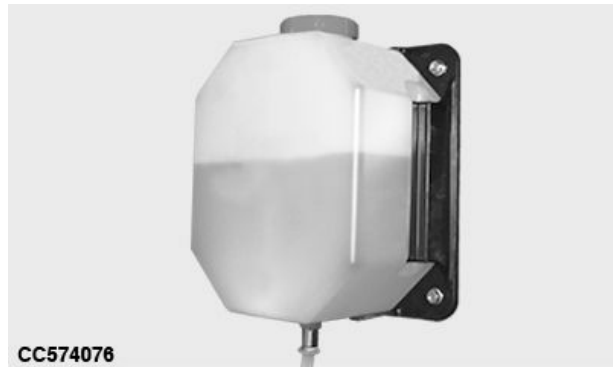
Depending on the pump flow adjustment, refill reservoir as required.

Specification

Oil Reservoir—Capacity..... 4 l
(1 US gal.)

Use oil specified under Multiluber Chain Oil in this section.

IMPORTANT: Never use any other type of oil.



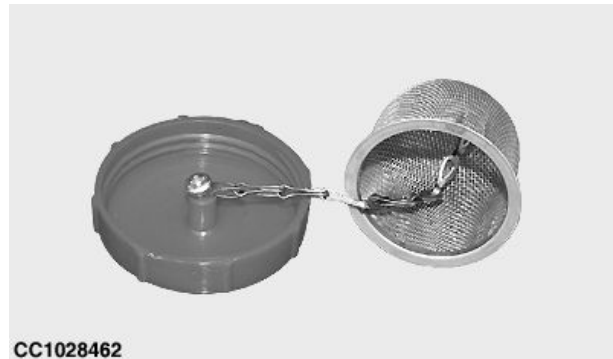
CC574076

ga87848,1681216226114 -19-13APR23-1/1

CC574076—UN—19APR23

As Required: Clean Oil Reservoir Filter

Clean oil reservoir filter as necessary.



CC1028462

ga87848,1681396385370 -19-23MAY23-1/1

CC1028462—UN—21SEP06

As Required: Clean Hydraulic Coupler Filters

Clean coupler filter as follows:

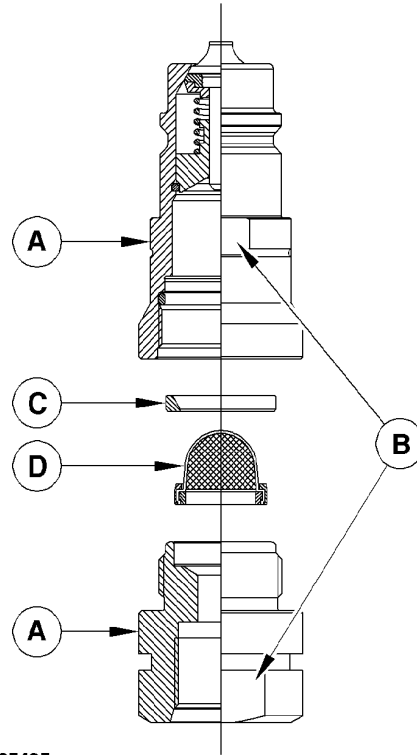
1. Disassemble coupler (A) using flat surfaces (B).
2. Remove spacer ring (C) and filter (D).
3. Clean filter (D), using clean solvent.
4. Assemble coupler (A) in reverse order of disassembly.
5. Tighten coupler (A) to the following specification:

Specification

Pressure Line
Coupler—Torque.....90 N·m
(66 lb.-ft.)

A—Coupler
B—Flat Surface

C—Spacer Ring
D—Filter



CC1025485

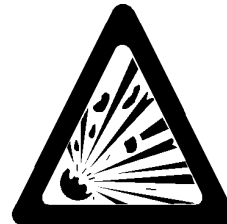
CC1025485 —UN—15MAR04

ga87848,1681396385418 -19-23MAY23-1/1

As required: Check Accumulators Gas Pre-charge

Only properly trained persons with appropriate equipment shall carry out inspection and replacement of accumulators.

Accumulators gas pre-charge can diminish over time. If a hydraulic function does not behave as expected, check the gas pre-charge. See Service Hydraulic Accumulator Device in Service section.



CC1022636

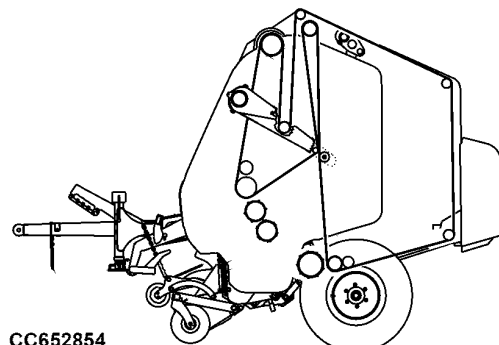
Accumulator Explosion

ga87848,1676301926895 -19-14FEB23-1/1

CC1022636 —UN—15JAN03

As Required: Clean Bale Chamber Rolls

Remove wrapped crop from the bale chamber rolls.



r2c13ue,1732108769377 -19-20NOV24-1/1

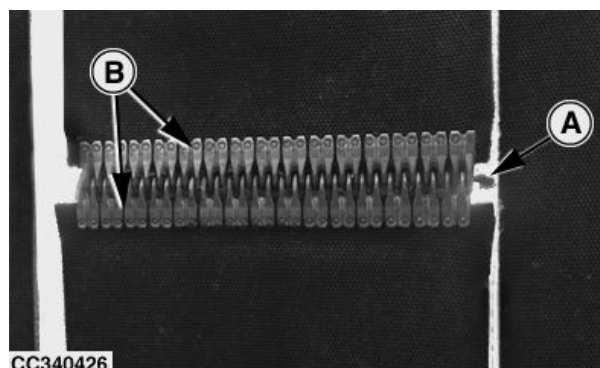
CC652854 —UN—20NOV24

As Required: Clean Belt Hooks and Hook Wires

Remove crop from hooks (B) and hook wires (A).

A—Hook Wire

B—Belt Hook



GA87848,0000521 -19-15DEC17-1/1

CC340426 —UN—14DEC17

Daily: Prevent Fire

Use compressed air to remove buildup of crop material and to keep the machine clean.

Avoid high-pressure power-washing next to the bearings to prevent damaging seals.

Check bearings for early signs of damage, and replace as indicated. Turn off power to baler and check for unusual noises, hot parts, smells of scorching, and discolored paint or metal.

r2c13ue,1731591716032 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Fire Prevention

Keep foreign material (crop, chaff, twine, etc.) from building up on the machine near potentially hot areas, such as bearings. Remove this buildup as part of the regular service operations.

Avoid high pressure power-washing adjacent to the bearings to prevent damaging seals.

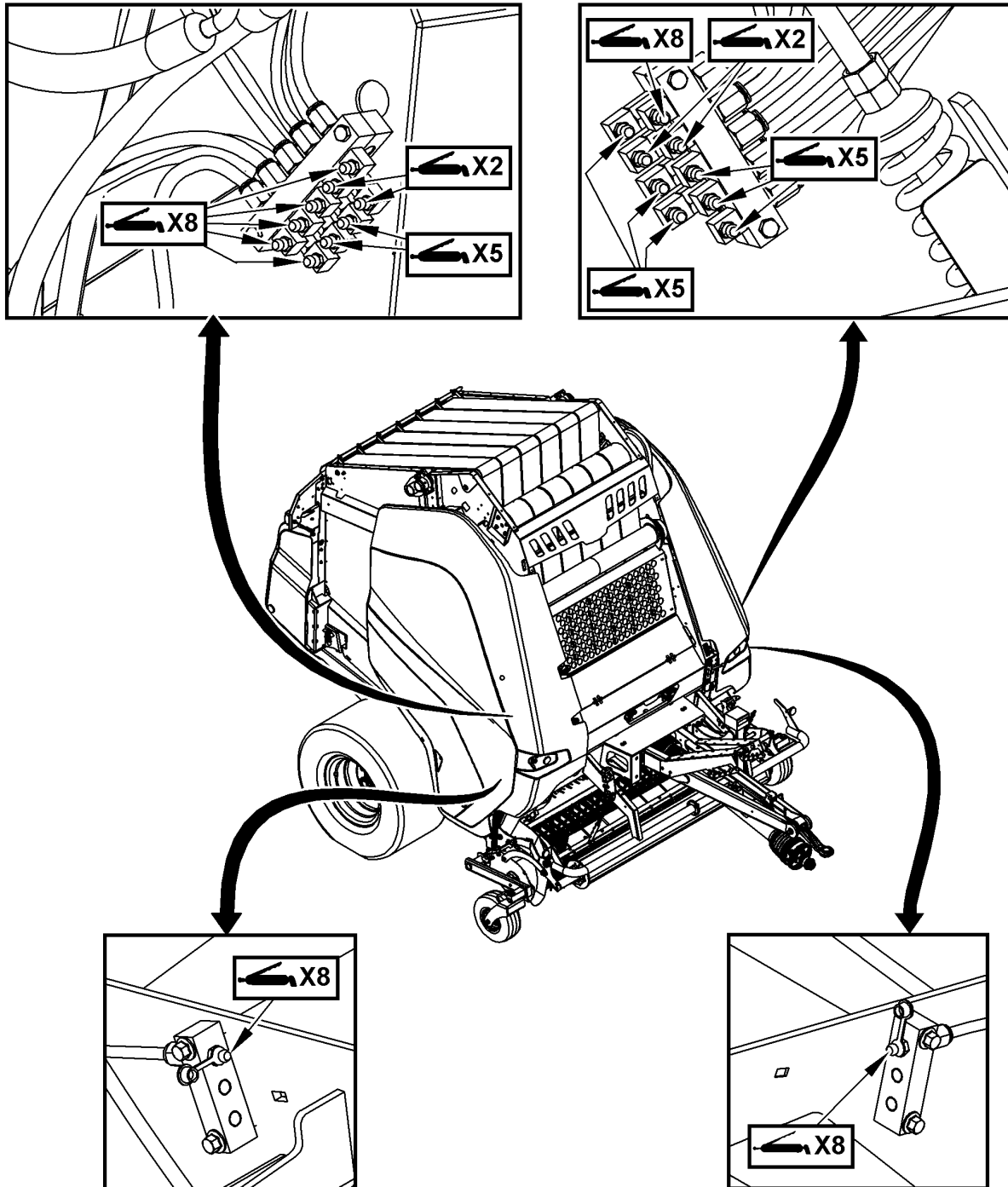
Regularly check bearings for early signs of failure, and replace as indicated. Turn off power to baler and check for unusual noises, hot parts, smells of scorching, and discolored paint or metal. To check condition of bearings:

- Open gate and lock it.
- With the belts slackened, rotate each of the rollers by hand, paying attention to "dry" or "grinding" noises, or rough rotation.
- Push and pull on the roller.
- Watch and feel for looseness in the bearings.

Soon after operation, the temperature at each bearing location can be checked to see if it is noticeably hotter than the others. Replace worn or damaged bearings.

OUMX005,0001AEE -19-05JAN05-1/1

Every 10 Hours: Lubricate Baler without Automatic Greasing System



CC310409

IMPORTANT: Lubricate all roll grease nipples after each working day while bearings are still warm.

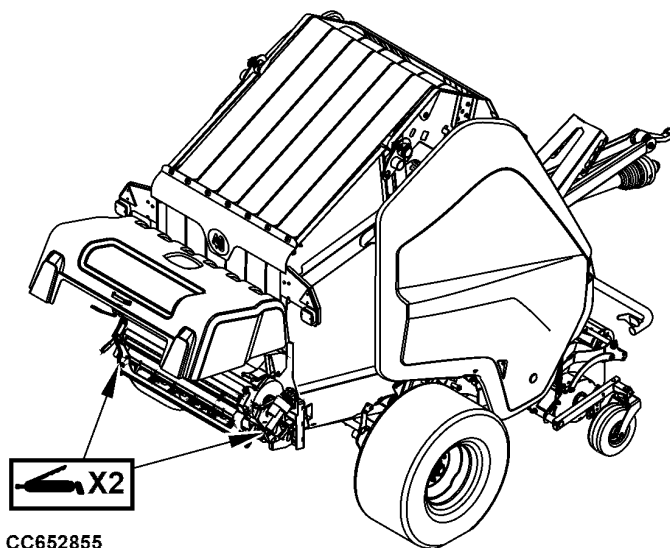
Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

ga87848,1682604520912 -19-27APR23-1/1

CC310409 —UN—18APR17

Every 30 Hours: Lubricate Net Binding Pivots



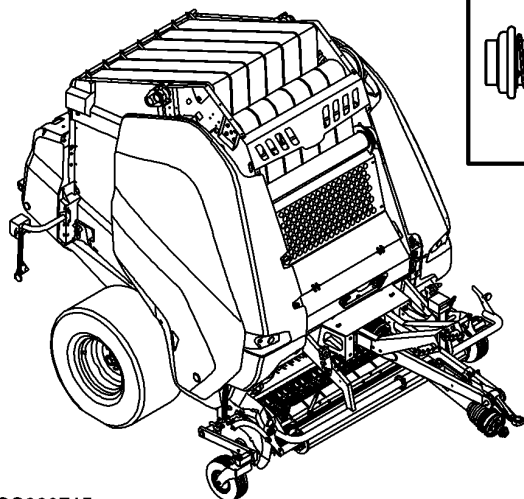
Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

r2c13ue,1732109081002 -19-20NOV24-1/1

CC652855—UN—20NOV24

Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Telescoping Driveline



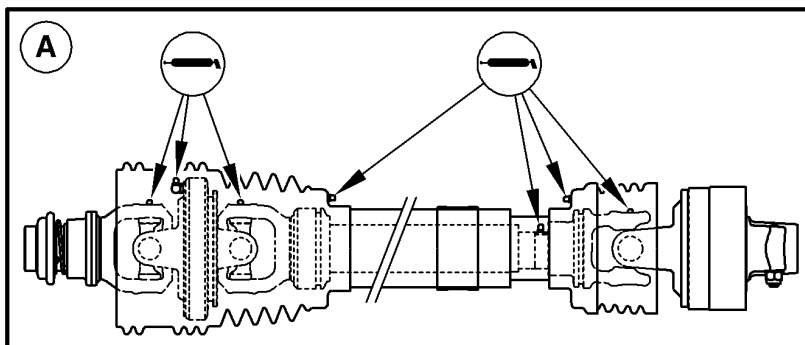
CC330715

A—Grease Fittings

Lubricate grease fittings with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to lubricate telescoping driveline correctly.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company



NOTE: The quantity of grease delivered at each grease gun pump stroke is average 1 g (0.035 oz.).

CC330715 —UN—27SEP17

GA87848,000108D -19-04JAN21-1/1

Every 50 Hours: Check Chain Tension

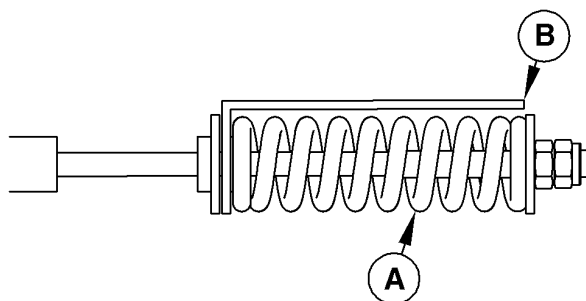
Check for all tensioner that length of spring (A) and strap (B) are the same.

If necessary, see Service section to adjust chain.

If the length of spring (A) cannot be adjusted to match the length of strap (B), replace the chain. See your John Deere dealer.

A—Spring

B—Strap

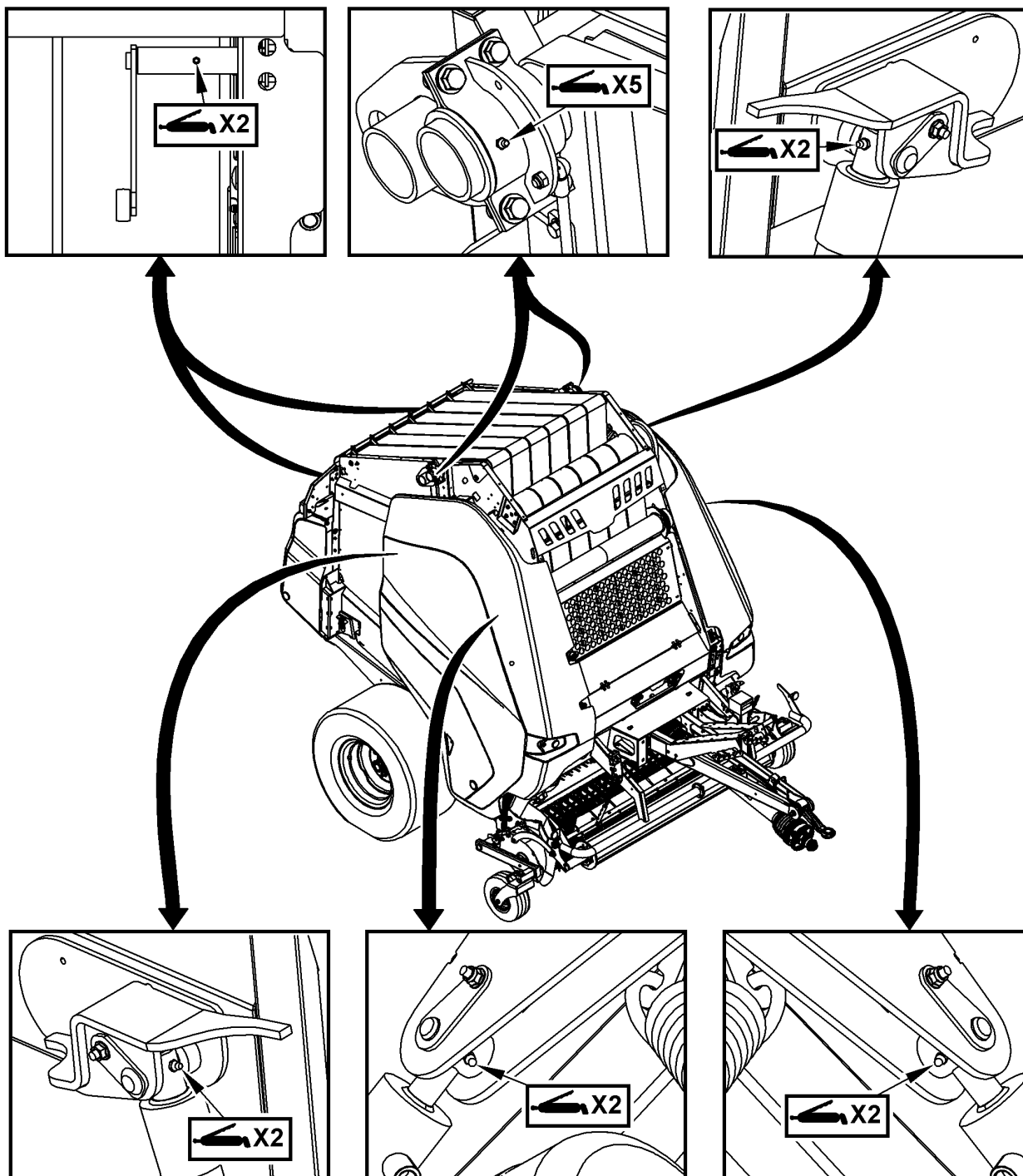


CC286971

CC286971 —UN—01SEP16

ga87848,1676629354204 -19-20FEB23-1/1

Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Door Hinges, Hydraulic Cylinders, and Bale Shape Sensor Pins



CC310415

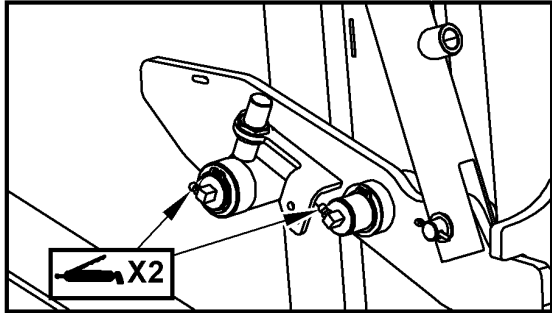
Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

ga87848,1682604928735 -19-27APR23-1/1

CC310415—UN—18APR17

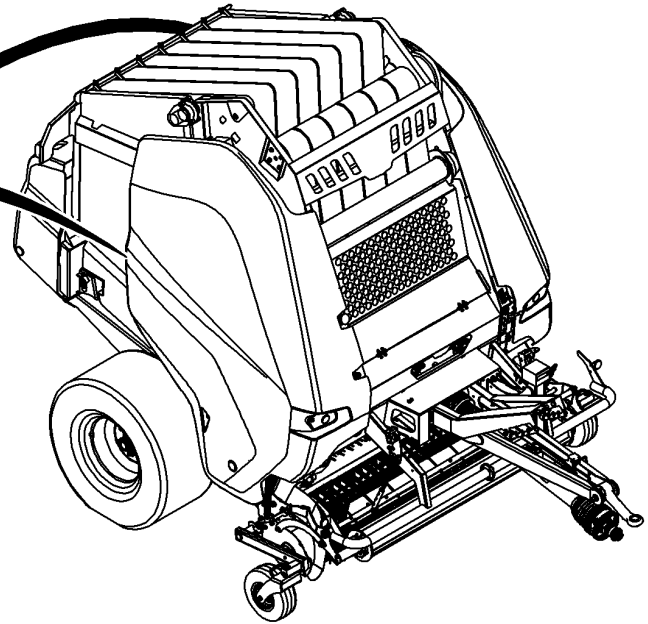
Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Gate latches



CC329279

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

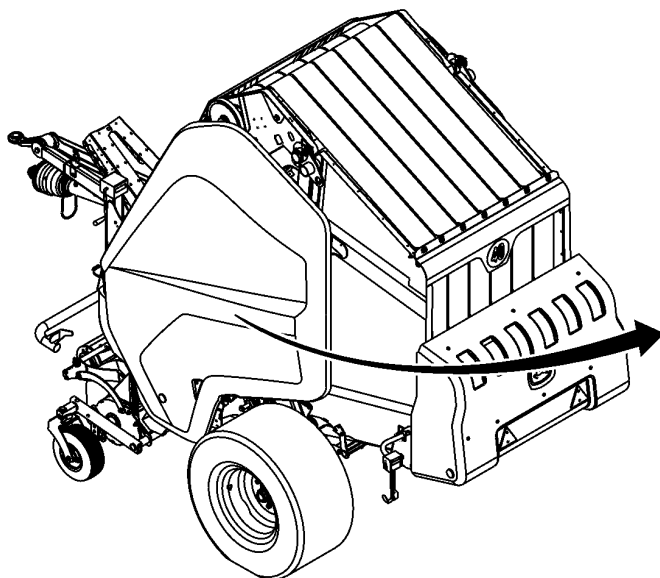
Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company



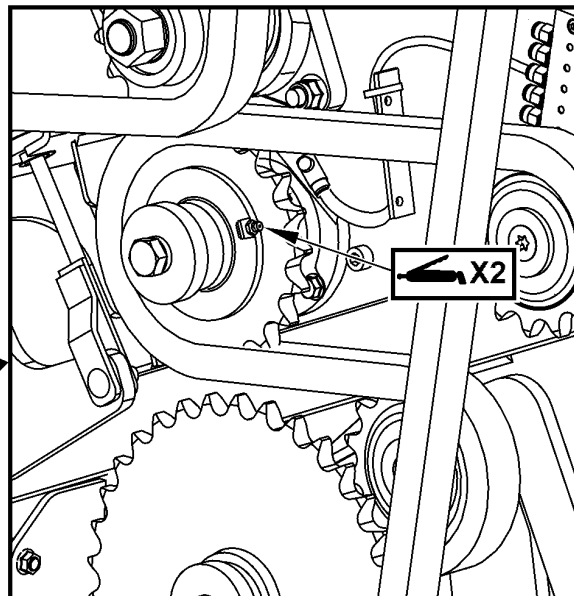
CC329279 —UN—01 SEP17

ga87848,1682604976496 -19-27APR23-1/1

Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Lower Belt Drive Roll (With 2nd Drive Roll)



CC652856



CC652856 —UN—20NOV24

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

r2c13ue,1732109206111 -19-20NOV24-1/1

Weekly: Check Gear Case Oil Level

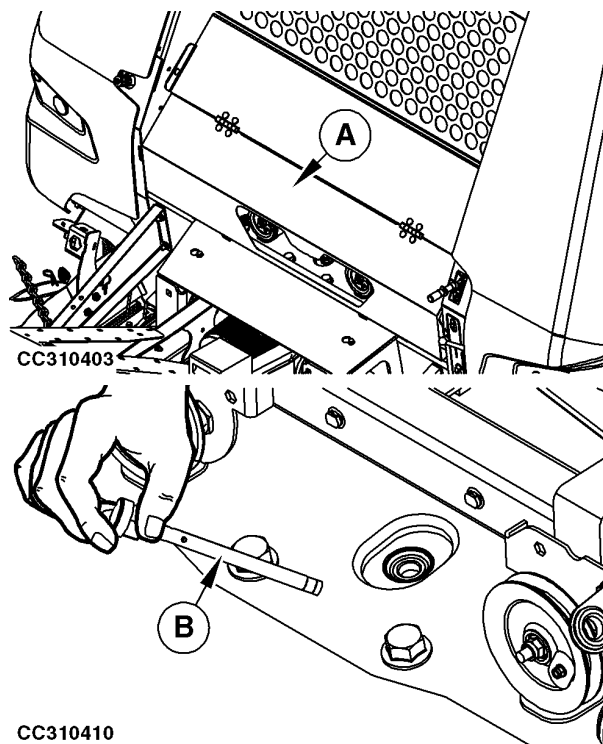
1. Open twine binding system cover (A).
2. Use dipstick (B) to check gear case oil level.

IMPORTANT: Check level of lubricant weekly using dipstick (B) and refill as necessary.

Do not overfill gear case as this will result in overheating and oil leakage.

A—Twine Binding System Cover

B—Dipstick



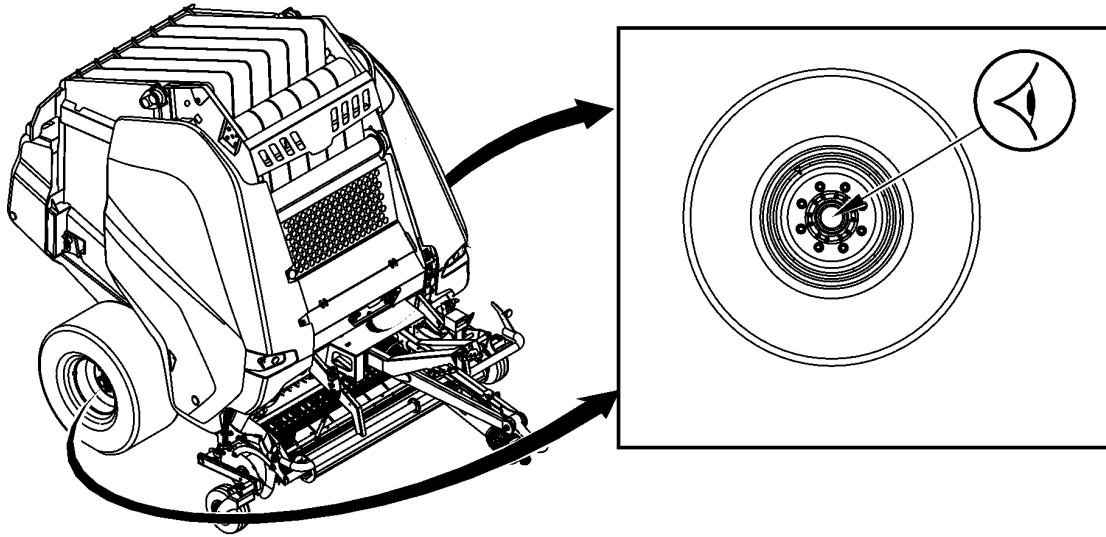
CC310410

CC310403 —UN—18APR17

CC310410 —UN—17AUG17

NB02380,000050A -19-23OCT17-1/1

Weekly: Check Wheel Hub Cap



CC574087

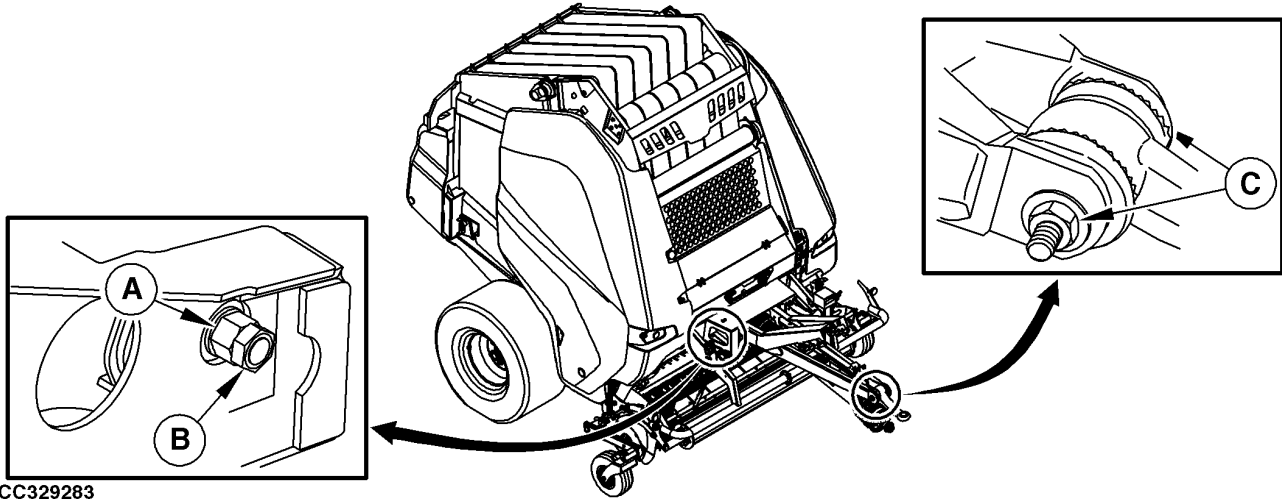
Check wheel hub cap is correctly installed on both machine sides.

Check wheel hub cap for leaks on both machine sides. If necessary, see your John Deere dealer.

aysdijz,1681894690872 -19-25APR23-1/1

CC574087 —UN—25MAY23

Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check Tongue Frame and Hitch



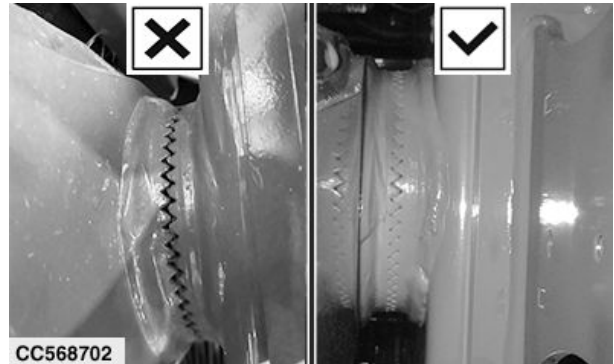
CC329283

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all ring teeth are **FULLY engaged (not standing tip to tip)** when tightening nuts (A), (B), and (C).

Retighten tongue frame fixing nuts (A), lock nuts (B) and hitch fixing screw (C) to specified torque:

Specification

Tongue Frame Fixing Nut—Torque.....	700 N·m (516 lb-ft)
Tongue Frame Lock Nut—Torque.....	300 N·m (221 lb-ft)
Hitch Fixing Nut—Torque.....	620 N·m (450 lb-ft)



CC568702

Tongue Tighten Error

A—Tongue Frame Fixing Nut
B—Tongue Frame Lock Nut

C—Hitch Fixing Nut

ga87848,1682670818211 -19-23JUN23-1/1

Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.



CC652846

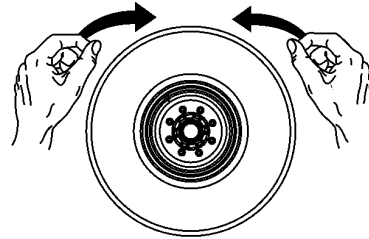
r2c13ue,1731591976602 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Every 100 Hours or Yearly: Check End Play of Wheel Hub Bearing

Check the wheels have no play:

1. Lift the wheel from the ground. See Remove and Install Wheel in Service section.
2. Rotate slowly the wheel on both directions to detect jam or hard point.
3. Rotate the wheel faster and check any sound or any hard point.
4. Push and pull the wheel on all directions. The wheels should not be wobbly.

If necessary, see your John Deere dealer.

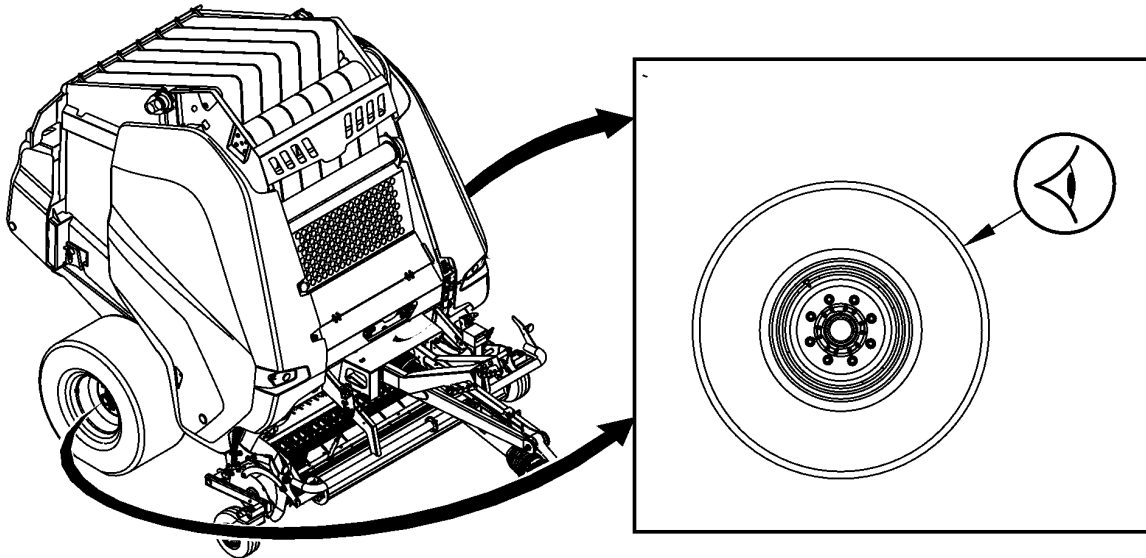


CC574077

CC574077 —UN—19APR23

aysdijz,1681895000103 -19-25APR23-1/1

Twice a Year: Check Tire



CC574101

CC574101 —UN—25MAY23

Check tire conditions on both machine sides.

Check tread and sidewalls for any cuts, scrapes, punctures, bumps, cracks, or foreign bodies.

If necessary, see your John Deere dealer.

r2c13ue,1731592197446 -19-14NOV24-1/1

Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Drain and Refill Gear Case

1. Open twine binding system cover (A).
2. Drain oil while it is warm (i.e. after operation).
Remove dipstick (B) and drain plug (C), then drain oil into a suitable receptacle.
3. Clean then reinstall drain plug (C) and tighten to specified torque:

Specification

Drain Plug—Torque.....30 N·m
(22 lb·ft)

4. Refill gear case with John Deere Extreme-Gard™ or equivalent. See [Gear Oil](#) in this section.

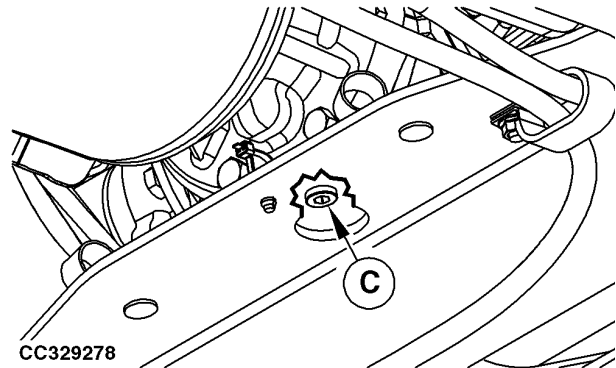
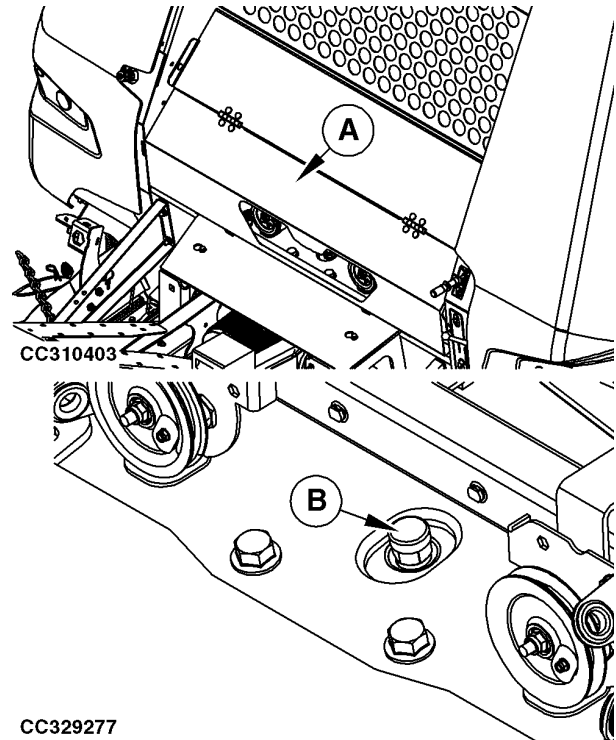
Specification

Gear Case—Capacity..... 1.9 L
(0.5 gal)

5. Check oil level with dipstick (B) before reinstalling.
6. Close twine binding cover (A).

A—Twine Binding System
Cover
B—Dipstick

C—Drain Plug

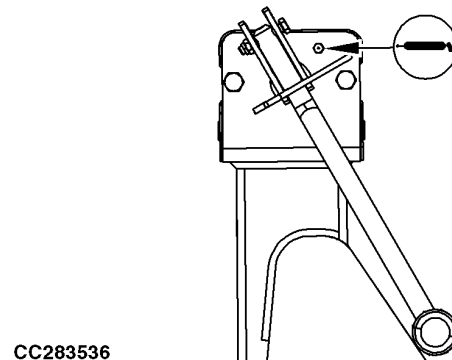


Extreme-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

ga87848,1682671470117 -19-28APR23-1/1

Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Lubricate Jackstand

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.



Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

ga87848,1679386792278 -19-21MAR23-1/1

Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Lubricate Extension Shaft



CC516891

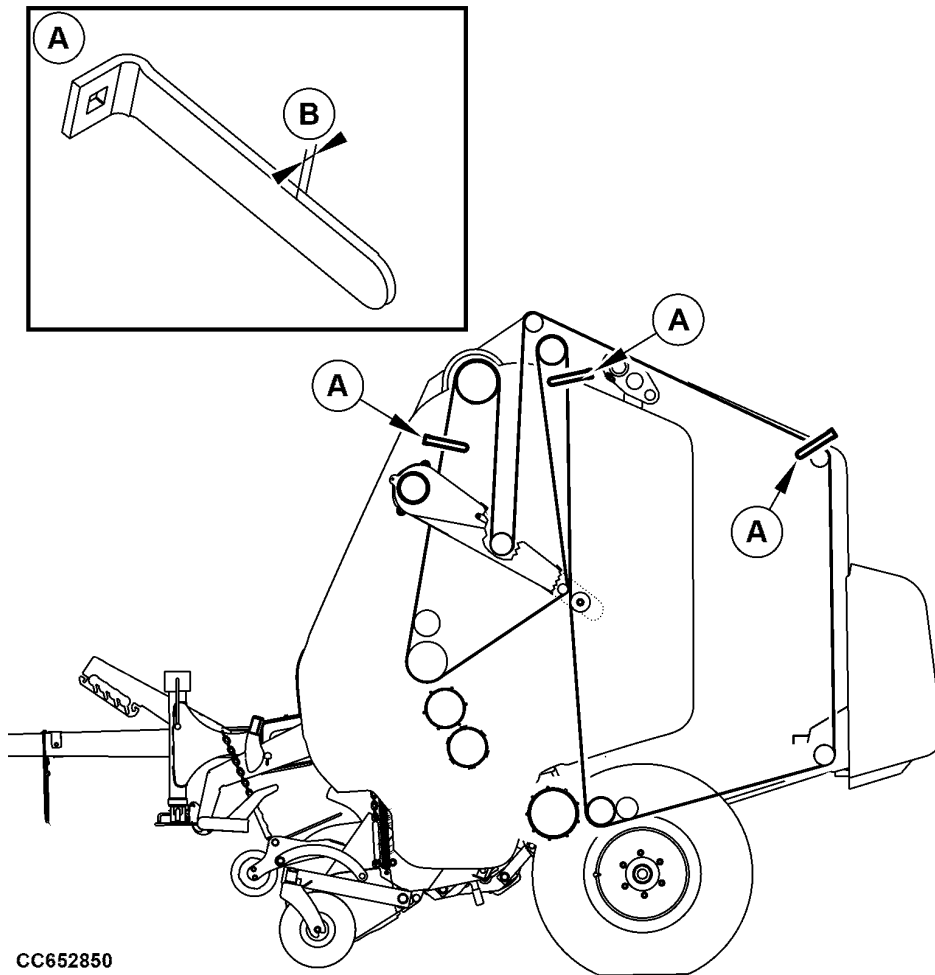
Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™ Premium Plus.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

ga87848,1683286596825 -19-05MAY23-1/1

CC516891 —UN—03JUL21

Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Check Belt Guides Wear



CC652850

A—Belt Guide

B—Thickness

Check if thickness (B) on belt guides (A) is greater than specification.

If thickness (B) is less than specification, see your John Deere dealer.

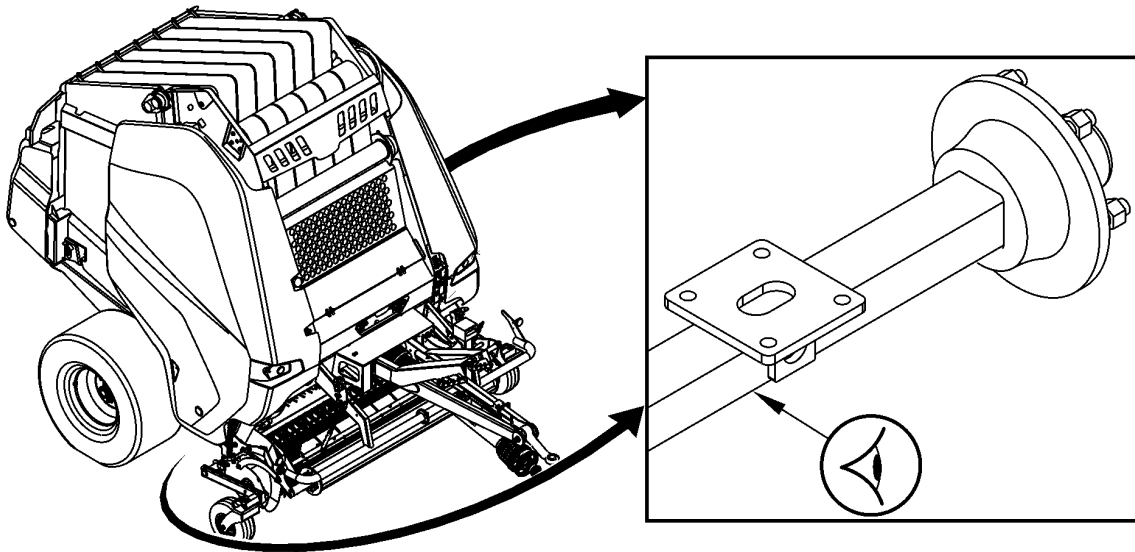
Specification

Belt Guide—Thickness..... 2.5 mm
(0.1 in)

r2c13ue,1731592262215 -19-11FEB25-1/1

CC652850 —UN—20NOV24

Yearly: Check Axle Condition



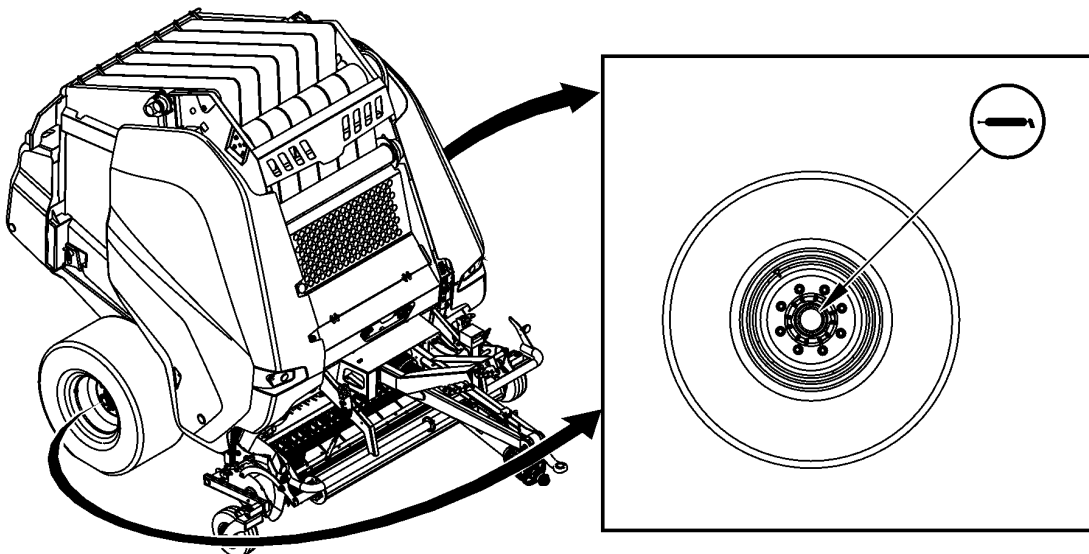
CC652847

Check axle condition (wear, corrosion, damage). If necessary, see your John Deere dealer.

r2c13ue,1732101023383 -19-20NOV24-1/1

CC652847 —UN—15NOV24

Yearly: Clean, Check and Lubricate Wheel Bearing



CC575678

To clean, check and lubricate the wheel bearings, see your John Deere dealer.

aysdijz,1681895063854 -19-02MAY23-1/1

CC575678 —UN—25MAY23

Yearly: Check Thickness of Wear Plates

1. Open the gate and secure it with safety lock device.
2. Check that thickness (B) is with specification, see your John Deere dealer.

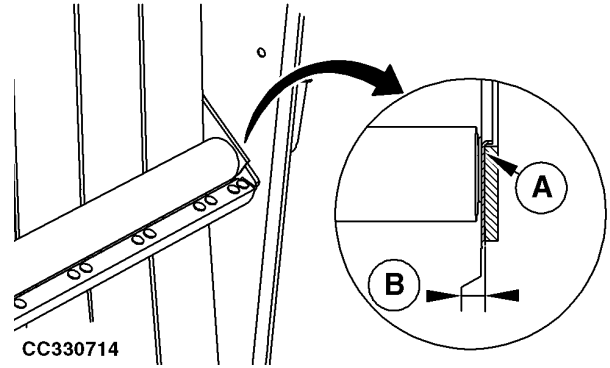
Specification	
Wear Plate—Thickness.....	0—3 mm (0—1/8 in)

IMPORTANT: Tension arm can be damaged if thickness (B) is less than specification.

3. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Wear Plate

B—Thickness



CC330714

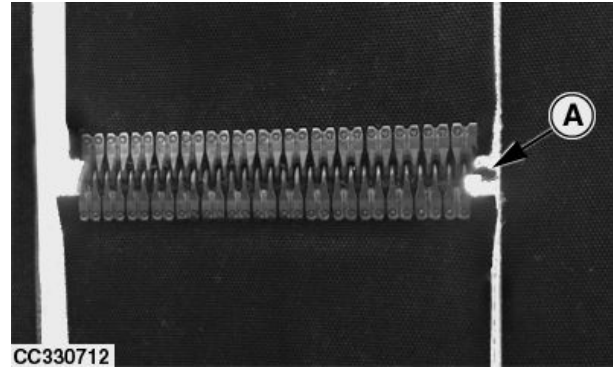
CC330714—UN—28SEP17

GA87848,00003F5 -19-02NOV17-1/1

Yearly: Replace Belt Wires

Belt wires (A) must be changed every year. See [Install Belts](#) in Service section.

A—Wire



CC330712

CC330712—UN—27SEP17

ga87848,1682671130654 -19-28APR23-1/1

Yearly: Check Accumulator

Only properly trained persons with appropriate equipment shall carry out inspection and replacement of accumulators.

1. Check the accumulator for corrosion.
 - a. As required, replace the accumulator.
2. Check that connections are tight and leak-free.
3. Check the mounting elements.



CC1022636

Accumulator Explosion

ga87848,1676036265828 -19-13FEB23-1/1

CC1022636—UN—15JAN03

Every 3000 Bales or Yearly: Check Net Feed Roll Brake

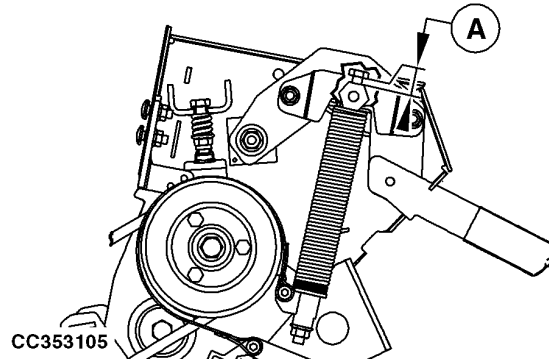
Check that distance (A) is within specification:

Specification

Screw-to-
Bracket—Distance.....3—5 mm
(1/8—3/16 in)

If necessary, see [Check Net Feed Roll Brake \(Test 6\)](#) in Service section.

A—Distance



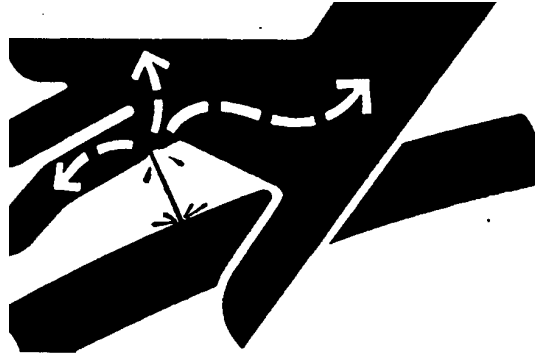
CC353105

CC353105 —UN—17MAY18

GA87848,00012A9 -19-02JUL21-1/1

Every 6 Years: Replace Hydraulic Hoses

Due to wear on hydraulic hoses over time, it is recommended to change hydraulic hoses every 6 years.



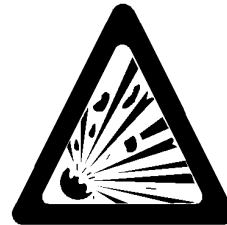
X9811 —UN—23AUG88

AP00976,000018D -19-13FEB23-1/1

Every 6 Years: Replace Density Accumulator

Only properly trained persons with appropriate equipment shall carry out inspection and replacement of accumulators.

Density accumulator shall be replaced 6 years. The date of manufacture is marked on the accumulator: MM - YY. See [Service Hydraulic Accumulator Device](#) in Service section.



CC1022636

Accumulator Explosion

CC1022636 —UN—15JAN03

ga87848,1681816726950 -19-18APR23-1/1

Troubleshooting

Pickup and Feed Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Clutch disengagement during bale formation.	Crop accumulation front or behind the rotor.	Install center starter roll (No. 2) scraper. See Install Roll No. 2 Scraper in Service section.
	Windrow compressor roll too low.	Raise windrow compressor roll. See Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Machine angle not set properly.	Check machine angle. See Set Machine Angle in Preparing the Baler section.
Not picking up hay cleanly.	Pickup set too high.	Lower pickup. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Poor pickup flotation.	Check float spring adjustment. See Adjust Pickup Float Spring in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Tongue set too low.	Check tongue adjustment. See Adjust Tongue in Preparing the Baler section.
	Windrow compressor roll too high.	Lower windrow compressor roll. See Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Windrows too light.	Rake heavier windrows. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Pickup teeth bent or broken.	Straighten or replace teeth, see Replace Pickup Tooth in Service section.
	Ground speed too high.	Reduce ground speed.
Pickup does not float or drops freely.	Excess or insufficient float assist.	Adjust float springs. See Adjust Pickup Float Spring in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
		Check there is no crop accumulation between pickup frame and drop floor.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664186035 -19-18FEB25-1/3

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Pickup teeth do not revolve.	Pickup drive chain not enough tensioned or broken.	Adjust tension of pickup drive chain, see Adjust Pickup Drive Chain in Service section. Replace chain.
	Broken cam.	Replace cam. See your John Deere dealer.
Pickup teeth digging in ground.	Pickup set too low.	Raise pickup. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Poor pickup flotation.	Check float spring adjustment. See Adjust Pickup Float Spring in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Pickup tooth breakage.	Pickup set too low.	Raise pickup. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Foreign material inside and/or broken teeth.	Remove material and/or replace teeth, see Replace Pickup Tooth in Service section.
	Baling cornstalks.	Raise pickup. Higher tooth breakage can be expected. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Inside of strippers worn.	Strippers bent up hitting tooth coils.	Check for binding at flares.
		Check teeth and stripper position.
		Increase float. See Adjust Pickup Float Spring in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Plugging at flares.	Over-crowding ends.	Raise pickup. See Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Pickup set too low.	Reduce crowding.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue, 1731664186035 -19-18FEB25-2/3

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Plugging at rotary feeder.	Ground speed too high.	Reduce ground speed. To unplug rotary feeder, see Unplug Pickup in Operating the Baler—General Purposes.
		Check drop floor adjustment.
	Bale density too high.	Decrease density. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating Baler Application section.
Plugging at pickup.		Adjust rotor auger scrapers. See Adjust Rotor Auger Scrapers in Service section.
	Windrow compressor roll too high.	Lower windrow compressor roll. See Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Bad tongue adjustment.	Check tongue adjustment, see Adjust Tongue in Attaching section.
	Excessive windrow size.	Reduce windrow size.
Noise in the rotor.	Ground speed too high.	Reduce ground speed.
	Deformed tooth of rotor.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Foreign body inside rotor.	Remove foreign body from inside of rotor.
	Bad stripper adjustment.	Check stripper adjustment.

r2c13ue,1731664186035 -19-18FEB25-3/3

Bale Quality

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Barrel or cone shaped bales. Monitor shows a well shaped bale.	Bale shape potentiometers not correctly calibrated.	Reset and calibrate bale shape potentiometers. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in Baler Application Service section.
	Outer belts not of the same length.	Shorten belts to the same length within 38 mm (1.5 in). See Service section.
	Broken bale shape indicator spring.	Replace spring.
Well shaped bales. Monitor shows a cone shaped bale.	Bale shape potentiometers not correctly calibrated.	Reset and calibrate bale shape potentiometers. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in Baler Application Service section.
Net binding settings not constant with different sized bales.	Baler rotation speed sensor not connected, defective or not correctly adjusted.	Reconnect or readjust sensor SB365. Replace if necessary. See Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365 in Service section.
	Bale diameter potentiometer not connected, defective or not correctly calibrated.	Reconnect or calibrate potentiometer. Replace if necessary. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in Baler Application Service section.
	Net binding system belt not tight.	Check net belt tension, see Check Drive Belt Tension (Test 5) in Service section.
Baler does not make dense bales.	Internal leak in belt tension hydraulic cylinder.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Dirty or defective relief valve.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Bale ends not filled tightly.	Feed more crop in ends of baler. See Guidelines to Form a Good Bale in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Density control adjusted for light bales.	Adjust for heavier bales. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating Baler Application section.
	Bale forming belts too short.	Check length and correct. See Service section.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664210888 -19-21NOV24-1/2

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Peripheral density of bale insufficient.	Not enough net turns.	Adjust number of net turns. See Adjust Net Binding in Operating Baler Application section.
	Gate latch sensor not correctly adjust or faultly	Adjust gate latch sensor. See Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section.
		See your John Deere dealer.
Baler will not make full size bale.	Faulty density valve.	See your John Deere dealer
	Actual bale diameter displayed is greater than target bale diameter.	Increase near full alarm offset value. See Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset in Operating Baler Application section.
	Bale diameter not adjusted to desired bale diameter.	Adjust bale diameter. See Set Bale Diameter in Operating Baler Application section.
	Bad calibration of bale diameter potentiometer.	Reset and calibrate bale diameter potentiometer. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in Baler Application Service section.
	Bale forming belts are too short.	Increase belt length to recommended length. See Service section.
	Bale density set to low.	Increase bale density. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating Baler Application section.
Desired bale diameter cannot be achieved.	Bale diameter potentiometer not correctly calibrated.	Calibrate bale diameter potentiometer. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in Baler Application Service section.

r2c13ue,1731664210888 -19-21NOV24-2/2

General Baler Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Gates opens while baling the first bale of the day.	Gate latches open when the monitor is switched OFF.	IMPORTANT: When the monitor is switched off for a extended period of time the gate will unlatched. The gate has to be latched again before baling. Open then close the gate. Check that the gate is correctly latched.
Gate opens while baling.	Gate not latched.	When closing gate, hold selective control valve lever of tractor a few seconds after the gate is closed. Adjust gate latch. See Adjust Gate Latch in Service section.
	Gate latch sensor not correctly adjust or faulty.	Adjust latch sensor. See Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section. See your John Deere dealer
Gate not latched before baling.	Gate latches open when the monitor is switched OFF.	IMPORTANT: When the monitor is switched off for a extended period of time the gate will unlatch. The gate has to be latched again before baling. Open then close the gate. Check that the bale is correctly latched.
Gate not latched.	Obstruction between gate and frame.	Remove obstruction.
	Crop buildup on belts in some crop conditions.	Remove buildup. Operate PTO while closing gate.
Gate latched but displayed not latched.	Gate latch sensor not correctly adjust or faulty.	Adjust latch sensor. See Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section. See your John Deere dealer
	Gate latch not correctly adjust.	Adjust gate latch. See Adjust Gate Latch in Service section.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664235109 -19-21NOV24-1/4

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Noise during gate closing.	Tension arm not lubricated.	Lubricate tension arm. See Every 10 Hours: Lubricate Baler without Automatic Greasing System or As Required: Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir , in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Door hinges not lubricated.	Lubricate door hinges. See Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Door Hinges, Hydraulic Cylinders, and Bale Shape Sensor Pins in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Gate latch not lubricated	Lubricate gate latches. See Every 50 Hours: Lubricate Gate Latches in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Faulty gate hydraulic cylinder shock-absorber.	See your John Deere dealer
Bale density indicator reading in red.	Hydraulic circuit overload.	Reduce ground speed. Reduce bale density. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Bale density valve defective.	Repair or replace valve. See your John Deere dealer.
Belts do not track properly.	Lower rear gate roll out of adjustment.	Adjust roll. See Adjust Tracking of Belts in Service section.
	Belts not routed correctly.	See Route Belts Through the Baler in Service section.
	Accumulation on baler rolls.	Remove buildup.
	Belts not cut square when splicing.	Resplice belt. See Repair Belts Service section.
Bale forming belts rubbing.	Belt tension arm not fully down.	Fully open then close gate. Lubricate tension arm. See Every 10 Hours: Lubricate Baler without Automatic Greasing System or As Required: Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir , in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664235109 -19-21NOV24-2/4

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
		Adjust tension arm spring. See Adjust Tension Arm Spring in Service section.
	Hydraulic valve defective.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Belts not routed properly.	See Route Belts Through the Baler in Service section.
Starter rolls 1 and, 2 wraps with hay.	Scraper not correctly adjusted.	Adjust scraper. See Adjust Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper , and Install Roll No. 2 Scraper in Service section.
Bale sticks in chamber.	New baler.	Reduce density until baler has made several bales to polish side sheets. Unload bale without PTO engaged.
	Baler in downhill.	Unload bale on a flat surface.
	Bale oversize.	Do not make oversize bale.
	Bale density too high.	Reduce bale density. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating Baler Application section.
	Tongue not correctly adjust.	Adjust tongue. See Adjust Tongue in Preparing the Baler section.
Belt lacing failure.	Belts are not the same length.	Belts must be the same length within 38 mm (1.5 in). See Service section.
	Improper belt splice hooks or poor quality splice.	See Repair Belts in Service section.
	Crop accumulation on rolls or belt guides.	Remove crop accumulation.
Belts slipping or not turning.	Belt tension arm not returning all the way to tension belts.	Check that tension arm tightens belts. Fully open then close gate. Lubricate tension arm. See Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Belts too long.	Cut belts to proper length. See Service section.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664235109 -19-21NOV24-3/4

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Excessive shear screw breakage.	Bale density valve defective.	Repair or replace valve. See your John Deere dealer.
	Broken Chain.	Replace Chain.
	Incorrect PTO speed	Set correct PTO speed. See Select Tractor PTO Speed in Preparing the Tractor section.
	Wrong size or grade of shear screw.	Replace with recommended shear screw.
	Bale density and/or ground speed to high.	Reduce ground speed and/or bale density. See Adjust Bale Density in Operating Baler Application section.
	Pick up aperture angle to low.	Adjust tongue. See Adjust Tongue in Preparing the Baler section.
Oversize alarm at smaller bale diameter than the maximum.	Hay wrapped around starter roll.	Adjust scraper. See Adjust Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper , and Install Roll No. 2 Scraper in Service section.
	Accumulation on switch.	Clean oversize switch area.
	Oversize switch block in oversize position.	Unblock oversize switch, replace if necessary.
Soft core solenoid is not power supplied.	Gate latch sensor not correctly adjust or faulty.	Adjust latch sensor. See Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section. See your John Deere dealer
	Gate latch not correctly adjust.	Adjust gate latch. See Adjust Gate Latch in Service section.

r2c13ue,1731664235109 -19-21NOV24-4/4

Silage Equipment Operation Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Crop accumulation at starter roll.	Scraper too far from starter roll.	Adjust scraper. See Adjust Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper , and Install Roll No. 2 Scraper in Service section.
Belt(s) slipping.	Too heavy silage bales.	Reduce bale diameter. Reduce bale density. See Adjust Bale Density
	Wet conditions.	Install second drive roll kit. See your John Deere dealer.
Plugging the baler by feeding a too large bunch of silage.	Irregular windrows.	Re-engage PTO at low engine rpm. If unsuccessful, lower the drop floor. See Unplug Pickup in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.

r2c13ue,1731664249457 -19-15NOV24-1/1

Net Binding Equipment Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Bale not bind (with slow intermittent beep / with warning screen).	Net drive belt too short.	Replace drive belt. See <u>Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt</u> in Service section.
	Lower net guide not in contact with belts.	See <u>Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7)</u> in Service section.
	Burrs on lower net guide channels.	Remove burrs.
	Net roll empty.	Install a new net roll.
	Net feed rolls not engaged.	Check, or replace drive belt. See <u>Check Net Binding Device</u> in Service section. Check belt tension when cycle starts. See <u>Check Drive Belt Tension (Test 5)</u> in Service section. Check that net roll diameter is not greater than 320 mm (12.6 in).
	Net rolled up around rubber roll.	Shut off tractor PTO. Open the net cover and release net feed roll brake. Unroll net by pulling on it. Never attempt to cut net with a knife against rubber roll.
	Net rolled up around rubber roll after the first bale of the day.	Disengage net from net feed rolls if baler must stand over night or more than 10 hours without operation.
	Net feed roll pressure too high, or too low.	Adjust net roll pressure. See Service section.
	Net not engaged properly (new roll).	Restart net installation. See Preparing the Baler section.
	Net not engaged properly.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See <u>Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)</u> in Service section.
Bale not bind (with four quick intermittent beeps).	Rubber roll damaged or sticky.	Change rubber roll, clean it, and apply talc to roll.
	Net sticky from packaging.	Cut off sticky area.
	Net around starter roll of baler.	Remove burrs on starter roll.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664313351 -19-11FEB25-1/4

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Bale bind (with slow intermittent beeps).	Net around sticky rolls of baler.	Clean the relevant rolls and adjust scrapers. See Service section.
	Belt lacing aggressive.	Change relevant belt lacing.
	Net sensor defective, bent or not correctly adjusted.	Check, and/or replace sensor. See Service, and Operating Baler Application Service section.
Net rolled up around rubber roll.	Spring missing on switch actuating stud.	Replace spring.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in Service section.
Net torn.	Brake force out of adjustment.	Increase net binding stretch, see Adjust Net Binding Stretch in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Insufficient net extended.	Brake force out of adjustment.	Decrease net binding stretch, see Adjust Net Binding Stretch in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Net around the bale, but lacerated or net stays behind pickup.	Net lower guide deformed.	Check guide at the level of lower gate roll No. 10. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7) in Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in Service section.
	Belt lacing aggressive.	Change relevant belt lacing.
	Welding spots or marks on starter roll.	Remove spots and marks.
	Too hard contact between lower net guide and belts.	Correct contact. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7) in Service section.
Net around the rotor.	Crop accumulation between the scraper and roll n° 2.	Remove roll n° 2 scraper. See Remove Roll No. 2 Scraper in Service section.
Bale not uniformly bind or not bind.	Plugging between lower net guide and gate roll No. 9. See Baler Roll Numbering in Service section.	Clean this area.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue, 1731664313351 -19-11FEB25-2/4

Symptom	Problem	Solution
	Guide of gate roll No. 10 bent.	See <u>Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7)</u> in Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See <u>Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)</u> in Service section.
	Lower net guide panel not in contact with belts.	Correct contact. See <u>Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7)</u> in Service section.
	Net drive belt too long.	Replace drive belt. See <u>Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt</u> in Service section.
	Net binding cover not closed.	Cover must be closed and latched for best results.
	Net roll is installed backwards in box.	Install net roll correctly. See <u>Preparing the Baler</u> section.
	Net binding cover gas spring(s) weak.	Check springs on both sides of the net binding cover. Replace if necessary.
	Crop accumulation between the scraper and roll n° 2.	Remove roll n° 2 scraper. See <u>Remove Roll No. 2 Scraper</u> in Service section.
Net loose around bale.	Too many turns applied.	Normally no more than three turns are needed. Excess wraps may appear to be loose.
	Weak gas spring(s).	Check spring(s) for proper force.
Net not cut.	Specified net quality not used.	Use recommended net quality.
	Electrical components defective.	Check and/or replace parts.
	Dull knife.	Sharpen knife. See Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See <u>Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)</u> in Service section.
	Counterknife not all across the width in contact with net knife.	Reinstall correctly. See <u>Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1)</u> in Service section.
	Net knife not parallel.	Reinstall correctly.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731664313351 -19-11FEB25-3/4

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Buzzer stays on after net is cut.	Spring missing on switch actuating stud.	Replace spring.
Net not tight around bale.	Net drive belt too long.	Replace drive belt. See <u>Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt</u> in Service section.
Cover does not stay open.	Weak gas spring(s).	Replace gas spring(s).

r2c13ue,1731664313351 -19-11FEB25-4/4

Chain Oiling System

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Oil consumption too high.	Main line interrupted.	Repair or replace.
	Oil too light.	Use a type of oil specified in Lubrication and Maintenance section. Reduce oil flow. See Adjust Oil Flow in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
Oil consumption too low.	Oil too heavy.	Use a type of oil specified in Lubrication and Maintenance section. Increase oil flow. See Adjust Oil Flow in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Pump not correctly driven.	Machine running, check rotation of the pump by removing pump cover. If pump is not driven, replace connecting tube. Repair, adjust or replace pump.
Machine dry.	Faulty pump.	Repair, adjust or replace.
	Main line interrupted.	Repair or replace.
	No oil in system.	Refill as necessary with specified oil. See Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Air lock or pump empty.	Bleed pump.
	Heavy contamination resulting in blocked system.	Clean system and replace all metering valves.
	Line trapped.	Repair line.

GA87848,0000C38 -19-13MAY19-1/1

Baler Application Display

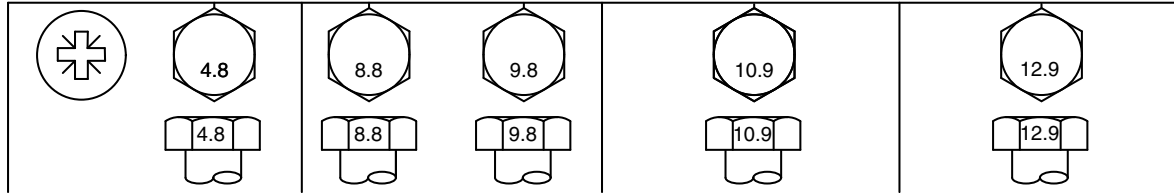
Symptom	Problem	Solution
Bale shape indicators are not displayed while bale formation.	Faulty calibration of bale shape potentiometers.	Reset and calibrate bale shape potentiometers. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in Baler Application Service section.
Bale shape indicators on monitor and real bale shape do not match.	Faulty calibration of bale shape potentiometers.	Reset and calibrate bale shape potentiometers. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in Baler Application Service section.
Right and left bale shape indicators provide different information with empty chamber.	No problem.	Normal situation.
No settings saved after power down.	A wrong harness is used.	Replace by the relevant harness, see your John Deere dealer.

TL81334,00003A8 -19-18JUN18-1/1

Service

Metric Bolt and Screw Torque Values

TS1742 —UN—31MAY18



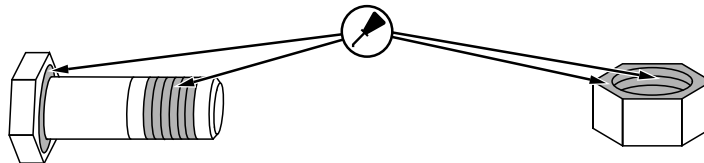
Bolt or Screw Size	Class 4.8				Class 8.8 or 9.8				Class 10.9				Class 12.9			
	Hex Head ^a		Flange Head ^b		Hex Head ^a		Flange Head ^b		Hex Head ^a		Flange Head ^b		Hex Head ^a		Flange Head ^b	
	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in	N·m	lb·in
M6	3.6	31.9	3.9	34.5	6.7	59.3	7.3	64.6	9.8	86.7	10.8	95.6	11.5	102	12.6	112
									N·m	lb·ft	N·m	lb·ft	N·m	lb·ft	N·m	lb·ft
M8	8.6	76.1	9.4	83.2	16.2	143	17.6	156	23.8	17.6	25.9	19.1	27.8	20.5	30.3	22.3
			N·m	lb·ft	N·m	lb·ft	N·m	lb·ft								
M10	16.9	150	18.4	13.6	31.9	23.5	34.7	25.6	46.8	34.5	51	37.6	55	40.6	60	44.3
	N·m	lb·ft														
M12	—	—	—	—	55	40.6	61	45	81	59.7	89	65.6	95	70.1	105	77.4
M14	—	—	—	—	87	64.2	96	70.8	128	94.4	141	104	150	111	165	122
M16	—	—	—	—	135	99.6	149	110	198	146	219	162	232	171	257	190
M18	—	—	—	—	193	142	214	158	275	203	304	224	322	245	356	263
M20	—	—	—	—	272	201	301	222	387	285	428	316	453	334	501	370
M22	—	—	—	—	365	263	405	299	520	384	576	425	608	448	674	497
M24	—	—	—	—	468	345	518	382	666	491	738	544	780	575	864	637
M27	—	—	—	—	683	504	758	559	973	718	1080	797	1139	840	1263	932
M30	—	—	—	—	932	687	1029	759	1327	979	1466	1081	1553	1145	1715	1265
M33	—	—	—	—	1258	928	1398	1031	1788	1319	1986	1465	2092	1543	2324	1714
M36	—	—	—	—	1617	1193	1789	1319	2303	1699	2548	1879	2695	1988	2982	2199

The nominal torque values listed are for general use only with the assumed wrenching accuracy of 20%, such as a manual torque wrench. DO NOT use these values if a different torque value or tightening procedure is given for a specific application. For lock nuts, for stainless steel fasteners, or for nuts on U-bolts, see the tightening instructions for the specific application.

Replace fasteners with the same or higher property class. If higher property class fasteners are used, tighten these to the strength of the original.

- Make sure that fastener threads are clean.
- Apply a thin coat of Hy-Gard™ or equivalent oil under the head and on the threads of the fastener, as shown in the following image.
- Be conservative with the amount of oil to reduce the potential for hydraulic lockup in blind holes due to excessive oil.
- Properly start thread engagement.

TS1741 —UN—22MAY18



^aHex head column values are valid for ISO 4014 and ISO 4017 hex head, ISO 4162 hex socket head, and ISO 4032 hex nuts.

^bHex flange column values are valid for ASME B18.2.3.9M, ISO 4161, or EN 1665 hex flange products.

DX,TORQ2 -19-09MAY22-1/1

Prevent Fire at Each Service

Keep foreign material (crop, chaff, twine, net binding material, etc.) from building up on the machine near potentially hot areas, such as bearings and slip clutch. Remove this buildup as part of the regular service operations.

Avoid high-pressure power-washing adjacent to the bearings to prevent damaging seals.

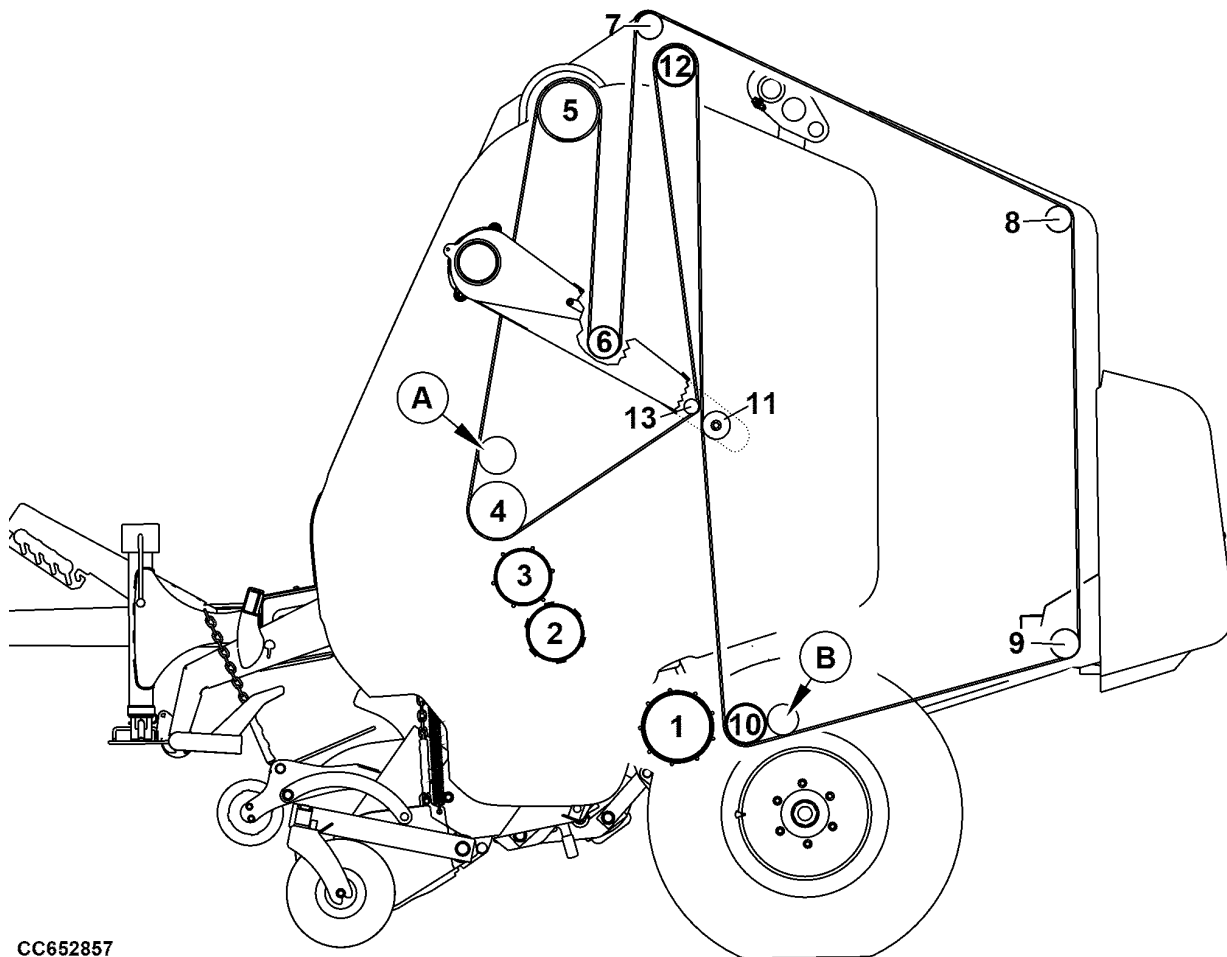
Check bearings regularly for early signs of failure, replace as necessary. Turn off power to baler and check for unusual noises, hot parts, smells of scorching, and discolored paint or metal.

Follow these guidelines if the use of welder, cutting torch or grinder is required for service work:

1. Park baler on pavement or bare ground.
2. Remove chaff to avoid exposure of flammable material to sparks; if chaff cannot be removed, soak it thoroughly with water before starting. Protect hoses and belts from exposure to sparks, arcs, or flames.
3. Have a source of extinguishing agent ready for immediate use.
4. Use an assistant to check for fire while welding, cutting, or grinding.
5. After welding, cutting or grinding allow parts to cool down before starting to bale. Verify that no fire has started before leaving service area.

r2c13ue,1731666600017 -19-15NOV24-1/1

Baler Roll Numbering



CC652857

A—Front Cleaning Roll
B—Gate Cleaning Roll (if Equipped)
1—Bottom Starter Roll
2—Center Starter Roll

3—Upper Starter Roll
4—Lower Belt Drive Roll
5—Upper Belt Drive Roll
6—Front Tension Arm Idler Roll

7—Upper Front Roll
8—Upper Rear Gate Roll
9—Lower Rear Gate Roll
10—Lower Front Gate Roll
11—Rear Tension Arm Idler Roll

12—Top Idler Roll
13—Center Tension Arm Idler Roll

r2c13ue,1732109414090 -19-20NOV24-1/1

CC652857 —UN—20NOV24

Practice Safe Service Procedures

CAUTION: This machine feature automatic sequence with dwelling positions: the machine may seem to be stopped and restart unexpectedly.

To avoid bodily injury or death always:

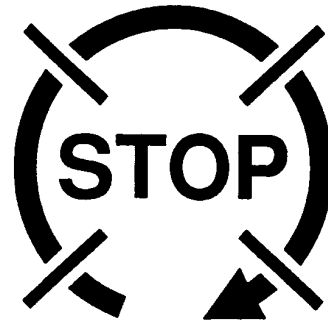
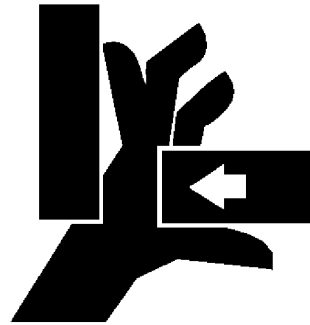
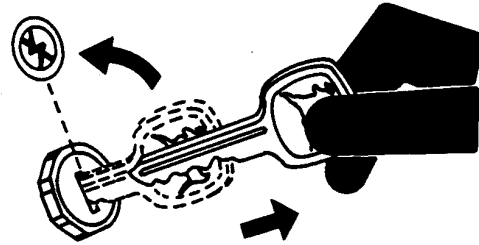
- Disengage PTO
- Engage tractor parking brake and/or place transmission in "Park"
- Shut off tractor engine
- Remove main switch key
- Relieve hydraulic pressure
- Lock gate. See Secure Gate Safely in Safety section.
- Engage parking lock
- Apply handbrake
- Wait until all moving parts have stopped
- Let all components cool

before servicing the machine.

To help prevent personal injury caused by unexpected movement, be sure to service machine on a level surface.

If machine is detached from tractor, block wheels to prevent movement.

IMPORTANT: Disconnect power supply to all electronic components when welding on machine. Over-voltage can damage electronic controls.



LX002 510

TS230 —UN—24MAY89

E41125 —UN—25OCT96

LX002510 —UN—17JAN95

ga87848,1677744952291 -19-02MAR23-1/1

Service Hydraulic Accumulator Device

CAUTION: Accumulators cannot be repaired.

Escaping fluid or gas from pressurized hydraulic accumulator systems can cause serious injury.

Only properly trained persons with appropriate equipment shall carry out inspection and replacement of accumulators.



CC1022636

Accumulator Warning

Continued on next page

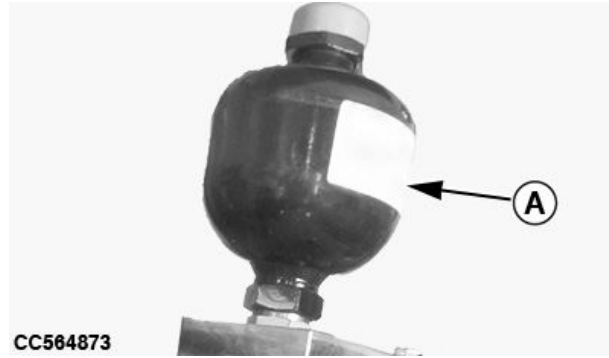
ga87848,1676020303443 -19-15FEB23-1/2

CC1022636 —UN—15JAN03

The following information shall be given either on accumulators or on a label on accumulators:

- Name and brief address of the manufacturer/supplier
- Product identification of the manufacturer/supplier
- Warning note, to read: "Caution - Pressurized Vessel, Discharge pressure prior to disassembly!"
- Gas-charge pressure XX bar
- Warning note, to read: "Hydraulic accumulators must only be charged with nitrogen"

A—Label



CC564873

CC564873 —UN—14FEB23

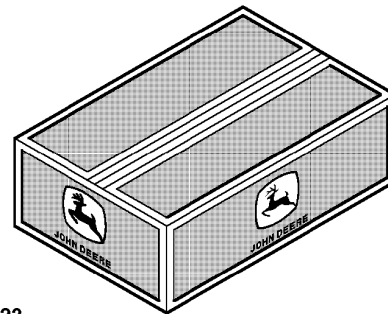
ga87848,1676020303443 -19-15FEB23-2/2

Use Genuine John Deere Parts

Genuine John Deere parts have been specifically designed for John Deere machines.

Other parts are neither examined nor released by John Deere. Installation and use of such products could have negative effects upon the design characteristics of the machine and thereby affect its safety.

Avoid this risk by using only genuine John Deere parts.



CC1020723

CC1020723 —UN—25OCT01

CC03745,0000FD5 -19-18SEP09-1/1

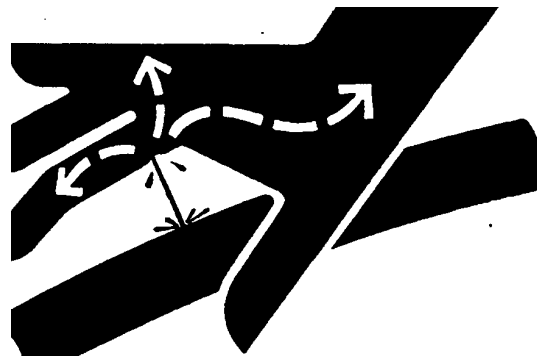
Replacing Hydraulic Components

CAUTION: Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure. Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.

Always relieve hydraulic pressure before servicing hydraulic components.

To prevent twisting the hydraulic tubes, use two wrenches when removing or connecting hoses to tubes.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within

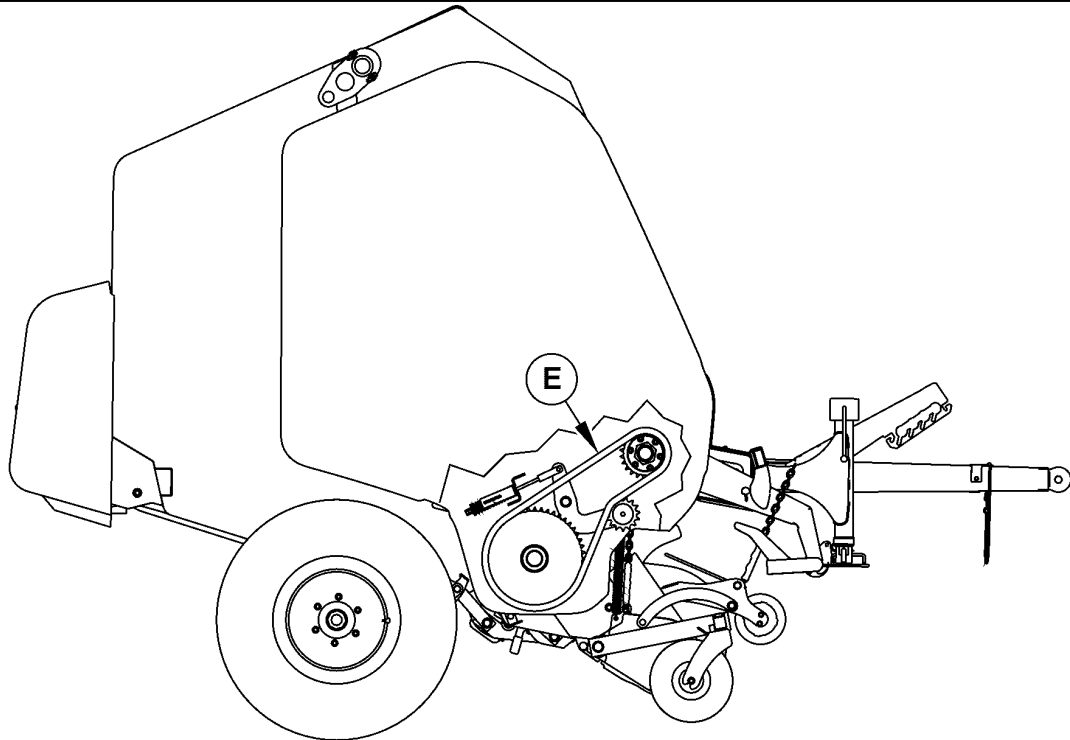
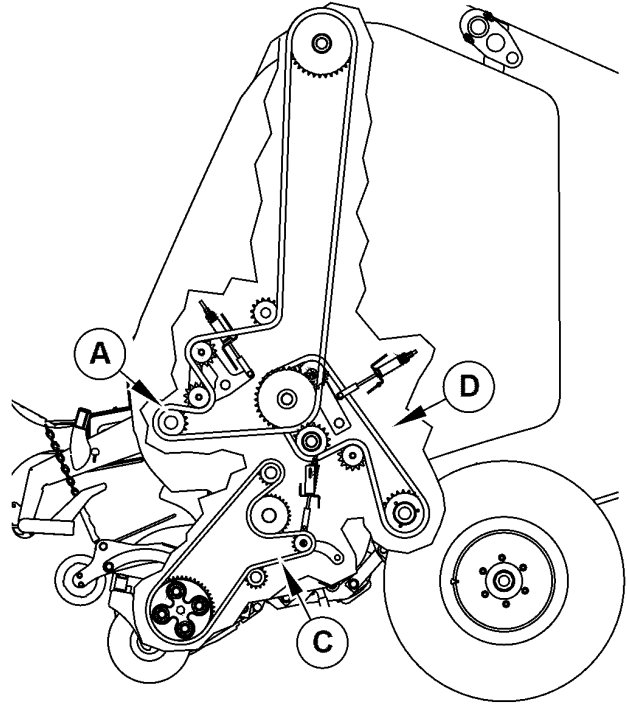
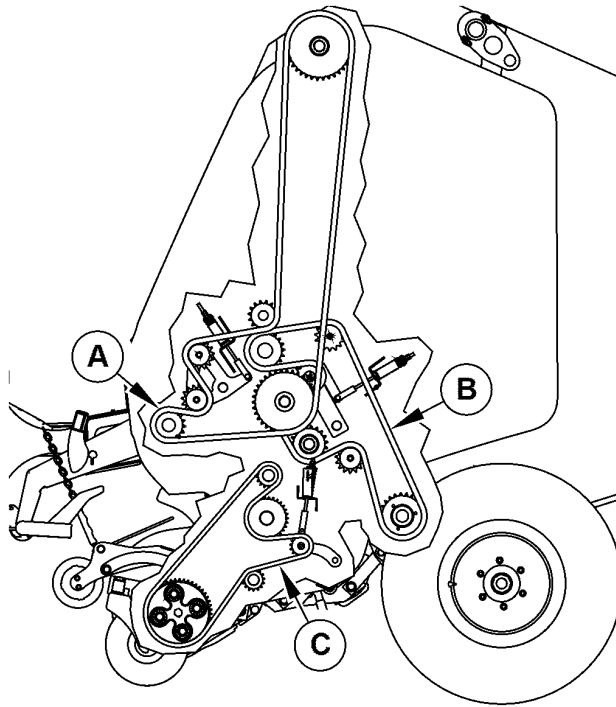


a few hours or gangrene may result. Doctors unfamiliar with this type of injury should reference a knowledgeable medical source.

X9811 —UN—23AUG88

CC03745,0000286 -19-23AUG01-1/1

Baler Chain Identification



CC652858

A—Main Drive Chain

B—Starter Roll Drive Chain (with
2nd Drive Roll)

C—Pickup Drive Chain

D—Starter Roll Drive Chain
(without 2nd Drive Roll)

E—Rotary Feeder Drive Chain

r2c13ue,1732109626346 -19-20NOV24-1/1

CC652858 —UN—20NOV24

Adjust Pickup Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of pickup drive chain (A) as follows:

1. Loosen lock nut (D).
2. Adjust tension of pickup drive chain (A) by means of the nut (C) so that length of spring (B) should be within specification.

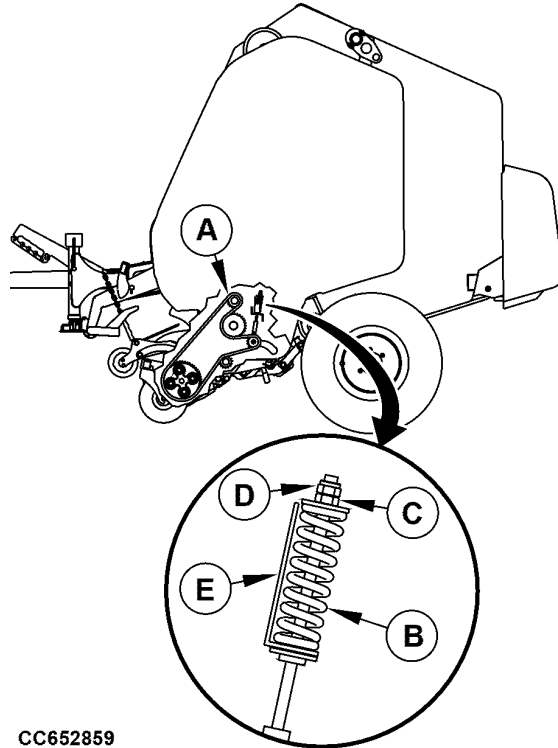
Specification

Gate Roll Drive
Chain—Spring Length.....124—128 mm
(4.88—5.04 in)

3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat from step 2 if necessary.
5. Tighten lock nut (D).

A—Pickup Drive Chain
B—Spring
C—Nut

D—Lock Nut
E—Strap



CC652859

r2c13ue,1732109748385 -19-12FEB25-1/1

CC652859 —UN—20NOV24

Adjust Main Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of main drive chain (A) as follows:

1. Loosen lock nut (D).
2. Adjust tension of main drive chain (A) by means of the nut (C) so that length of spring (B) should be within specification.

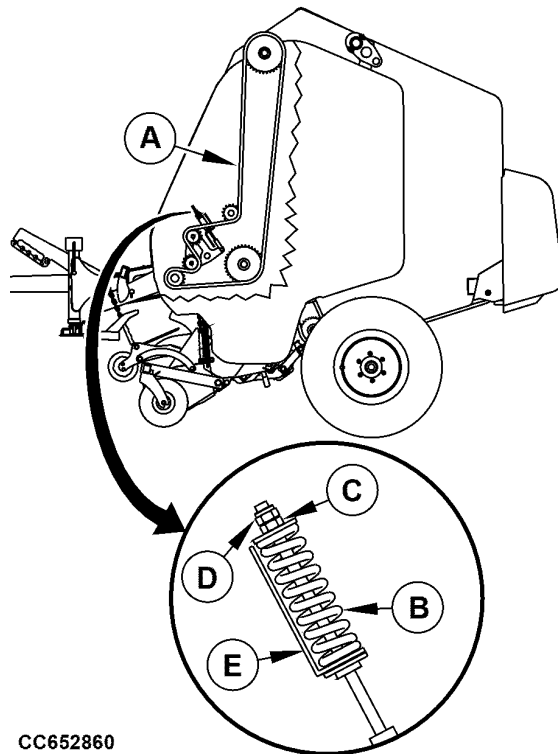
Specification

Main Drive
Chain—Spring Length.....108—112 mm
(4.25—4.41 in)

3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat from step 2 if necessary.
5. Tighten lock nut (D).

A—Main Drive Chain
B—Spring
C—Nut

D—Lock Nut
E—Strap



CC652860

r2c13ue,1732109758566 -19-12FEB25-1/1

CC652860 —UN—20NOV24

Adjust Starter Roll Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of starter roll drive chain (A) or (B) as follows:

1. Loosen lock nut (E).
2. Adjust tension of starter roll drive chain (A) or (B) by means of the nut (D) so that length of spring (C) should be within specification.

Specification

Starter Roll Drive Chain

(A) (with 2nd Drive

Roll)—Spring Length..... 107 mm
(4.21 in)

Starter Roll Drive Chain

(B) (without 2nd Drive

Roll)—Spring Length..... 120 mm
(4.72 in)

3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat from step 2 if necessary.
5. Tighten lock nut (E).

A—Starter Roll Drive Chain
(with 2nd Drive Roll)

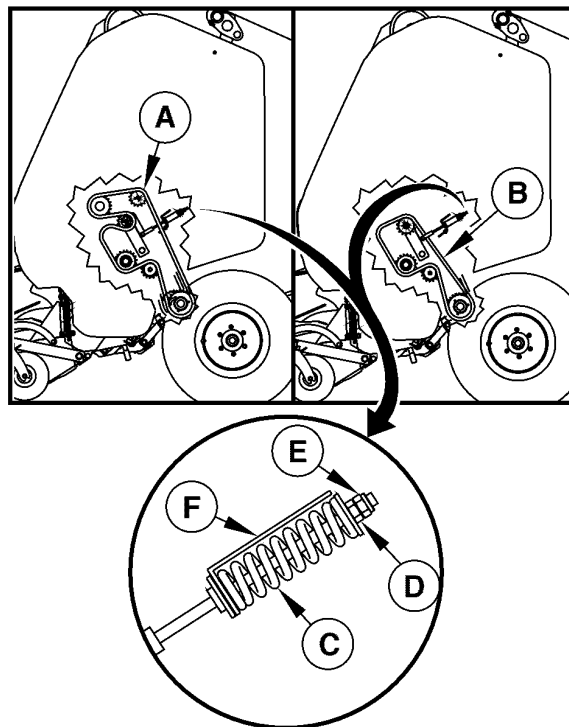
B—Starter Roll Drive Chain
(without 2nd Drive Roll)

C—Spring

D—Nut

E—Lock Nut

F—Strap



CC575705 —UN—04MAY23

r2c13ue,1739357469668 -19-12FEB25-1/1

Adjust Rotary Feeder Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of rotary feeder drive chain (A) as follows:

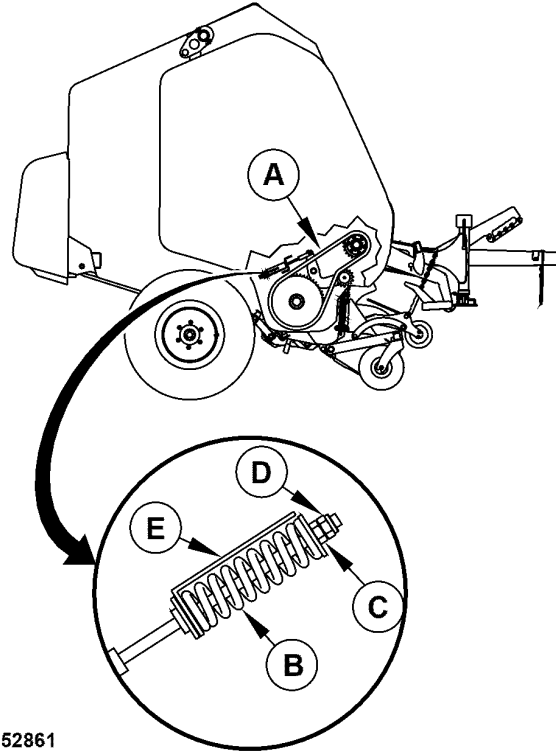
1. Loosen lock nut (D).
2. Adjust tension of rotary feeder drive chain (A) by means of the nut (C) so that length of spring (B) should be within specification.

Specification

Rotary Feeder Drive
Chain—Spring Length.....124—128 mm
(4.88—5.04 in)

3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat from step 2 if necessary.
5. Tighten lock nut (D).

A—Rotary Feeder Drive Chain D—Lock Nut
B—Spring E—Strap
C—Nut



CC652861

CC652861 —UN—20NOV24

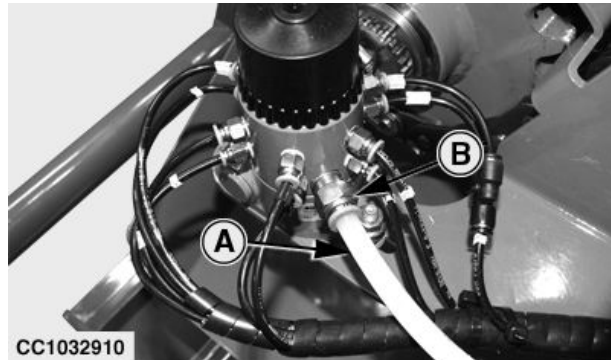
r2c13ue,1732109899376 -19-12FEB25-1/1

Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump

NOTE: It is necessary to bleed chain oiling system circuit if oil reservoir was totally empty.

1. Disconnect inlet pipe (A).
2. Wait until air of inlet pipe (A) is completely bled before reconnecting inlet pipe (A) into coupling (B).
3. Run the baler until oil drains continuously from brushes.

A—Inlet Pipe B—Coupling



CC1032910

CC1032910 —UN—14SEP10

OUCC849,0000133 -19-09NOV10-1/1

Adjust Brushes

- Adjust position of brushes according to the number of brushes used to lubricate one chain:
 - When one brush is used to lubricate the chain, align the center line of brush (A) with one of the plates located inside of chain (B).
 - When two brushes are used to lubricate the chain, align the center line of each brush (A) with the plates located inside of chain (B).
- Adjust each brush (A) to obtain specified overlap length (C) with chain (B).

Specification

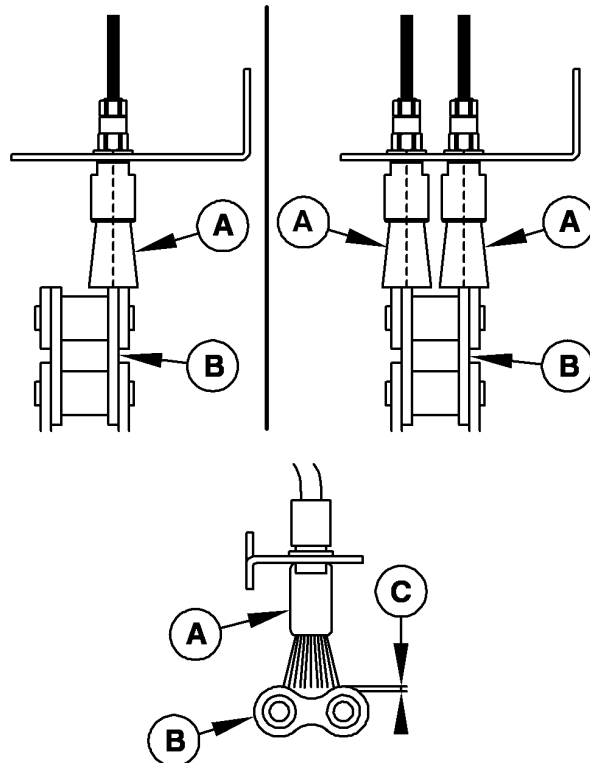
Brush to Chain—Overlap

Length.....0—2 mm
(0—0.08 in.)

This adjustment is necessary to clean and lubricate the drive chain correctly. Other adjustments may lead to chain premature wear.

A—Brush
B—Chain

C—Brush to Chain Overlap
Length



CC1035277

CC1035277 —UN—23SEP11

OUC006,000181D -19-11OCT11-1/1

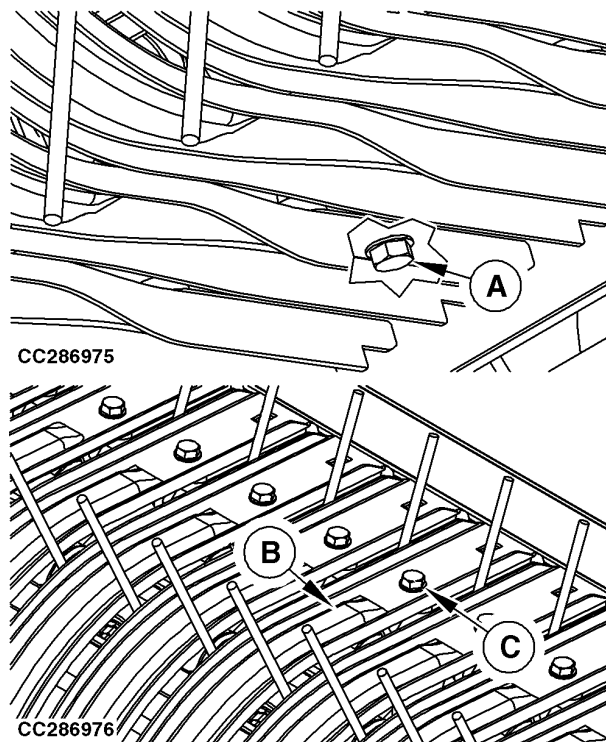
Replace Pickup Tooth

CAUTION: Before working on the baler, disengage the PTO, place transmission in PARK, engage park brake, shut off engine, remove ignition key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill.

- Remove bottom screw (A).
- Remove upper screw (C) then remove stripper (B).

A—Bottom Screw
B—Stripper

C—Upper Screw



CC286975

CC286976

CC286975 —UN—03AUG16

CC286976 —UN—03AUG16

Continued on next page

NB02380,00001BC -19-07OCT16-1/3

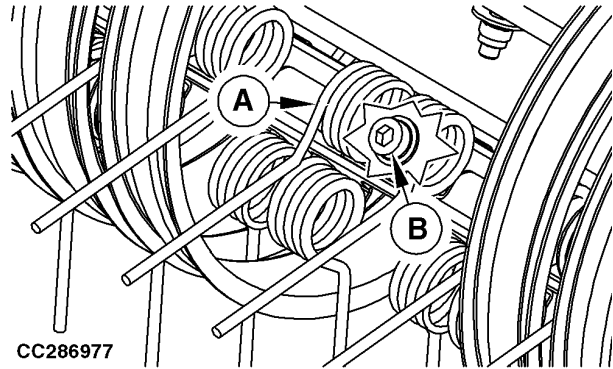
3. Remove screw (B).
4. Replace damaged pickup tooth (A). Pickup tooth must be fitted as shown.
5. Install and tighten screw (B) to specified torque.

Specification

Tooth Screw—Torque.....64 N·m
(47 lb·ft)

A—Tooth

B—Screw



CC286977

CC286977 —UN—03AUG16

NB02380,00001BC -19-07OCT16-2/3

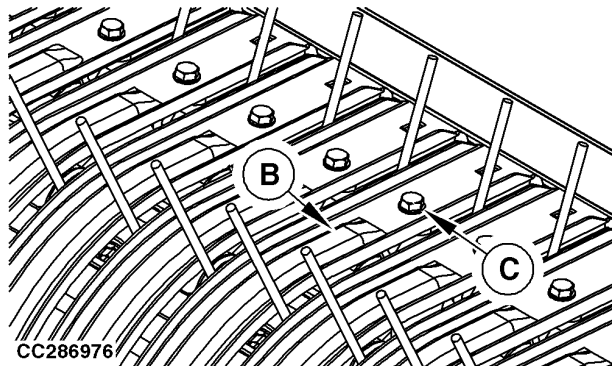
6. Replace stripper (B) if necessary. Install the stripper as shown.
7. Install upper screw (C) then bottom screw (A).
8. Tighten screws (A) and (C) to specified torque.

Specification

Stripper
Screws—Torque.....25 N·m
(18 lb·ft)

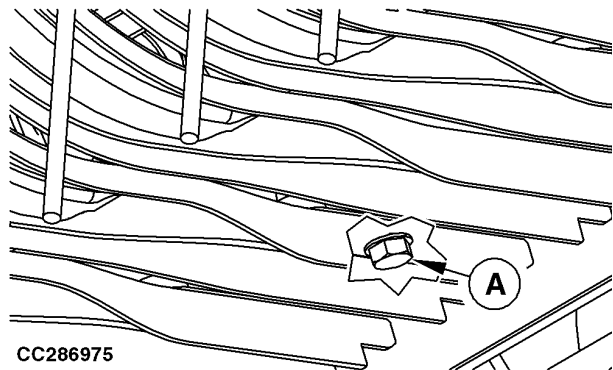
A—Bottom Screw
B—Stripper

C—Upper Screw



CC286976

CC286976 —UN—03AUG16



CC286975

CC286975 —UN—03AUG16

NB02380,00001BC -19-07OCT16-3/3

Adjust Tension Arm Spring

If spring has been replaced or screws has been removed, adjust spring as follows:

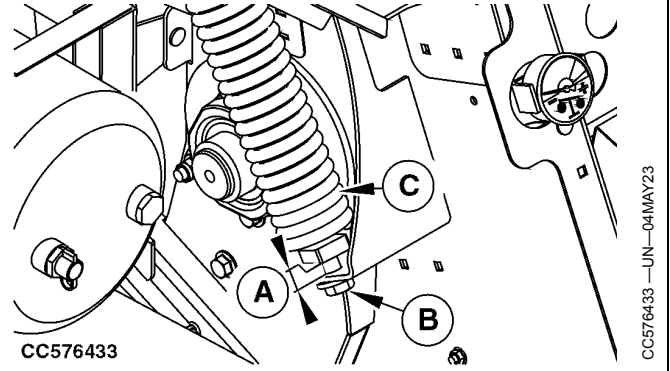
Tighten or loosen screw (B) until specified distance (A) is obtained.

Specification

Tension Arm Spring	
Bracket-to-Bottom	
of Tension Arm	
Spring—Distance.....	16—24 mm
	(5/8—1 in)

A—Distance
B—Screw

C—Spring



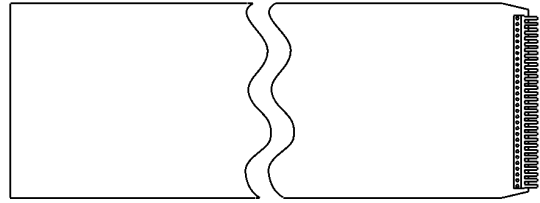
ga87848,1682679990202 -19-28APR23-1/1

Prepare Belt: New Belt

NOTE: John Deere belt spare parts are delivered longer than recommended length and with only a hook on the chamfer side.

Accordingly the belt must be cut and hooked at the specified recommended length.

1. Unroll belt on a flat ground.



CC423768

r2c13ue,1731667818851 -19-05DEC24-1/4

CC423768—UN—03DEC20

IMPORTANT: Belt length (A) is measured from pin to pin axis as if installed on the machine.

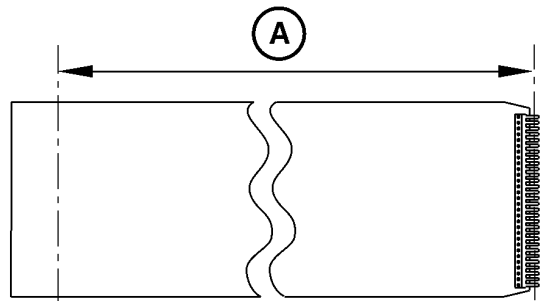
2. Measure belt length specification as specified:

Specification

V451M Belt—Length.....11.620 ± 0.025 m
(38 ft 1.47 in ± 1 in)

3. Mark the belt so it matches specified belt length (A).

A—Specified Length



CC423769

r2c13ue,1731667818851 -19-05DEC24-2/4

CC423769—UN—03DEC20

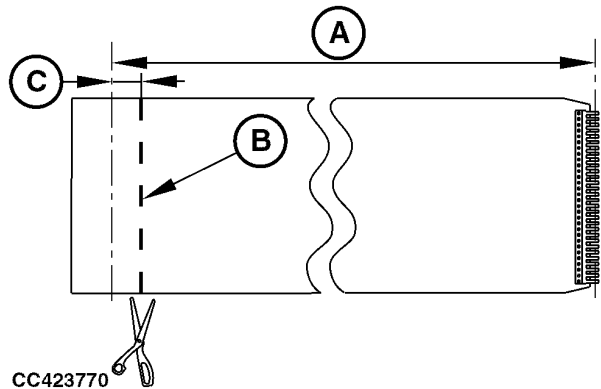
4. Make a new mark (B) 5 mm (0.2 in) from the previous mark as shown.

NOTE: Offset correspond to the distance (C) between rubber end and the pin axis.

5. Cut the belt on mark (B) using belt cut tool.

A—Specified Length
B—Cutting Mark

C—Distance



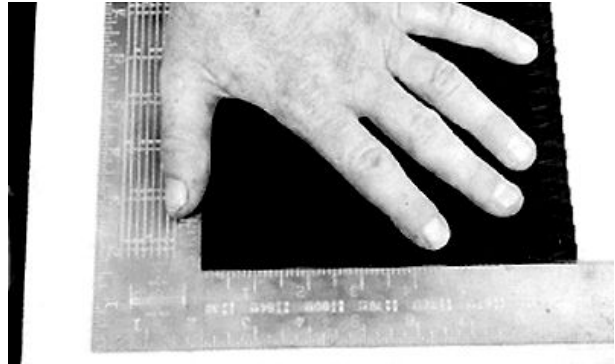
CC423770

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731667818851 -19-05DEC24-3/4

CC423770—UN—03DEC20

6. Check belt to make sure that it is cut squarely as shown.
7. Install belt hook. See [Install Belt Hooks](#) in this section.



r2c13ue,1731667818851 -19-05DEC24-4/4

E21798 —UN—24JUN99

Repair Belts

IMPORTANT: Belts may fray at the edges or cut. Trim the frayed cords as they appear. Avoid the risk of frayed cords being caught or wrapped around rolls as the bale is formed, causing additional fraying or damage to the belts.

NOTE: If belts are shorter than the specified dimensions, add a belt extension kit.

Replace both side of hooks when repairing belts.

Proceed as follows for emergency or recommended repair:

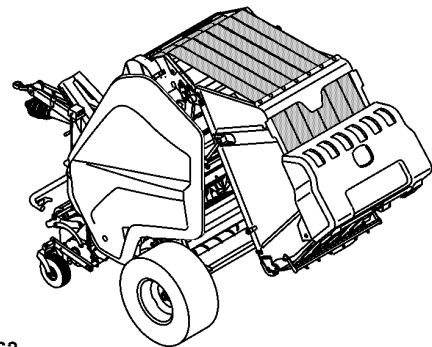
- Emergency repair: Repair quickly one or several belts while working in the field. Need to proceed to recommended repair as soon as possible.
- Recommended repair: Repair the 6 belts and replace all hooks of each belt. Need to be done after an emergency repair or if at least one or more belt, or belt hooks are damaged.

Emergency Repair:

1. Remove damaged belt. See [Remove Belts](#) in this section.
2. Measure damaged belt length.

NOTE: Belt length before and after repair must be the same.

3. Cut the belt so that it matches the same length with a belt extension kit. See [Prepare Belt: Emergency Repair](#) in this section.
4. Install hooks. See [Install Belt Hooks](#) in this section.
5. Install belt. See [Route Belts Through the Baler and Install Belts](#) in this section.



CC652862

6. Adjust tracking of belts. See [Adjust Tracking of Belts](#) in this section.
7. As soon as possible, apply recommended repair procedure. See the following recommended repair procedure.

Recommended Repair:

1. Remove all belts. See [Remove Belts](#) in this section.
2. Cut belts to remove hooks on both ends and ensure that belts length matches specification. See [Prepare Belt: Recommended Repair](#) in this section.
3. Install hooks. See [Install Belt Hooks](#) in this section.
4. Install belt. See [Route Belts Through the Baler and Install Belts](#) in this section.
5. Adjust tracking of belts. See [Adjust Tracking of Belts](#) in this section.

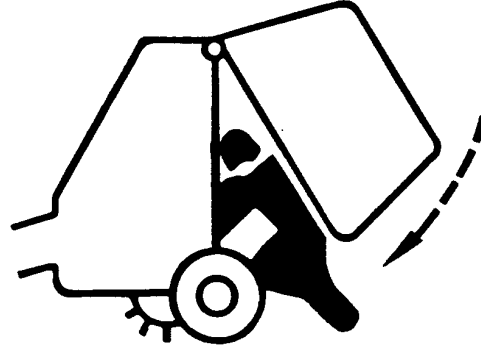
r2c13ue,1732109957499 -19-20NOV24-1/1

CC652862 —UN—20NOV24

Remove Belts

1. Start tractor engine and switch on the monitor.
2. Make sure that the gate latch sensors are correctly powered (LED light ON when the gate is closed).
3. Fully open gate and secure it with safety lock device.

CAUTION: Make sure that gate is locked. If gate is not locked while performing this procedure, the gate could close suddenly causing injury or death.

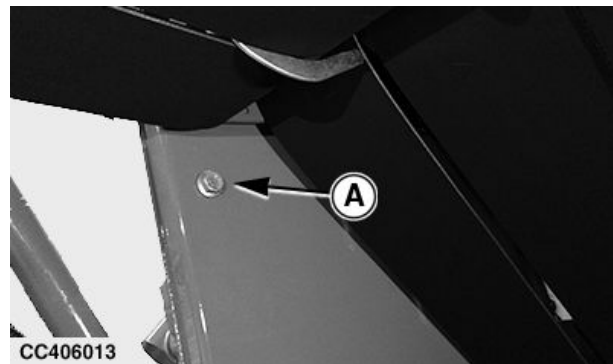


TS698 —UN—21SEP89

GA87848,000106D -19-22DEC20-1/3

4. Insert M16 screw in hole (A) on both side.
5. Position a magnet in front of one of the gate sensors.
6. Disconnect the hydraulic hose for gate opening.
7. Actuate SCV as to close the gate until the tension arm is fully raised.
8. Shut off tractor engine and monitor.

A—Hole



CC406013

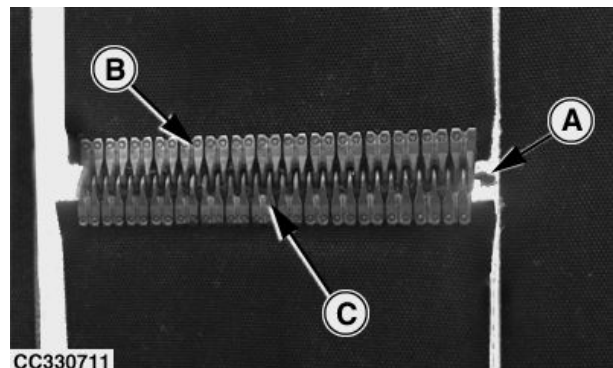
CC406013 —UN—04MAR20

GA87848,000106D -19-22DEC20-2/3

9. Rotate pin (A) with pliers and pull it from the lacing.
10. Remove belt.
11. Check belt hooks (B) and (C) for wear or damage. Replace worn or damaged parts.

A—Splice Pin
B—Belt Hook

C—Belt Hook



CC330711

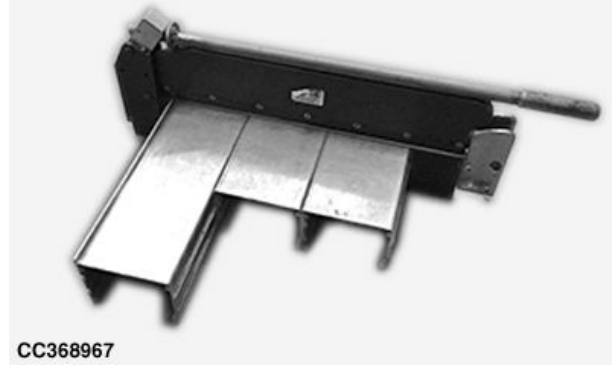
CC330711 —UN—26SEP17

GA87848,000106D -19-22DEC20-3/3

Prepare Belt: Emergency Repair

Belt Cut Tool

To remove damaged belts area, it is recommended to use a cut tool as shown. See your John Deere dealer.



Belt Cut Tool—MC464300012

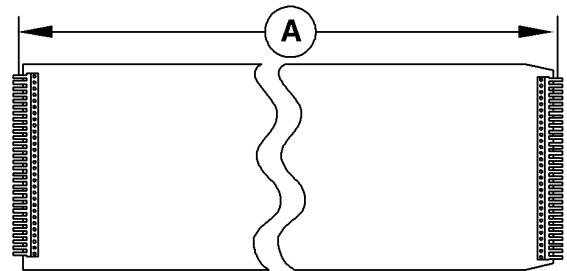
GA87848,0001070 -19-22DEC20-1/4

CC368967 —UN—21DEC18

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the distance between two hooks is at least 2 m.

NOTE: Belt length (A) is measured from pin to pin axis as if installed on the machine.

A—Length



CC368973



CC368968

Continued on next page

GA87848,0001070 -19-22DEC20-2/4

CC368973 —UN—21JAN19

CC368968 —UN—23JAN19

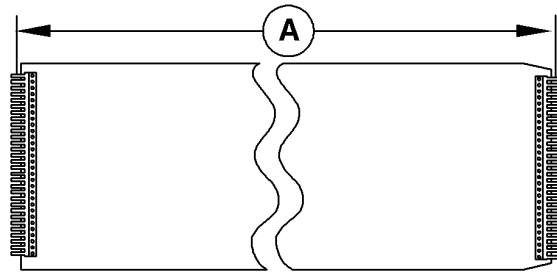
1. Measure belt length (A).
2. Cut the belt so that it matches the measured length (A) with a belt extension kit.

Specification

Belt Extension
Kit—Minimum Length..... 2 m
(6 ft 7 in)

3. Check belt to make sure that it is cut squarely as shown.
4. Check that belt length (A) with belt extension is the same as the measured length.

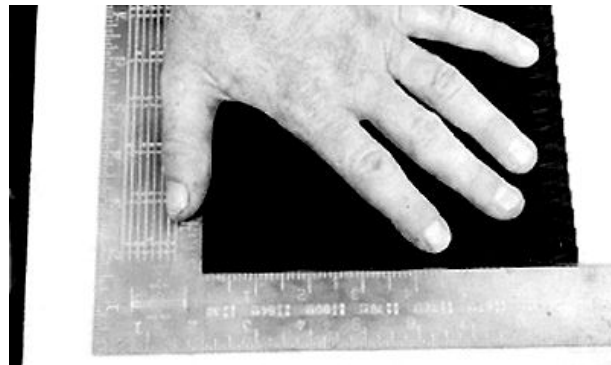
A—Length



CC368973



CC368968



Continued on next page

GA87848,0001070 -19-22DEC20-3/4

CC368973 —UN—21JAN19

CC368968 —UN—23JAN19

E21798 —UN—24JUN99

IMPORTANT: Cut belts trim trailing end ONLY in the travel direction.

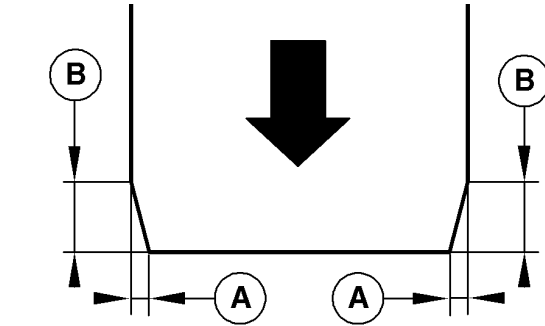
DO NOT vary from these dimensions.

5. Cut belts so trim trailing end is within specification:

	Specification
A—Trim Trailing End	
Width—Distance.....	6 mm (1/4 in)

	Specification
B—Trim Trailing End	
Height—Distance.....	25—26 mm (63/64 in—1-1/32 in)

6. Install belt hook. See [Install Belt Hooks](#) in this section.



CC368965

A—Distance

B—Distance

GA87848,0001070 -19-22DEC20-4/4

CC368965—UN—17JAN19

Prepare Belt: Recommended Repair

Belt Cut Tool

To remove damaged belts area, it is recommended to use a cut tool as shown. See your John Deere dealer.

CC368967

Belt Cut Tool—MC464300012

r2c13ue,1731668216155 -19-05DEC24-1/3

CC368967 —UN—21DEC18

IMPORTANT: As a recommended repair, replace all hooks of each 6 machine belts.

Make sure that the distance between two hooks is at least 2 m.

NOTE: To replace hooks, cut the belt at the end of the hooks.

1. Check that belt length (A) is within specification.
 - If belt length (A) is longer than specification: Mark the belt at belt length specification.
 - If belt length (A) is shorter than belt length specification: Mark the belt so it matches belt length specification with a belt extension kit.

Specification

Belt Extension
Kit—Minimum Length..... 2 m
(78,74 in)

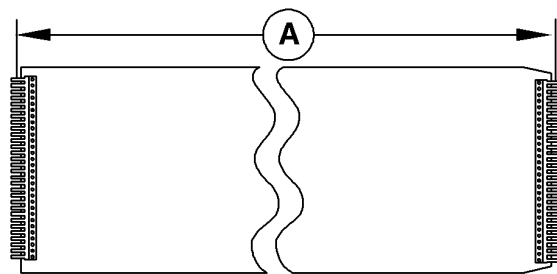
NOTE: Belt length (A) is measured from pin to pin axis as if installed on the machine.

Specification

V451M Belt—Length..... 11.620 ± 0.025 m
(38 ft 1.47 in ± 1 in)

2. Cut the belt at the define length (A).
3. Check belt to make sure that it is cut squarely as shown.

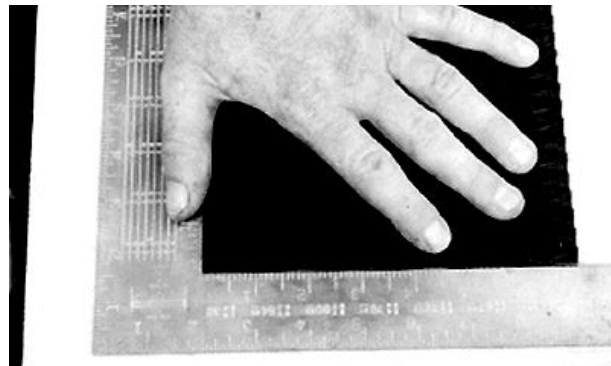
A—Length



CC368973



CC368968



Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1731668216155 -19-05DEC24-2/3

CC368973 —UN—21JAN19

CC368968 —UN—23JAN19

E21798 —UN—24JUN99

IMPORTANT: Cut belts trim trailing end ONLY in the travel direction.

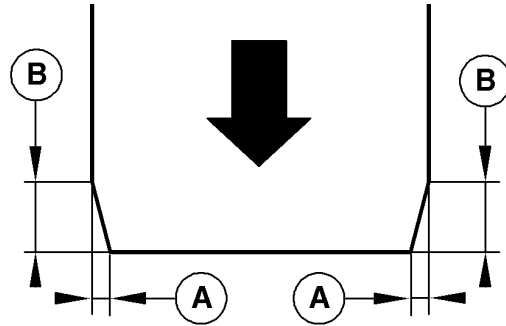
DO NOT vary from these dimensions.

4. Cut belts so trim trailing end is within specification:

Specification
A—Trim Trailing End
Width—Distance..... 6 mm
(0.24 in)

Specification
B—Trim Trailing End
Height—Distance..... 25—26 mm
(0.98 in—1.02 in)

5. Install belt hook. See Install Belt Hooks in this section.



CC368965

A—Distance

B—Distance

r2c13ue,1731668216155 -19-05DEC24-3/3

CC368965—UN—17JAN19

Install Belt Hooks

Belt Lacing Tools

To fasten lacings segments to bale forming belts, it is recommended to use a belt lacing tool with a punch or a pneumatic hammer as shown.

The belt lacing tool requires a vice being installed on a desk.

See you John Deere dealer.



CC368964

Belt Lacing Tool—MC411295872

E40772 —UN—08AUG96



Pneumatic Hammer—MC411295806

Continued on next page

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-1/7

CC368964—UN—08JAN19

1. Put belt lacing tool (A) in a vice with holes (B) toward the operator. The lacer shoulder should rest on jaws of vise.

A—Belt lacing tool

B—Hole



CC423775 —UN—01 DEC20

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-2/7

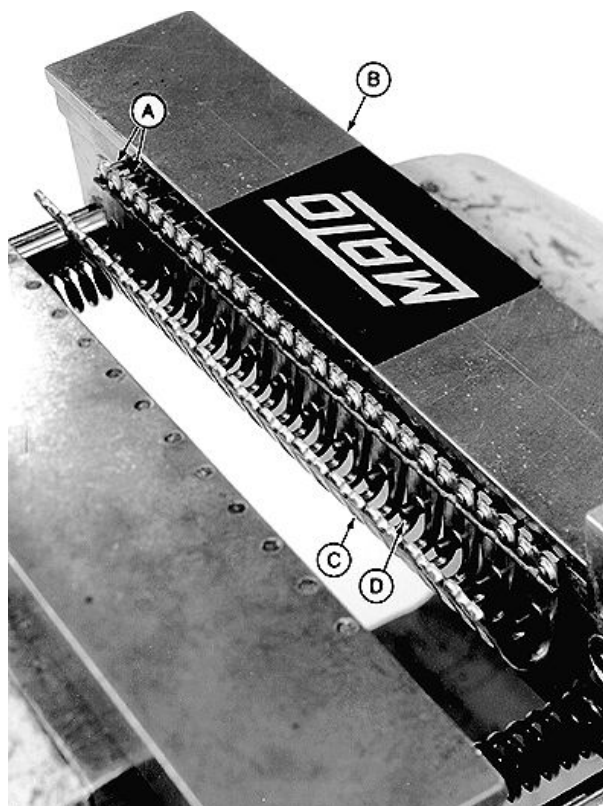
2. Install lacing strip (C) in lacing tool (B). Make sure that two rivet pins (A) of each lacing segment is inserted into each of the tool's 15 holes. The lacing segments should rest against stop pins (D).
3. Tighten vice until the lacing strip is lightly gripped and the belt can be easily inserted.

A—Pin

B—Lacing Tool

C—Strip

D—Stop pin



E40774 —UN—08 AUG96

Continued on next page

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-3/7

IMPORTANT: Hook has a lateral offset inside lacing tool. Hooks must be installed as shown to ensure belt ends alignment.

When only one hook needs to be installed, observe first hook position to determine belt side into the lacing tool. If necessary, flip belt.

When both hooks need to be installed, belt must be flipped between first and second clinch.

IMPORTANT: Check that belt side is pressed along stop plate (A). Belt edges must be aligned when hooks are assembled.

4. Install belt (D) in lacing strip while holding edge of belt against stop plate (C), uniformly push belt down to the stop pins. Make sure that lacing strip is against stop pins.

NOTE: The lacing tool is equipped with a stop, do not tighten the vice too much to keep an evenly distribute pressure on the belt.

5. Make sure that belt and lacing are positioned squarely in lacer tool. Close vice on belt and lacing until distance between lacer jaws equals width of belt.

IMPORTANT: If using a hand punch (E), using too large of a hammer or striking punch too hard can damage lacing tool or belt lacing.

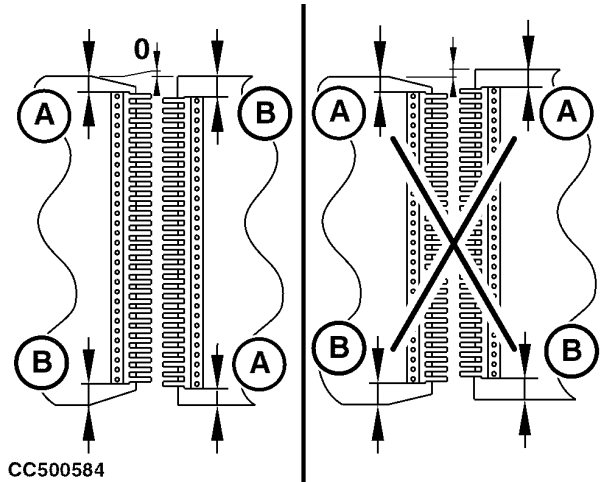
If using a pneumatic hammer (F), too high air pressure and/or too long riveting time can damage lacing tool or belt lacing.

6. Drive the rivets through the belt using punch (E) or pneumatic hammer (F).

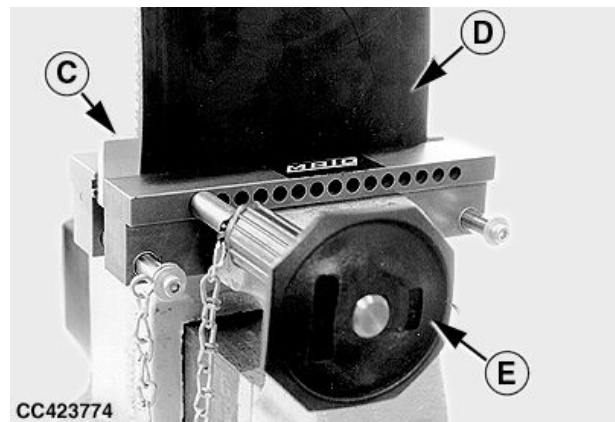
For proper installation, use the following instructions:

Rivet both outer lacing segments first, then, working from the outside to the inside, rivet the rest of the lacing segments.

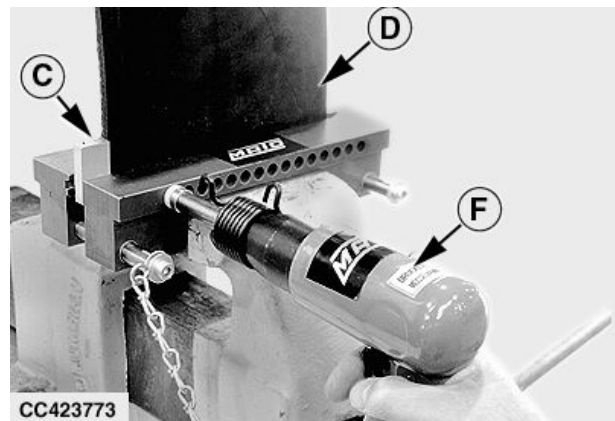
- If using punch (E), drive rivets until shoulder on punch contacts lacing tool jaw. Hit punch an additional time to ensure contact between shoulder and lacing tool jaw.
- If using pneumatic hammer (F), set air pressure to 500–600 kPa (5–6 bar) (72.5–87 psi). Operate hammer for 1–2 seconds for each rivet. Re-riveting is usually not necessary.



CC500584



CC423774



CC423773

C—Stop Plate
D—Belt

E—Hand Punch
F—Pneumatic Hammer

Continued on next page

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-4/7

CC500584 —UN—14DEC20

CC423774 —UN—11DEC20

CC423773 —UN—11DEC20

7. Remove belt from vice and inspect hooks. All rivets should be driven through belt and show punch marks in center of rivet.

IMPORTANT: Do not hit the loop area of the fastener when using hammer to flatten heads of rivets.

Do not hit rivets too hard or they may buckle and damage joints.

8. Put belt with hooks on a solid base. Flatten heads of rivets using the flat face of a small hammer. Strike several rivets at a time using a light "tapping" motion. Rivets should be flush with splice.



CC368975 —UN—23JAN19

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-5/7

9. Check hook (A) perpendicularity with belt (D) as shown.
- a. Position try square (C) 5 cm (2 in) away from the belt end.

IMPORTANT: Press the thicker side of try square (C) along the side of belt (D) as shown.

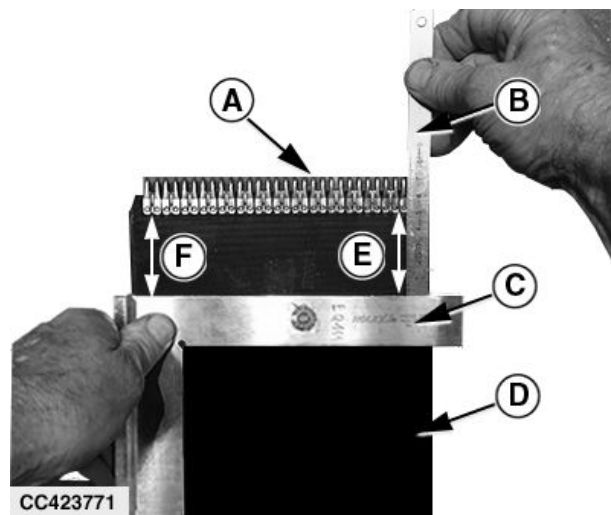
- b. Measure distance (E) and (F) on each hook extremities. Distances (E) and (F) must be the same.

Specification

E - F—Distance..... 0 ± 1 mm
($0 \pm 1/32$ in)

- c. Repeat this step for the second hook.

- If OK, go to next step.
- If not OK, repeat procedure. See Prepare Belt: Recommended Repair in this section.



CC423771 —UN—10DEC20

A—Hook
B—Ruler
C—Try Square

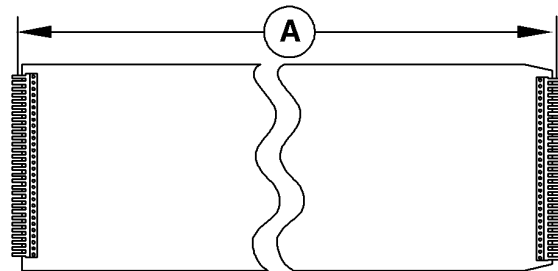
D—Belt
E—Distance
F—Distance

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-6/7

10. Recheck belt length (A).

11. Install belt. See Install Belts in this section.

A—Specified Length

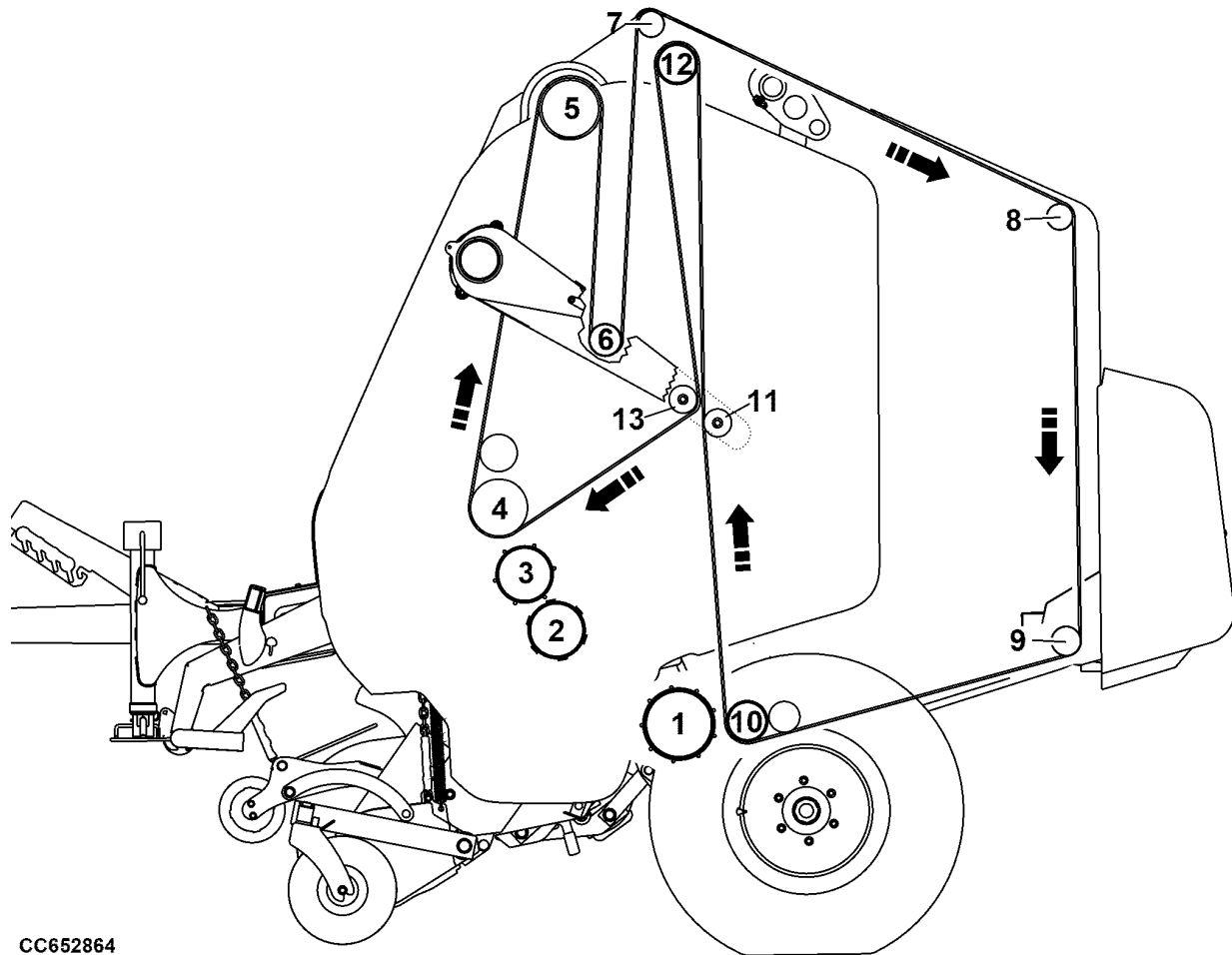


CC368973

CC368973 —UN—21JAN19

GA87848,0001072 -19-22DEC20-7/7

Route Belts Through the Baler



CC652864

Route belts as shown in illustration, passing them through the individual guides. See [Install Belts](#) in this section.

r2c13ue,1732187220603 -19-21NOV24-1/1

CC652864 —UN—21NOV24

Install Belts

1. Loosen belt, see [Remove Belts](#) in this section.

IMPORTANT: Belts must be installed so the trimmed end moves in normal direction of travel (large arrows shown).

IMPORTANT: Belts must be installed so the rougher side (H) is on bale side and the smoother side (I) on rolls side.

2. Make sure that belts are installed through the individual guides. Check belt routing. See [Route Belts Through the Baler](#) in this section.
3. Route belts so the belt end with square corners (D) leads the trimmed corner (E) as belt moves in normal direction of travel (large arrows).

IMPORTANT: The placement (interlocking) of lacing segments will affect belt edge alignment. Belt edges must align or damage to belts will occur.

4. Interlock lacing segments making sure belt edge (B) aligns with belt edge (C). If belt edges do not align, reposition the interlocking segments by moving one belt end left (or right) one lacing notch relative to the opposite belt end.

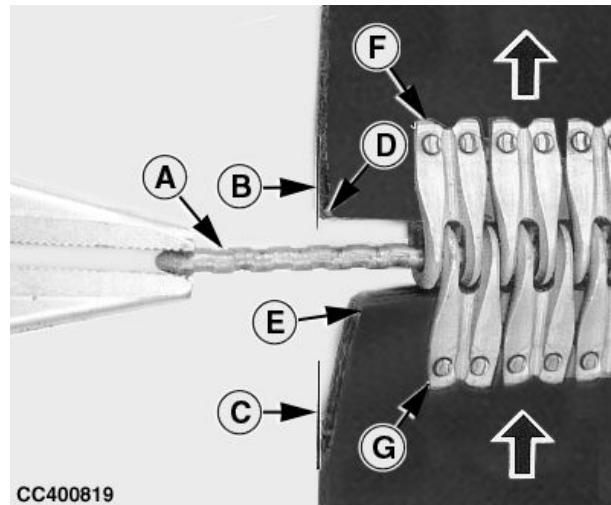
NOTE: The splice pin is shown rotated 90° (locking position) for illustration purposes only. Pin should be rotated to this position only after pin is fully inserted.

NOTE: It is recommended to replace splice pins at least once a year or in case of wear or breakage.

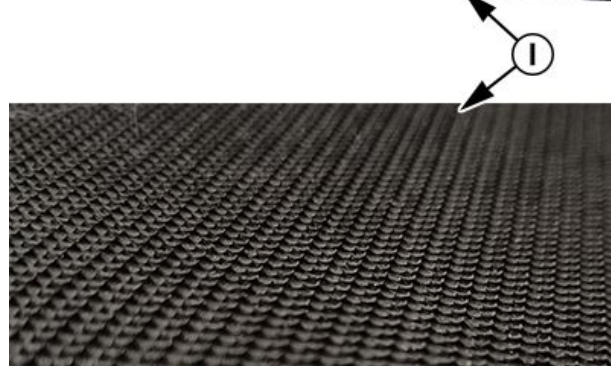
5. With notches (A) facing toward back side and front side of belts, insert splice pin. Be careful not to deform ends of pin while installing pin. Rotate pin 90° after pin is fully inserted. Make sure lacing segments seat in pin notches.
6. Remove magnet.
7. Remove M16 screws on both side.
8. Connect the hydraulic hose for gate opening.
9. Start tractor engine.

IMPORTANT: Before closing the gate, tension arm must be in lower position to avoid belt damage.

10. Actuate SCV to open the gate then actuate SCV to close the gate in order to raise the lower tension arm.
11. Unlock gate.
12. Close the gate.
13. Check belt tracking visually if necessary. See [Adjust Tracking of Belts](#) in this section.



CC400819



A—Notches in splice pin
B—Belt edge (squared end)
C—Belt edge (trimmed end)
D—Square corner
E—Trimmed corner

F—Outer segment (squared end)
G—Outer segment (trimmed end)
H—Rougher Side
I—Smoother Side

CC400819 —UN—27FEB20

CC657681 —UN—04FEB25

r2c13ue,1738939141484 -19-07FEB25-1/1

Adjust Tracking of Belts

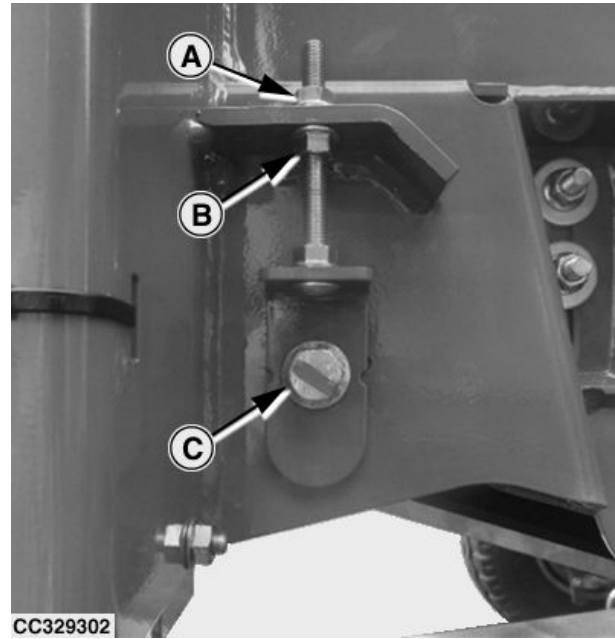
NOTE: Soft core function must be disabled.

NOTE: Baler must be empty, gate closed, and density set to the maximum.

Observe belt tracking at roll No. 5, 8 and 11 gate upper belt guides by using relevant lifting device.

If belts do not track correctly, use the following procedure:

1. With baler on a level surface, engage PTO and run at nominal speed.
2. Hold tractor SCV lever in gate closing position to apply tension to belts while checking.
3. Shut off tractor engine.
4. Check belt tracking:
 - If belts are centered in the gate guide and in the tension arm guide, belt tracking is OK, go to step 11.
 - If outer belts are slightly in contact with outer guides and inner belts are centered in the guides, belt tracking is OK, go to step 11.
 - If all belts deviate from the same side, go to next step.
5. Start tractor engine
6. Open the gate.
7. Shut off tractor engine.
8. Close the gate with SCV in floating position to relieve hydraulic pressure
9. Loosen counter-nut (B) then loosen or tighten nut (A) to lower or raise lower gate roll (C).
 - If belts track to the right, lower right-hand end of lower gate roll (C).
10. Observe belt tracking, then go to step 1.
11. Check front belt guide:
 - If gate guide and tension arm guide are centered with belts, result is OK, go to 15.
 - If gate guide and tension arm guide are not centered, adjust frame belt guide, go to next step.



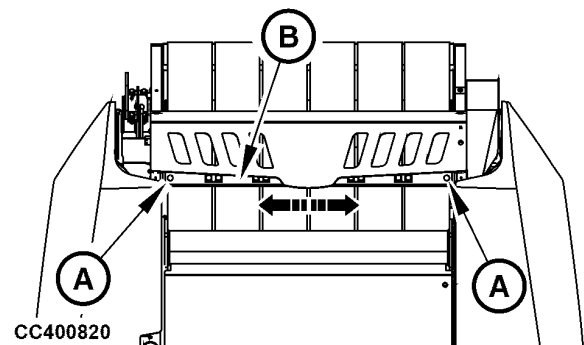
A—Nut
B—Counter-nut

C—Lower Gate Roll

CC329302 —UN—21SEP17

GA87848,00010E0 -19-20JAN21-1/2

12. Loosen screws (A).
13. Move belt guides bracket (B) so that belt guides are not pressed against the belt.
14. Tighten screws (A).
15. Run baler to ensure that belt do not run against the belt guide.
16. Calibrate bale diameter potentiometer RB311. See [Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311](#) in Baler Application Service section.
17. Calibrate bale shape potentiometers RB321 and RB322. See [Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322](#) in Baler Application Service section.



A—Screw

B—Belt Guide Bracket

CC400820 —UN—27MAR20

GA87848,00010E0 -19-20JAN21-2/2

Adjust Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper

1. Fully open the gate.
2. Engage tractor park lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
3. Lock gate, see Secure Gate Safely in Safety Section.

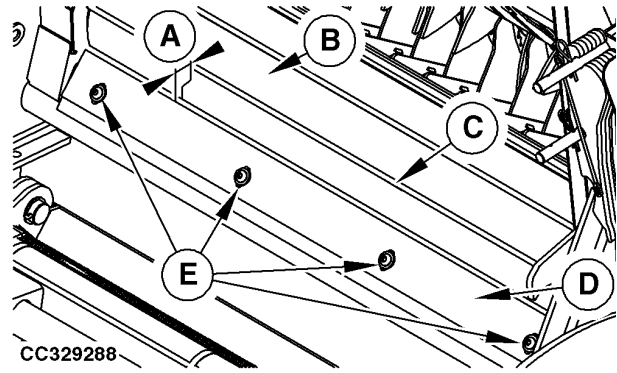
CAUTION: Make sure gate is locked. If gate is not locked while performing this procedure, the gate may close suddenly causing injury or death.

4. Open right-hand side door.
5. Remove starter roll drive chain, see Baler Chain Identification in this section to locate chain.
6. Loosen nuts (E).
7. Select the bar (C) for which distance (A) between the bar and scraper (D) is the smallest.
8. Adjust scraper (D) on selected bar (C) to the following specification:

Specification

Scraper to Bar on 2—3 mm
 Roll—Distance..... (3/32—1/8 in)

9. Rotate roll (B) to check there is no interference between scraper (D) and roll (B).



A—Distance
 B—Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1)
 C—Bar
 D—Scraper
 E—Nut

IMPORTANT: Scraper (D) must not rub on lower starter roll (B).

10. On both side, tighten fixing nuts (E) to specified torque:

Specification

Fixing Nuts—Torque..... 65 N·m
 (48 lb·ft)

11. Install starter roll drive chain.

NB02380,00004D7 -19-05SEP17-1/1

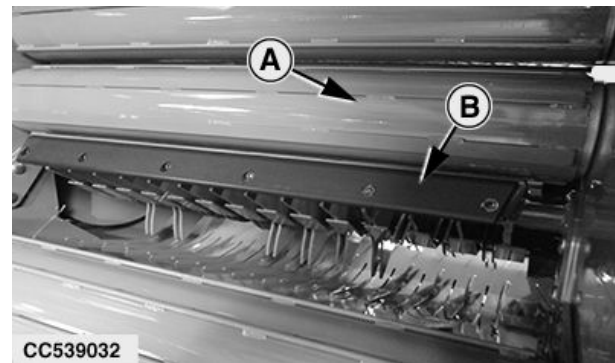
Install Roll No. 2 Scraper

The recommended factory configuration is only with plastic deflector (B) installed in the chamber.

Only when crop sticks around roll n°2 (A) in difficult condition, the machine can be equipped with a scraper.

A—Roll No. 2

B—Deflector



Continued on next page

ga87848,1687263736773 -19-28JUN23-1/4

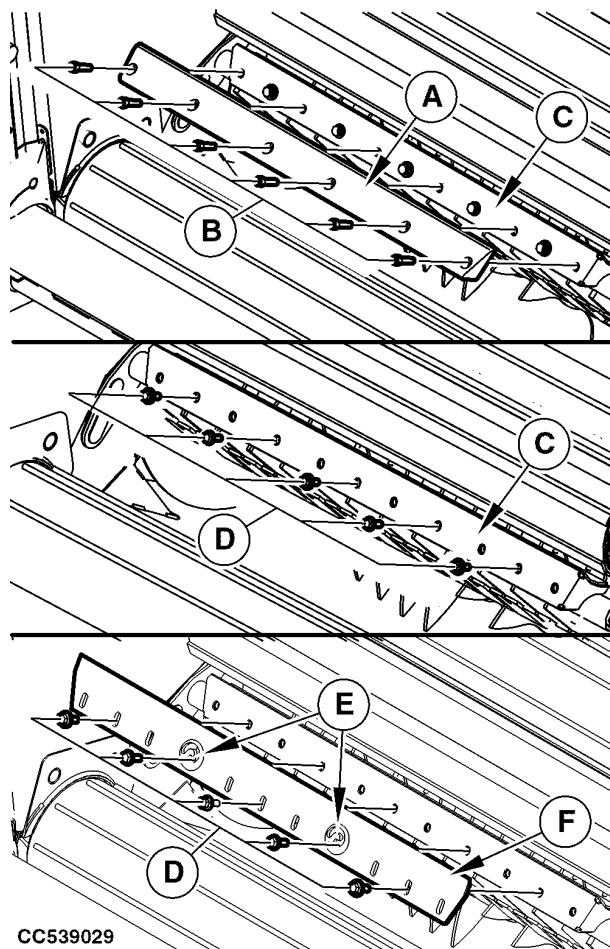
To install the scraper, proceed as follows:

1. Fully open the gate.
2. Engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
3. Lock gate. See Secure Gate Safely in Safety section.
4. Remove screws (B).
5. Remove deflector (A).
6. Remove screws (D).
7. Remove scraper (F) from storage. See Store Roll No. 2 Scraper in this section
8. Install scraper (F) and eccentric (E) on rotor stripper (C).
9. Install screw (D).

NOTE: Do not tight screw to adjust the scraper.

A—Deflector
B—Screw
C—Rotor Stripper

D—Screw
E—Eccentric
F—Scraper



CC539029

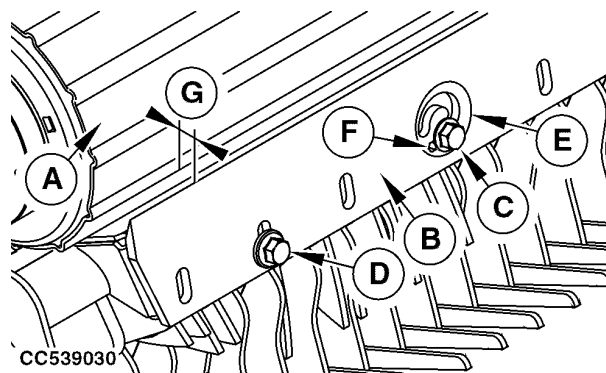
ga87848,1687263736773 -19-28JUN23-2/4

CC539029 —UN—29JUN22

10. Adjust scraper (B) as close as possible to roll (A) by turning eccentrics (E) clockwise by using appropriate tool in hexagonal shapes (F). Leave enough space (G) to avoid any contact with roll (A).
11. Manually rotate baler to check that there is no interference between roll (A) and scraper (B). See Service Machine Safely in Safety section.
12. Tighten scraper fixing screws (C) then (D) to specified torque:

Specification

Scraper Fixing	
Screws—Torque.....	111 N·m (82 lb·ft)



A—Upper Starter Roll
B—Scraper
C—Scraper Fixing Screw
D—Scraper Fixing Screw

E—Eccentric
F—Hexagonal Shape
G—Space

Continued on next page

ga87848,1687263736773 -19-28JUN23-3/4

CC539030 —UN—29JUN22

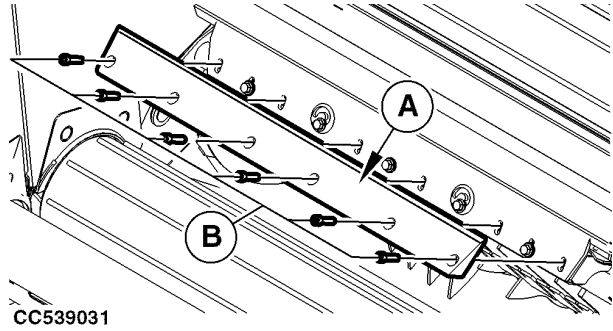
13. Install deflector (A).

14. Install and tighten screws (B) to specified torque:

Specification	
Deflector	
Screws—Torque.....	111 N·m (82 lb·ft)

A—Deflector

B—Screw



CC539031 —UN—29JUN22

ga87848,1687263736773 -19-28JUN23-4/4

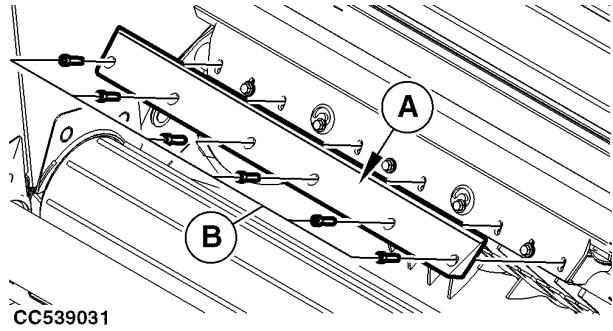
Remove Roll No. 2 Scraper

If the net wraps around the rotor, or if crop accumulates on top of the scraper, remove the scraper as follows:

1. Engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Lock gate. see [Secure Gate Safely](#) in Safety section.
3. Remove screws (B).
4. Remove deflector (A).

A—Deflector

B—Screw



CC539031 —UN—29JUN22

Continued on next page

ga87848,1687264271209 -19-27JUN23-1/2

5. Remove screws (A).
6. Remove scraper (C) and eccentric (B).
7. Store scraper (C) and eccentric (B). See Store Roll No. 2 Scraper in this section.
8. Install tighten screws (A) to specified torque:

Specification

Deflector	
Screws—Torque.....	111 N·m (82 lb·ft)

9. Install deflector (F).

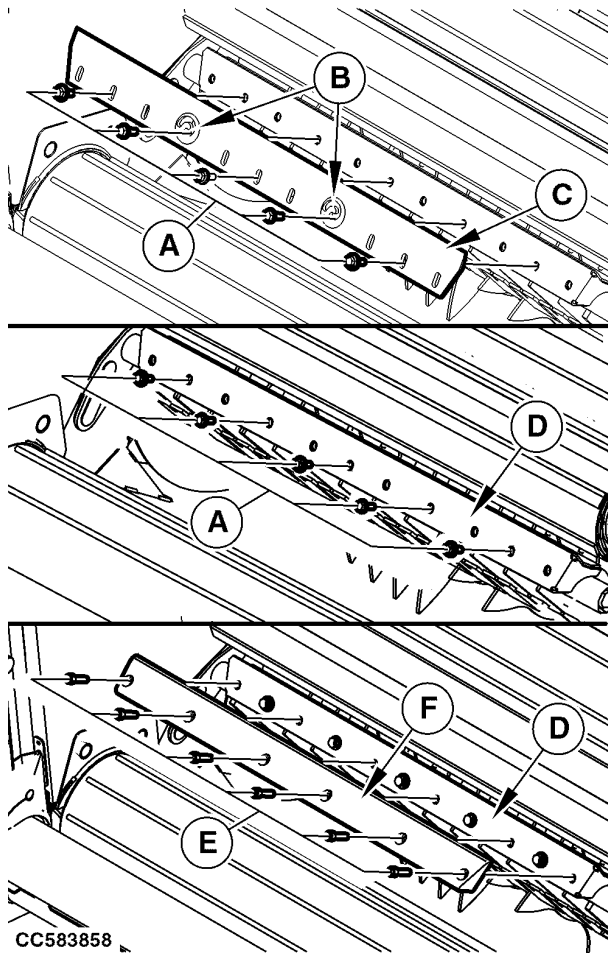
10. Install and tighten screws (E) to specified torque:

Specification

Deflector	
Screws—Torque.....	111 N·m (82 lb·ft)

A—Screw
B—Eccentric
C—Scraper

D—Rotor Stripper
E—Screw
F—Deflector



ga87848, 1687264271209 -19-27JUN23-2/2

CC583858 —UN—21JUN23

Store Roll No. 2 Scraper

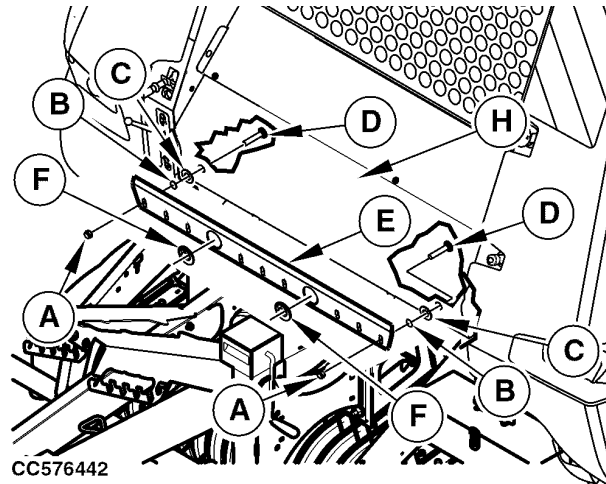
Store scraper (E) on the front cover (H).

To remove the scraper from storage position, proceed as follows:

1. Remove nuts (A).
2. Remove screws (D).
3. Remove scraper (E) and eccentric (F).
4. Remove washers (B).
5. Remove washers (C).
6. Remove the protection on beveled edge of scraper (E).

To store the scraper, proceed as follows:

1. Install the protection on beveled edge of scraper (E).
2. Install washers (C).
3. Install washers (B).
4. Install scraper (E) and eccentric (F).
5. Install screws (D).
6. Install nuts (A).



A—Nut
B—Washer
C—Washer
D—Screw

E—Scraper
F—Eccentric
H—Front Cover

r2c13ue,1731936463401 -19-21NOV24-1/1

CC576442 —UN—22MAY23

Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper

To adjust scraper proceed as follows:

1. Check if distance (D) on both end of scraper (B). If it is OK go to step 5, otherwise go to next step.
2. Loosen screws (C) on both side.
3. Move scraper bracket to obtain the same distance (D) on both scraper (B) end.
4. Tighten screws (C) on right hand side then on left hand side to following specification.

Specification

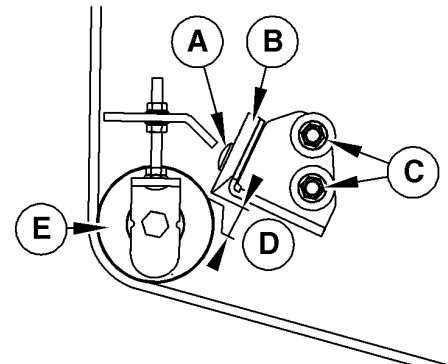
Lower Rear Gate Roll	
(No. 9) Scraper Bracket	
Screws—Torque.....	65 N·m (48 lb·ft)

5. Check if distance (D) is within specification, if necessary go to next step to adjust distance (D).

Specification

Lower Rear Gate Roll	
(No. 9) Scraper-to-Roll	
(No. 9)—Distance.....	2—3 mm (3/32—1/8 in)

6. Loosen screws (A).
7. Move scraper (B) to obtain the specified distance (D) between scraper (B) and roll (E).



CC329290

A—Screw
B—Scraper
C—Screw

D—Distance
E—Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 9)

8. Tighten screws (A) to the following specification.

Specification

Lower Rear Gate	
Roll (No. 9)	
Scraper-to-Bracket	
Screws—Torque.....	65 N·m (48 lb·ft)

NB02380,00004D9 -19-31AUG17-1/1

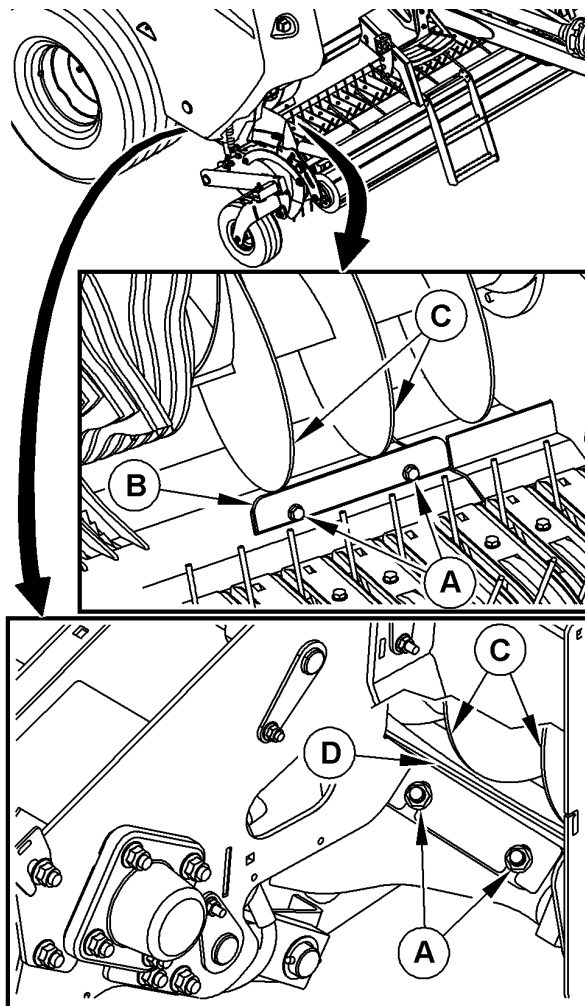
CC329290 —UN—05SEP17

Adjust Rotor Auger Scrapers

1. Fully raise the drop floor. See Unplug Pickup in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Loosen screws (A).
3. Position and maintain scrapers (B) and (D) as close as possible to rotor auger (C) without contact.
4. Rotate baler to check for no interference between rotor auger (C) and scrapers (B) and (D).
5. Tighten screws (A).
6. Repeat procedure on the other side.

A—Screw
B—Front Scraper of Rotor Auger

C—Rotor Auger
D—Rear Scraper of Rotor Auger



CC202090

CC202090 —UN—18APR13

ga87848,1682686214702 -19-31MAY23-1/1

Sharpen Net Binding Knife

CAUTION: Prevent personal injury by wearing gloves to handle knife.

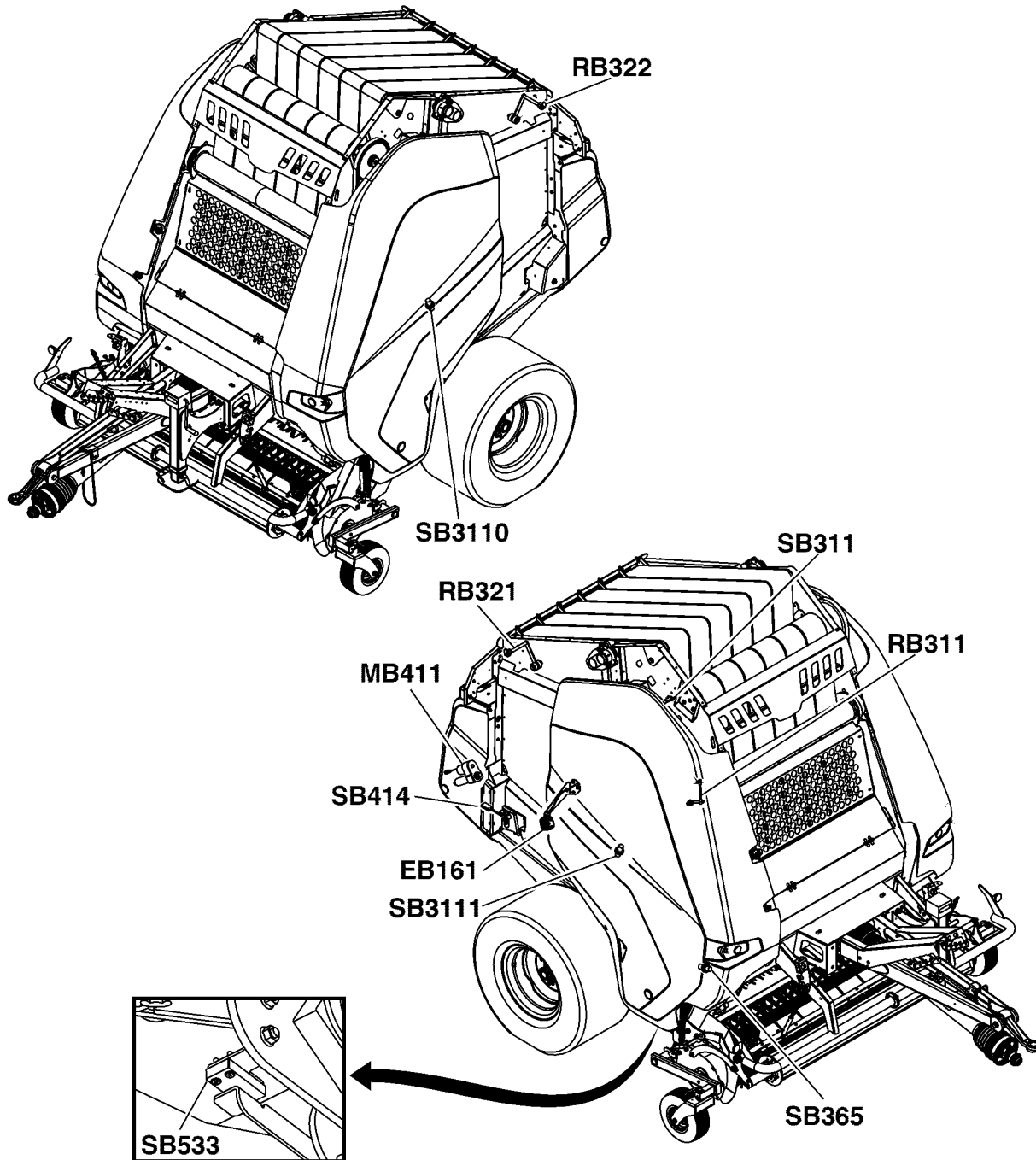
1. Remove any residue from beveled edge.
2. Clamp knife to a bench or table.
3. Draw-file the beveled edge maintaining a 25° angle.
4. Keep the sharpened edge straight, within 1 mm (0.04 in.).



E36336 —UN—18DEC91

ga87848,1680270381989 -19-31MAR23-1/1

Locate Machine Electrical Components



CC652848

CC652848 —UN—12FEB25

EB161—Rear Gate Camera
MB411—Net Actuator
RB311—Bale Diameter
Potentiometer
RB321—Left Bale Shape
Potentiometer

RB322—Right Bale Shape
Potentiometer
SB311—Bale Oversize Switch
SB3110—Left Gate Latch Sensor

SB3111—Right Gate Latch
Sensor
SB365—Baler Rotation Speed
Sensor
SB414—Net Cut Sensor

SB533—Drop Floor Sensor

r2c13ue,1731672756571 -19-12FEB25-1/1

Identify Sensor Detection Area

To ensure a proper detection of the target by the sensor, check that sensor detection area (C) is correctly oriented to the target. Sensor detection area (C) is located only on the same side as both spot facings (B).

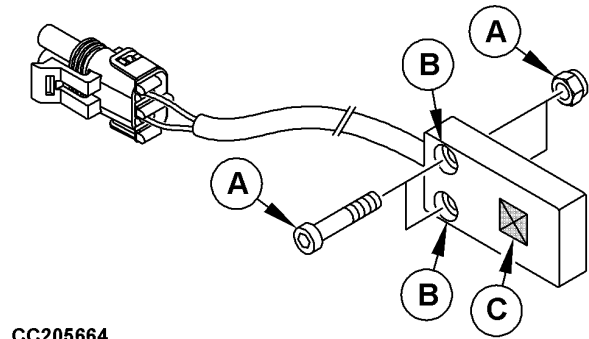
If sensor has been replaced or cap screws (A) have been removed, tighten cap screws (A) to specified torque:

Specification

Cap Screws—Torque..... 1.2—1.8 N·m
(0.9—1.3 lb.-ft.)

A—Cap Screw
B—Spot Facing

C—Sensor Detection Area



CC205664

CC205664 —UN—10OCT13

NB02380,0000417 -19-24MAY17-1/1

Adjust Drop Floor Sensor SB533

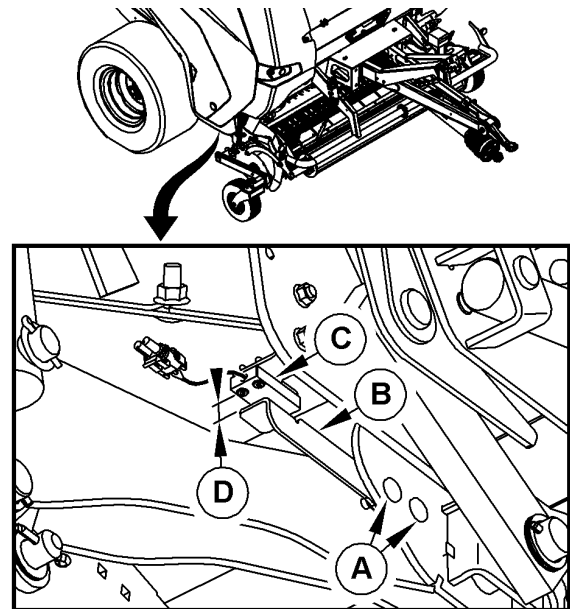
To adjust drop floor sensor (C), proceed as follows:

1. Fully raise drop floor.
2. Engage tractor park brake, place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
3. Check that sensor (C) is mounted properly. See [Identify Sensor Detection Area](#) in this section.
4. Loosen cap screws (A).
5. Position and maintain target (B) in order to obtain specified distance (D) between sensor (C) and target (B).

Specification

Sensor-to-Target—Distance..... 0.5—2 mm
(1/64—3/32 in)

6. Tighten cap screws (A).
7. Check sensor detection with monitor. See [Test Sensors and Switches](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC330695

A—Cap Screw
B—Target

C—Drop Floor Sensor
D—Distance

CC330695 —UN—22SEP17

TL81334,000069C -19-28MAY19-1/1

Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365

1. Rotate baler by hand so that gear (A) is in position shown. See Service Machine Safely in Safety section.
2. Loosen lock nuts (B) then slide sensor (C) until specified distance (D) is achieved.

Specification

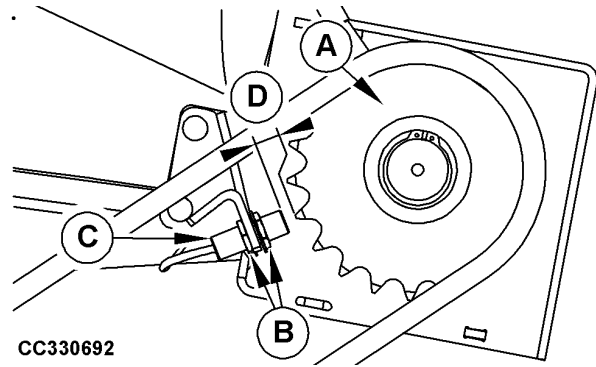
Sensor to
Gear—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—10/64 in)

3. Check that center line of sensor (C) is aligned with center line of gear (A).
4. Tighten lock nuts (B) to the following specification:

Specification

Lock Nuts—Torque.....23 N·m
(17 lb·ft)

5. Rotate baler several times to check that there is no interference between sensor (C) and gear (A).
6. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Gear
B—Lock Nut

C—Baler Rotation Speed Sensor
D—Distance

ga87848,1684839459837 -19-23MAY23-1/1

Adjust Gate Latch

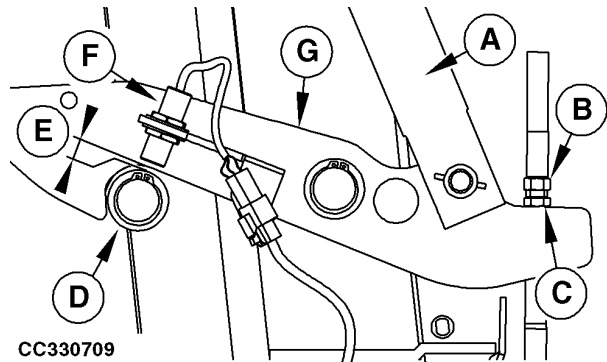
IMPORTANT: To avoid gate opening during baler operation, gate latch (G) must be correctly adjust.

1. Fully close gate. Gate hydraulic cylinders must be fully retracted.
2. If necessary, remove net roll and/or twine balls compartment to provide access.
3. Check that distance (E) is within specification. If necessary, proceed as follows.

Specification

Gate Latch-to-Gate Latch
Bushing—Distance.....1—2 mm
(3/64—5/64 in)

4. Loosen counter-nut (B).
5. Adjust nut (C) to obtain specified distance (E).
6. Tighten counter-nut (B).
7. Check that gate latch sensor is correctly adjusted. See Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in this section.



A—Gate Cylinder
B—Counter-Nut
C—Nut
D—Gate Latch Bushing

E—Distance
F—Sensor
G—Gate Latch

8. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.
9. If removed, reinstall net roll and/or twine balls compartment.

GA87848,00006E7 -19-28JUN18-1/1

Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311

1. Fully close gate. Gate hydraulic cylinders must be fully retracted.
2. If necessary, remove net roll and/or twine balls compartment to provide access.
3. Check that gate is correctly latched. If necessary, adjust gate latch. See Identify Sensor Detection Area in this section.
4. Loosen lock nuts (A) then slide sensor (D) until specified distance (F) is achieved.

Specification

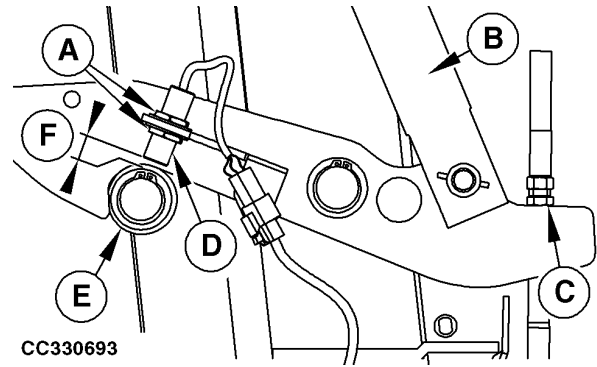
Sensor-to-Bushing—Distance..... 1—2 mm
(3/64—5/64 in)

5. Check that center line of sensor (D) is aligned with bushing (E).
6. Tighten lock nuts (A) to the following specification:

Specification

Lock Nuts—Torque..... 23 N·m
(17 lb·ft)

7. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.



A—Lock Nut
B—Gate Cylinder
C—Adjust Screw

D—Sensor
E—Gate Latch Bushing
F—Distance

8. Check sensors detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.
9. If removed, reinstall net roll and/or twine balls compartment.

ga87848,1683287204613 -19-05MAY23-1/1

Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414

1. Remove net binding cover to provide access.
2. Loosen nuts (B) then slide sensor (C) to specified distance (A).

Specification

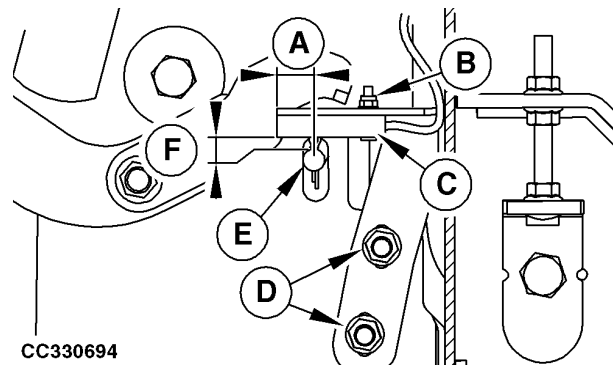
Sensor to Net Binding Rod—Distance..... 15—19 mm
(19/32—3/4 in)

3. Tighten nuts (B).
4. Loosen nuts (D) then slide sensor (C) to specified distance (F).

Specification

Sensor to Net Binding Rod—Distance..... 0.5—2 mm
(1/64—3/32 in)

5. Tighten nuts (D).
6. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Distance
B—Nut
C—Net Cut Sensor

D—Nut
E—Net Binding Rod
F—Distance

7. Install net binding cover.

TL81334,0000698 -19-28MAY19-1/1

Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB343

1. Loosen lock nuts (A).
2. Slide sensor (B) until specified distance (C) is achieved.

Specification

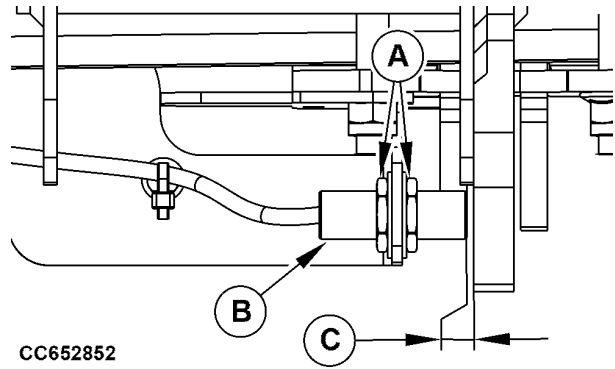
Sensor to
Target—Distance.....1.5—3.5 mm
(1/16—1/8 in)

3. Tighten lock nuts (A) to the following specification:

Specification

Lock Nuts—Torque.....23 N·m
(17 lb·ft)

4. Check sensor detection with monitor. See [Test Sensors and Switches](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC652852

A—Lock Nut
B—Bale Discharging Ramp
Sensor

C—Distance

CC652852 —UN—20NOV24

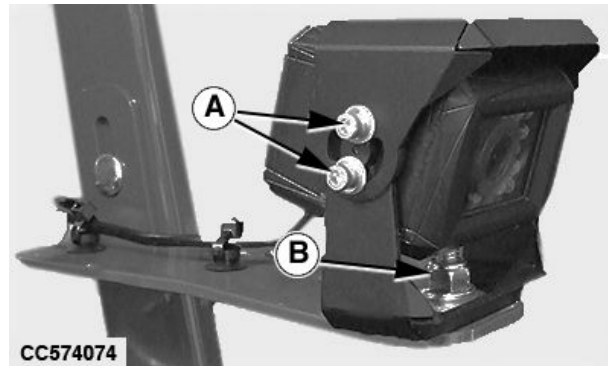
r2c13ue,1732005368129 -19-19NOV24-1/1

Adjust Orientation of Camera EB161

1. Loosen screws (B) and (A) on both sides.
2. Adjust the orientation of the camera.
3. Tighten screws (B) and (A) on both sides.

A—Screw

B—Screw



CC574074

CC574074 —UN—19APR23

ga87848,1682080626799 -19-21APR23-1/1

Check Net Binding Device

The following procedure should be carried out when net cut or net binding problems occur during field operation.

The check procedure includes different tests to carry out:

- Test 1 - Check knife and counterknife position
- Test 2 - Check free motion of swinging bar
- Test 3 - Check net feed roll pressure

- Test 4 - Check No. 9 roll position
- Test 5 - Check drive belt tension
- Test 6 - Check net feed roll brake
- Test 7 - Check lower net guide position

NOTE: When all test results are OK, the net binding device is optimized for good field operation.

NB02380,00004F2 -19-04OCT17-1/1

Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1)

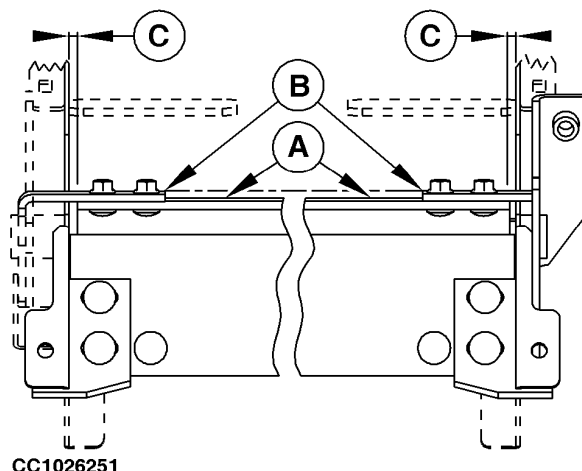
CAUTION: Prevent personal injury by wearing gloves when working on knife and counterknife.

NOTE: The counterknife position (in relation to the knife) must be checked if serious net cut problems occur during field operation.

1. Keep the net actuator retracted.
2. Check that the two counterknife supports (B) are aligned.
3. Center counterknife (A) between lateral supports to obtain specified distance (C) on both sides.

Specification

Counterknife-to-Lateral
Support—Distance.....3—7 mm
(0.12—0.28 in)



A—Counterknife
B—Counterknife support

C—Distance

CC1026251—UN—27OCT04

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1728041678854 -19-04OCT24-1/3

4. Check that counterknife (A) is against net knife (D) all across its width.

IMPORTANT: Contact should occur on the medium area of the sharp side of the knife as shown.

The gap (E) in not touching area should not exceed the following specifications:

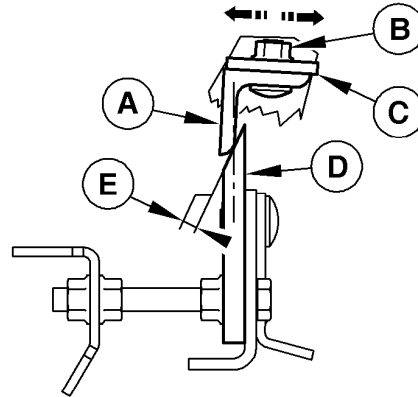
Specification

Counterknife to
Knife—Gap.....0.5 mm maximum
(0.02 in maximum)

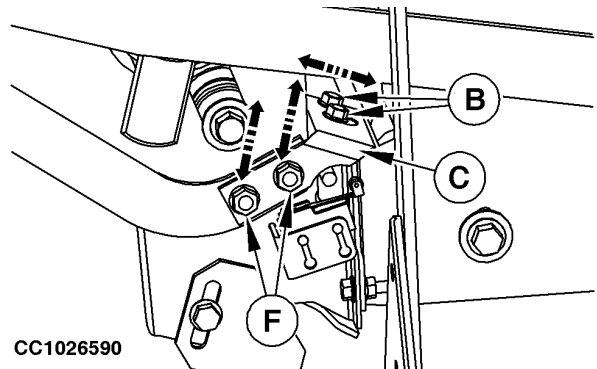
If necessary, adjust the gap (E) as follows:

- Loosen nuts (B) and (F).
- Move counterknife (A) and counterknife support (C) to obtain specified gap (E).
- Tighten nuts (B) and (F).

A—Counterknife
B—Nuts
C—Counterknife Support
D—Knife
E—Gap
F—Nuts



CC1026591



CC1026590

r2c13ue,1728041678854 -19-04OCT24-2/3

CC1026591 —UN—27OCT04

CC1026590 —UN—27OCT04

5. If counterknife (A) is not fully in contact all across the knife (B) width, complete the adjustment of gap (E) as follows:

- Loosen lock nut (C).
- Tighten nut (D) to bend the knife (B) to obtain the specified gap (E).

Specification

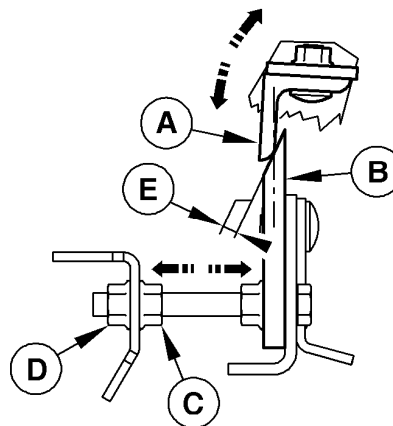
Counterknife to
Knife—Gap.....0.5 mm maximum
(0.02 in maximum)

- Tighten lock nut (C) after adjustment.

6. Extend and retract net actuator. Check gap (E) and repeat the procedure if necessary.

Proceed to test 2.

A—Counterknife
B—Knife
C—Lock Nut
D—Nut
E—Gap

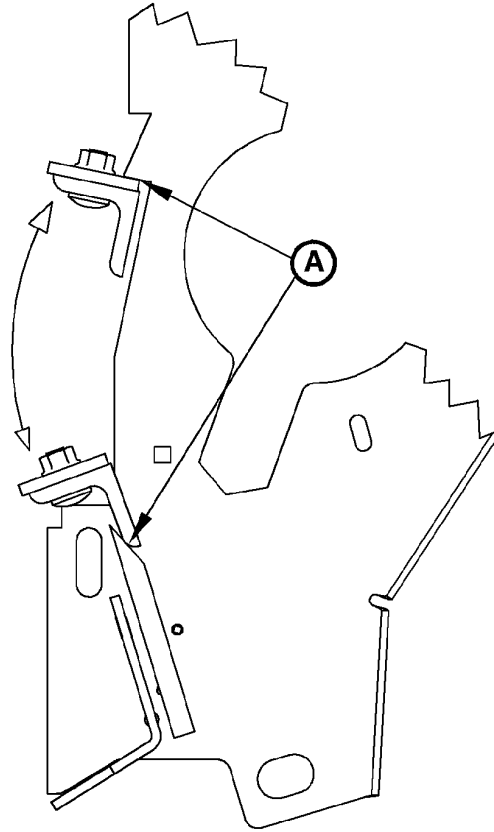


CC1026592

r2c13ue,1728041678854 -19-04OCT24-3/3

CC1026592 —UN—27OCT04

Check Free Motion of Swinging Bar (Test 2)



CC1019126

CC1019126 —UN—09FEB01

A—Stops

IMPORTANT: Prior to carry out this test, make sure that test 1 results are “OK”. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this Section.

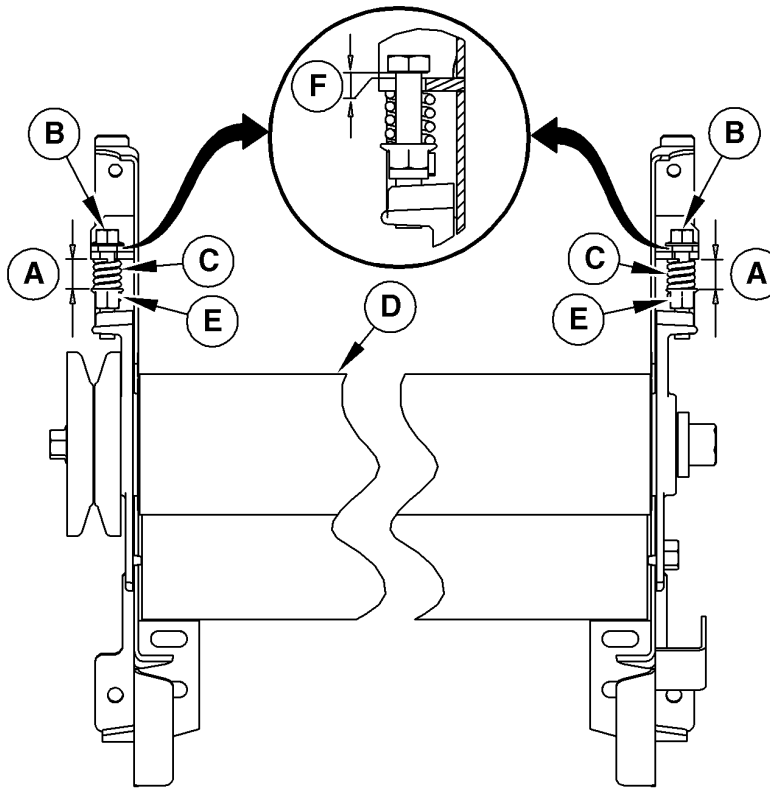
Proceed as follows:

With actuator decoupled, check that swinging bar motions are free without contact with lateral supports between its two stops (A).

Proceed to test 3

NB02380.00004F3 -19-20SEP17-1/1

Check Net Feed Roll Pressure (Test 3)



CC329305

CC329305 —UN—23OCT17

A—Length
B—Screw
C—Spring

D—Rubber roll
E—Spring Adjusting Nut

F—Distance

IMPORTANT: Prior to carrying out this test, make sure that test 1 and 2 are OK. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

Proceed as follows:

1. Release net feed roll brake, see Load Net Roll in Preparing the Baler section.
2. Adjust distance (F) to specification by loosening or tightening screw (B).

Specification

Screw-to-Angle—Distance..... 2 mm
(0.08 in)

3. Adjust net feed roll pressure by loosening or tightening spring adjusting nuts (E) until length (A) of springs (C) is within specification.

Specification

Spring—Length.....20—21 mm
(0.79—0.83 in)

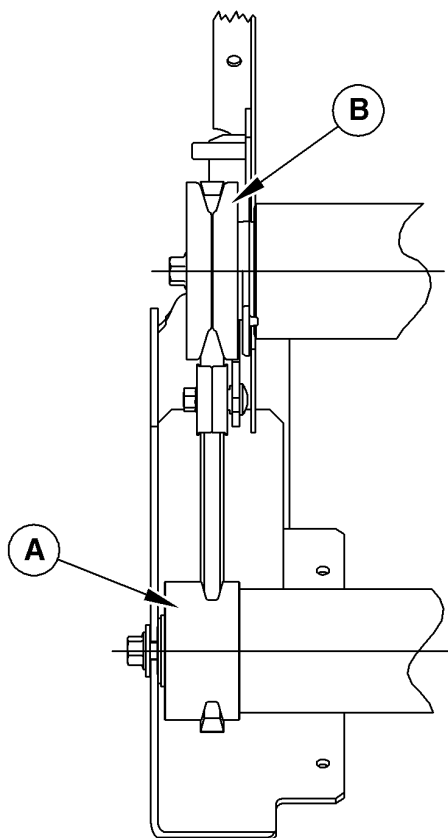
IMPORTANT: Make sure that rubber roll and plated roll rotate freely by hand in both directions.

4. Remove any foreign material or net from between the feed rolls.

Proceed to test 4.

r2c13ue,1728041562754 -19-04OCT24-1/1

Check No. 9 Roll Position (Test 4)



CC333381

A—Roll No. 9

B—Rubber Roll Pulley

IMPORTANT: Prior to carrying out this test, make sure that test 1 to 3 are OK. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

IMPORTANT: Check the position of roll No. 9 (A) after each drive belt replacement.

Proceed as follows:

Check that axial clearance of roll No. 9 (A) is between 0.5 to 1.5 mm (0.02 to 0.06 in) and that rubber roll (B) and No. 9 roll pulleys are aligned within $\pm 5\text{mm}$ (± 0.2 in).

Add or remove washers on each sides of roll No. 9 (A) as necessary.

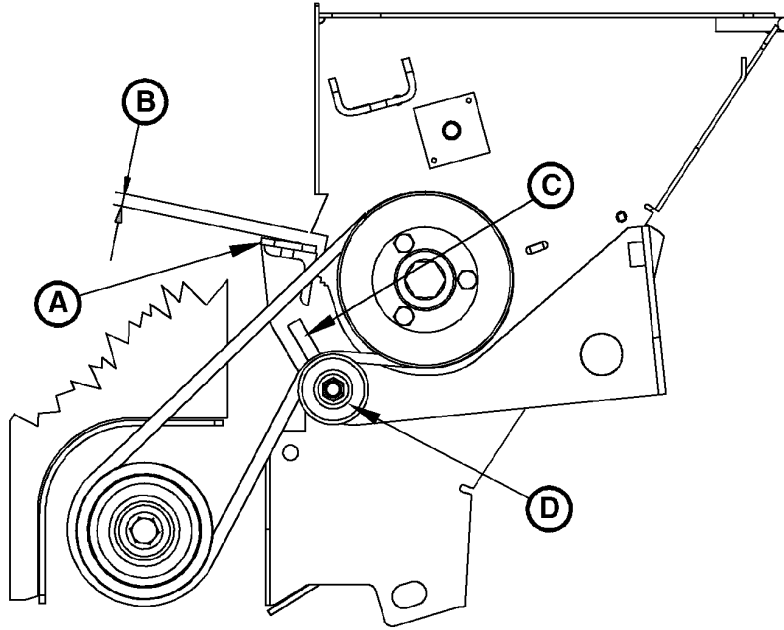
Reinstall net feed roll drive belt. See Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt in this section.

Proceed to test 5.

r2c13ue,1728041517778 -19-14OCT24-1/1

CC333381 —JUN—28SEP17

Check Drive Belt Tension (Test 5)



CC1019129

CC1019129 —UN—09FEB01

A—Counterknife Support

B—Distance
C—Oblong Hole

D—Idler Pulley

IMPORTANT: Prior to carry out this test, make sure that test 1 to 4 results are “OK”. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

IMPORTANT: After each drive belt replacement, it is essential to check that the new belt has a length which allows a good net binding drive timing.

Proceed as follows:

1. Fully extend actuator.
2. Adjust idler pulley (D) in the oblong hole (C) so that distance (B) between counterknife support (A) and the cut in side wall is to 10 mm (0.39 in).

3. Run the belt drive for 15 seconds at full speed.
4. Fully extend and retract actuator several times.
5. Completely extend actuator.
6. Readjust distance (B) between 2—5 mm (0.08—0.2 in).

IMPORTANT: With actuator in extended position, operator should not be able to turn the net feed rolls.

Proceed to test 6.

r2c13ue,1728030871585 -19-04OCT24-1/1

Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)

IMPORTANT: Prior to this test, make sure that tests 1 to 5 results are "OK". Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

IMPORTANT: The net feed roll brake adjustment must be performed when the net rolls up around the rubber roll and/or the galvanized roll.

Proceed as follows:

1. Fully retract net actuator.
2. Adjust band stop (A):
 - a. Loosen screws (B).

NOTE: At least one hole must be tangent to brake band (D) when brake is engaged.

- b. Align edges of holes (C) with the brake band (D).
 - c. Tighten screws (B).
3. Check that distance (E) is within specification:

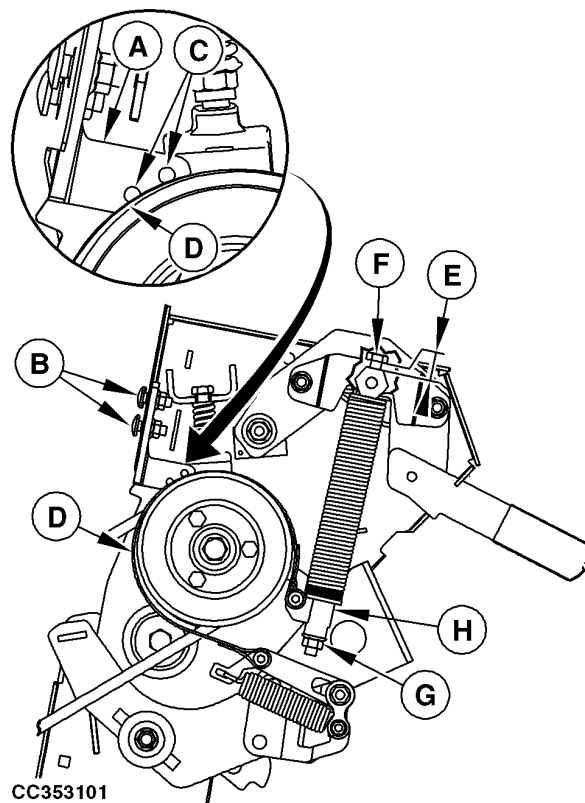
Specification

Screw-to-
Bracket—Distance.....3—5 mm
(0.12—0.2 in)

If necessary, adjust timing screw (F):

IMPORTANT: Do not adjust timing screw (F) before loosening nut (G), or damage to the brake can result.

- a. Loosen nut (G) while holding the tension tube (H).
- b. Turn timing screw (F) until distance (E) is within specification.
- c. Tighten nut (G) while holding the tension tube (H).



A—Band Stop
B—Screw
C—Hole
D—Band

E—Distance
F—Timing Screw
G—Nut
H—Tension Tube

4. Turn the pulley clockwise using a wrench. The head of timing screw (F) must not be in contact with the head of the tension tube (H).

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1728030754117 -19-04OCT24-1/2

CC353101—UN—17MAY18

5. Check that net binding material is feeding properly.

- When the brake timing is correct, the net material (A) is snug against the steel roll as shown in Photo 1
- If the brake timing is too late, a loop of net can develop above the counterknife (B). The material can get pinched between the front sheet and the rubber roll and cause feeding issues as shown in Photo 2. Adjust the timing bolt to specification, go to step 2.
- If the brake timing is too soon, net snap back can occur and can result in feeding issues as shown in Photo 3. Adjust the timing bolt to specification, go to step 2.

A—Net Binding Material

B—Counterknife

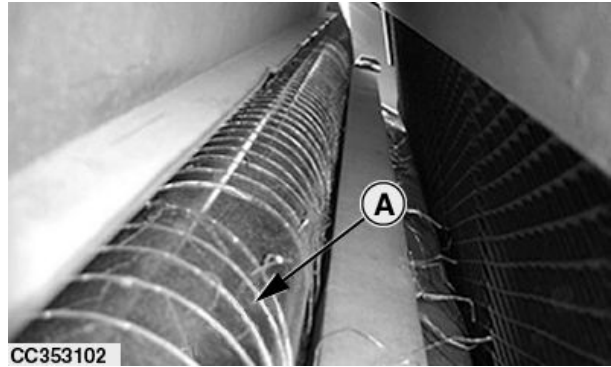


Photo 1: Timing is Correct

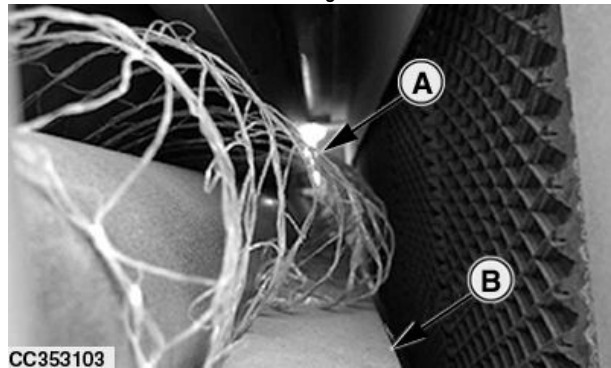


Photo 2: Timing is Late

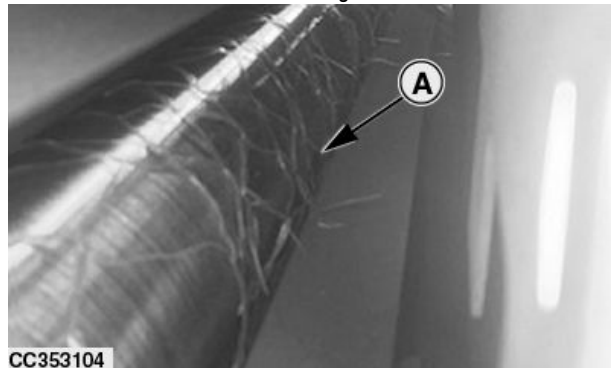


Photo 3: Timing is Early

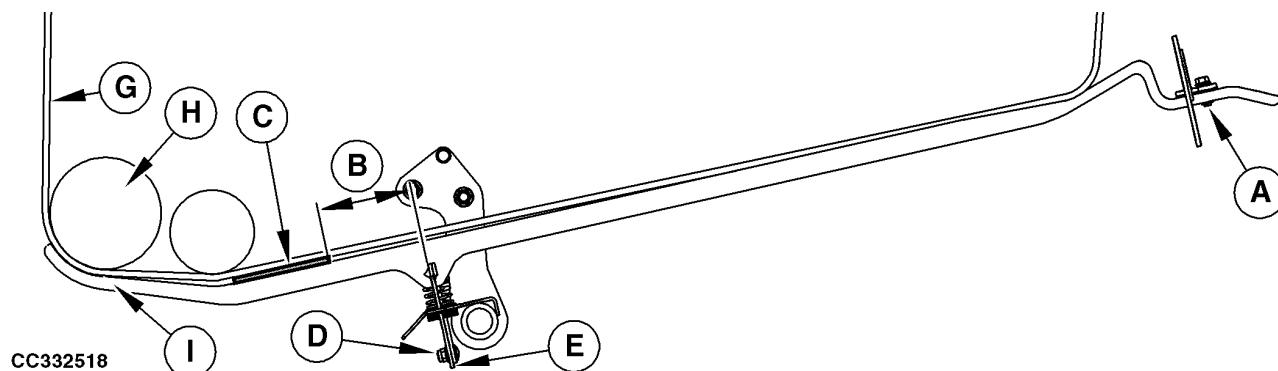
r2c13ue,1728030754117 -19-04OCT24-2/2

CC353102 —UN—15MAY18

CC353103 —UN—15MAY18

CC353104 —UN—15MAY18

Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 7)



To adjust net guides position proceed as follows:

IMPORTANT: Make sure that net guides are set in normal field condition position. See Set Net Guide Based on Field Condition in Operating the Baler-General Purpose section.

1. Loosen nuts (A) and (D) on all guides.
2. Place metal sheet (C) to the specified distance (B) between runners (I) and belts (G) over the entire width of the baler.

Specification

Metal Sheet
Position—Distance..... 83 mm
(3.26 in)

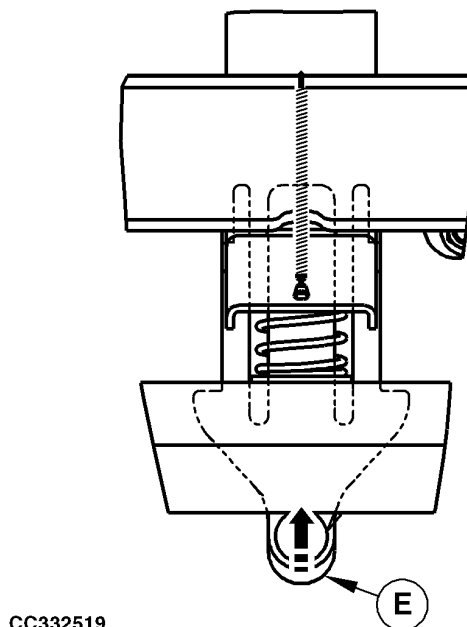
3. Push up runner front fixing lock (E) so that it is in contact with the support.
4. Tighten screw (E).
5. Repeat step 3 and 4 on all other guides.
6. Remove metal sheet (C).
7. Adjust position of runner (I) to obtain the specified distance (F) between runner and belt.

Specification

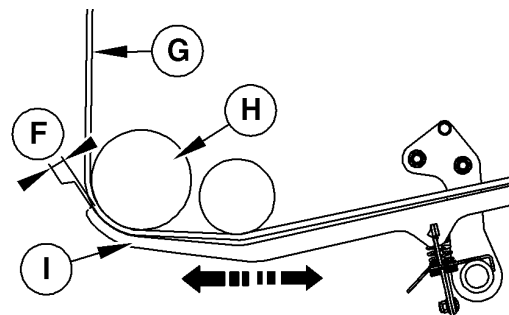
Front Runner
End-to-Belt—Distance..... 2 mm
(0.08 in)

8. Tighten screw (A).
9. Repeat step 7 and 8 on all other guides.
10. Check if the all rear ends of runners can move up and down freely.

A—Nut
B—Distance
C—Metal Sheet 1200 X 150 X
1.5 mm (47.25 in X 5.9 in X
0.059 in)
D—Nut
E—Runner Front Fixing Lock
F—Distance
G—Belt
H—Roll No. 10
I— Runner



CC332519

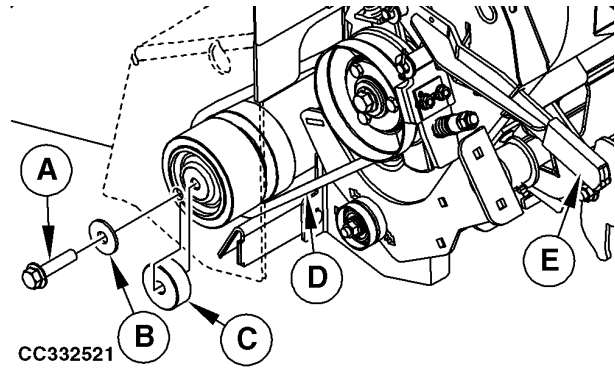


CC332520

Remove and Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt

Remove net feed roll drive belt as follows:

1. Fully retract net actuator with monitor.
2. Open net system cover.
3. Slightly open gate to release pressure on baler belts.
4. Remove gate roll No. 9 fixing screw (A) and washer (B).
5. Remove spacer ring (C).
6. Release brake lever (E).
7. Remove drive belt (D).
8. Reverse removal procedure to install drive belt back in place.
9. Close the gate and check belt tracking. See [Adjust Tracking of Belts](#) in this section.



A—Screw
B—Washer
C—Spacer Ring

D—Belt
E—Brake Lever

GA87848,0000C59 -19-05JUN19-1/1

CC332521 —UN—25SEP17

Remove and Install Net Knife

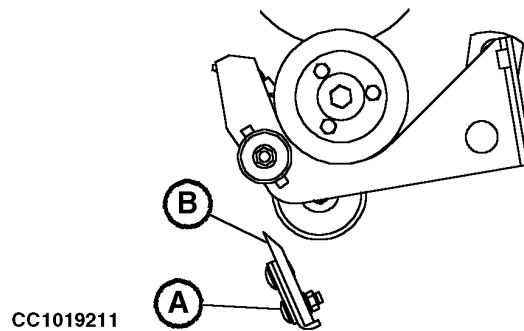
CAUTION: Prevent personal injury by wearing gloves to handle net knife.

1. Note position of knife cutting edge for reinstallation.
2. Open net binding cover.
3. Fully extend net actuator and disconnect actuator plug.
4. Remove fixing screws (A) of knife (B), then remove knife (B) from its brackets.
5. Install knife (B) on its brackets in the same position as before removal.
6. Install and tighten screws to specified torque.

Specification

Net Knife Fixing	
Screw—Torque.....	55 N·m (40 lb·ft)

7. Reconnect actuator plug and retract actuator. Close net binding cover.



A—Fixing screw

B—Knife

IMPORTANT: Always carry out “Test 1” of net binding device check procedure after having installed net knife, see [Check Knife and Counterknife Position \(Test 1\)](#) in this section.

NB02380,00004FC -19-09OCT17-1/1

CC1019211 —UN—13FEB01

Remove Binding Materials Wrapped Around Feed Rolls

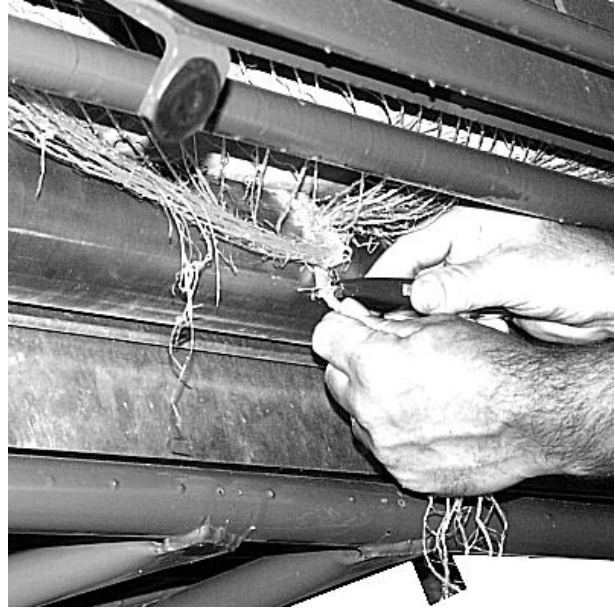
CAUTION: Avoid injury from entanglement in moving rolls. Disengage PTO and shut off tractor before servicing.

If net wraps around the rubber roll:

1. Open net binding cover.
2. Release feed roll brake.

IMPORTANT: Do not cut net material from rubber roll. Any knife cuts in the rubber roll covering may result in more frequent wrapping around the rolls and may require roll replacement. Pull net material away from the supply roll. Cut net material.

3. Remove and discard all of the wrapped material, including all strings, staples, etc.
4. Wipe off feed rolls and check for any sticky material. If necessary, roll may be washed with soap and water. NEVER use solvents to clean rubber feed roll. Allow roll to dry before threading or wrappage may occur again.



E83035—UN—12MAY17

r2c13ue,1733392004473 -19-17FEB25-1/1

Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp

1. Park baler on level ground.
2. Check if distance (E) is within specification. If necessary, proceed as follow.

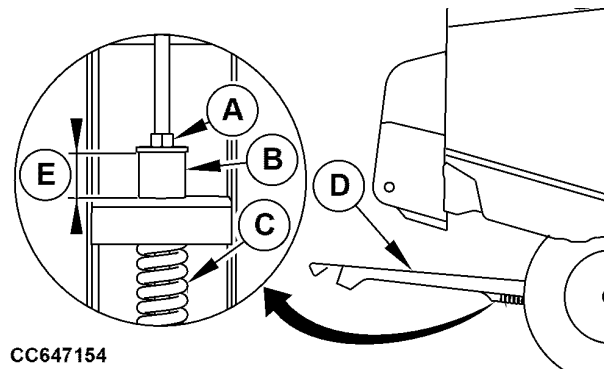
Specification

Bale Discharging
 Bushing—Distance.....48.5—51.5 mm
 (1.9—2 in)

3. Adjust lock nut (A) to obtain specified distance (E).

A—Lock Nut
 B—Bushing
 C—Spring

D—Bale Discharging Ramp
 E—Distance



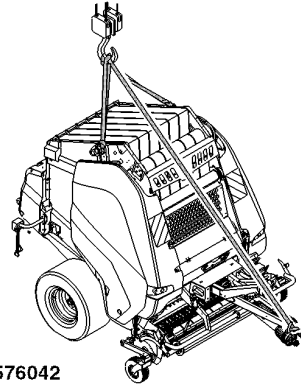
CC647154

CC647154—UN—21OCT24

r2c13ue,1731917688154 -19-18NOV24-1/1

Round Baler Hanging Points

If you need to lift the machine, use the hanging points shown.



CC576042



CC576042 —UN—26JUN23

†181334,1687773239605 -19-26JUN23-1/1

Remove and Install Wheel

1. Engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Slightly loosen wheel nuts.
3. Position jack (A) close the decal (B) under axle as shown.
4. Raise wheel off ground with jack (A).
5. Install stand to secure baler.
6. Remove wheel nuts and wheel.
7. Install the new wheel and nuts . Slightly tighten nuts by hand.
8. Remove stand, lower the baler and remove jack (A).
9. Tighten wheel nuts diagonally to the following specification:

Specification

Wheel Nut—Torque.....270 N·m
(200 lb.-ft.)

10. Check tire inflation. See [Tire Inflation](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

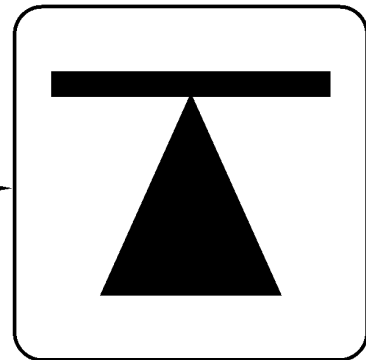
IMPORTANT: Whenever a wheel has been removed and installed, check wheel nut torque at specified intervals in Break-In Period section.



CC1035369

CC1035369 —UN—11OCT11

B



CC576043

CC576043 —UN—26JUN23

A—Jack

B—Jack Point Decal

†181334,1687778226671 -19-26JUN23-1/1

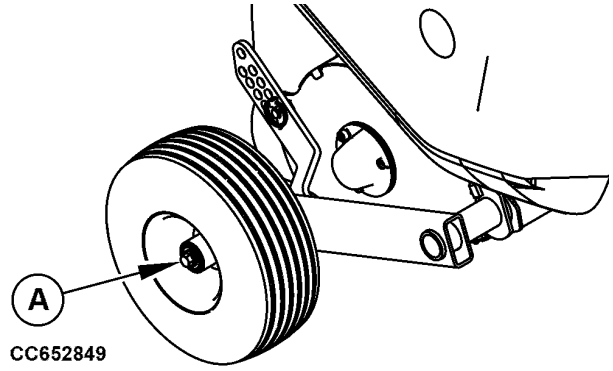
Repair Gauge Wheel

If gauge wheel fixing screw (A) is loosened for standard gauge wheel repair, replace fixing screw (A). See your John Deere dealer to obtain appropriate screw (A).

Tighten gauge wheel fixing screw to the following specification:

Specification	
Gauge Wheel Fixing	
Screw—Torque.....	110 N·m (81 lb.-ft.)

A—Gauge Wheel Fixing Screw



r2c13ue,1731919674952 -19-21NOV24-1/1

Baler Application Service

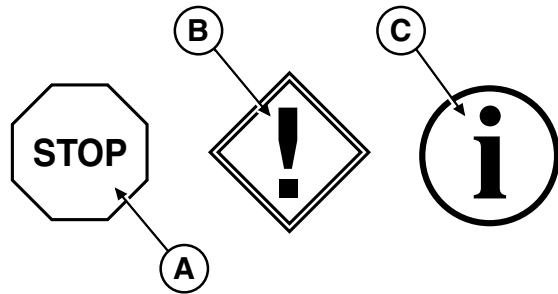
Warning Screens

The monitor supports caution and warning messages to inform about certain behaviors or error conditions in the system. Warning screens allow monitoring of the system operational problems.

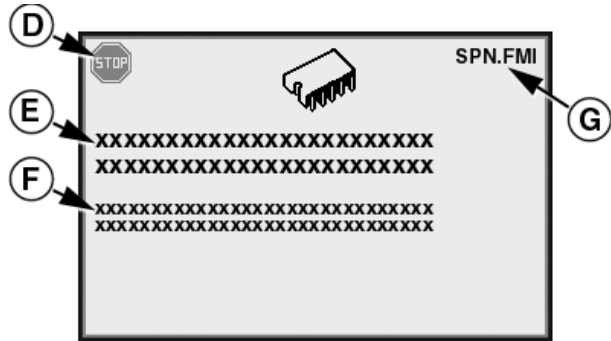
WARNING:

A WARNING covers the full screen and is used to inform about critical malfunctions in the system which requires the full attention of the operator. The screen is designed as follows:

1. Symbol (D) and the associated tone define the importance of the warning:
 - Symbol (A) indicates that the machine has detected a serious malfunction which requires immediate action or damage to the machine may occur. Stop engine or system immediately.
 - Symbol (B) indicates that the machine has detected a problem which requires action. The machine may be damaged or have significant performance reduction if it is not serviced or repaired.
 - Symbol (C) indicates that the machine has detected a fault in a system or component. The machine can continue to operate without damage, however there may be degraded performance of certain functions.
2. Keyword strings (E) help to determine the importance and the cause of the warning and briefly define the area of malfunction.



ZX026095



CC1031855

A—Stop Engine/System Symbol
B—Service Alert Symbol
C—Information Symbol
D—Warning Symbol

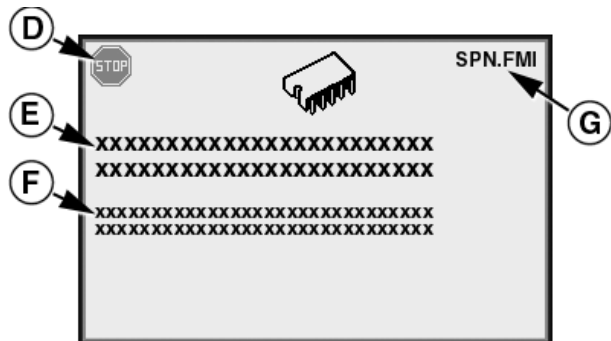
E—Keyword Strings
F—Text Strings
G—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

1181334,1680078470501 -19-06APR23-1/2

ZX026095 —UN—19JUN01

CC1031855 —UN—02OCT09

3. The Diagnostic Trouble Code (G) in the upper right corner is made of SPN.FMI (Suspect Parameter Number.Failure Mode Identifier). This code is a language independent code which helps to identify more details for the active warning. Refer to the Diagnostic Trouble Code List to get specific operational problem and recommended corrective action. See [Diagnostic Trouble Code List](#) in this section. Text strings (F) provide more details about the cause of the warning and possible corrective action.
4. The warning screen will disappear automatically when the machine detects the correction of the malfunction.



CC1031855

D—Warning Symbol
E—Keyword Strings

F—Text Strings
G—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

1181334,1680078470501 -19-06APR23-2/2

CC1031855 —UN—02OCT09

Recent Problems

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

†81334,1680078487545 -19-06APR23-1/5

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

†81334,1680078487545 -19-06APR23-2/5

3. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to access alternative pages (2/X, 3/X, etc.).

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

†81334,1680078487545 -19-06APR23-3/5

4. In the recent problem page, the history of the DTCs is updated each time a new DTC is generated. Recent problem text (B) gives a brief description of the problem.

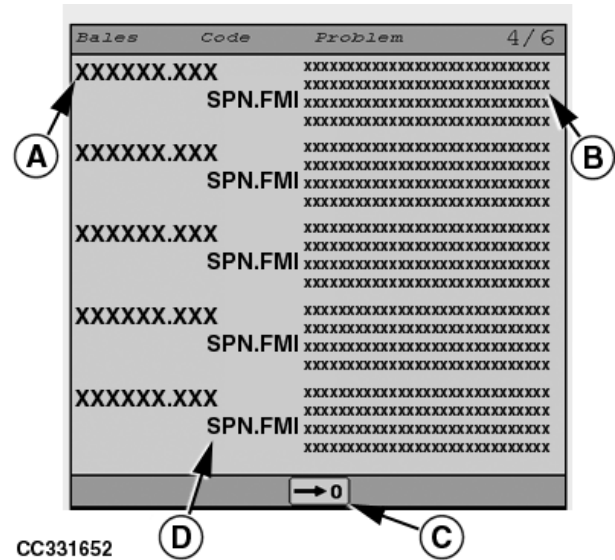
Up to 15 DTCs can be stored and are displayed in historical order. If a 16th DTC needs to be stored, the oldest DTC is deleted.

The number of bale (A) is the timestamp of when the DTC appears (number before dot) and the order of the DTC for this bale (number after dot).

NOTE: For example: If the number of bale (A) field is 3520.002 for a DTC, the given DTC appears at the 3520th bale and it is the second DTC for this bale.

The DTC (D) defines the issue. It is made of SPN.FMI (D) (Suspect Parameter Number.Failure Mode Indicator). See [Diagnostic Trouble Code List](#) in this section.

5. On last DTC page, select "Clear recent Problem List" button (C) to clear the recent problem list.



CC331652

CC331652 —19—12OCT17

A—Bale Number
B—Recent Problem Text

C—Clear Recent Problem List
D—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

Continued on next page

†81334,1680078487545 -19-06APR23-4/5

6. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1680078487545 -19-06APR23-5/5

Test Tractor Battery Voltage

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

TL81334,000064C -19-23MAY19-1/5

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

TL81334,000064C -19-23MAY19-2/5

3. Select "Next Page", or "Previous Page" softkey to access page 5/6.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



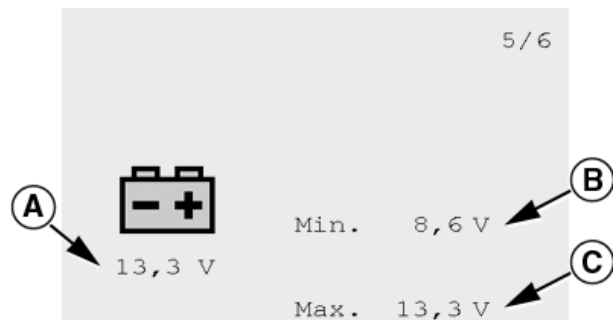
CC277967

TL81334,000064C -19-23MAY19-3/5

4. On page 5/6, values (A), (B), and (C) indicate the tractor battery voltage. The minimum (B), and maximum (C) battery voltage values are re-initialized each time the monitor is switched off.

A—Current Battery Voltage
B—Minimum Battery Voltage

C—Maximum Battery Voltage



CC321721

CC321721 —19—30JUN17

TL81334,000064C -19-23MAY19-4/5

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

TL81334,000064C -19-23MAY19-5/5

Diagnostic Trouble Code List

Suspect parameter numbers and failure mode indicators (SPN.FMI) are given in the following table:

Each time a diagnostic trouble code about a solenoid valve is displayed, the component is deactivated until next power cycle.

NOTE: If a diagnostic trouble code displayed is not listed below, see your John Deere dealer.

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 000168.16	Battery voltage too high (above 15.8 volts).	Check tractor battery and alternator. See Test Tractor Battery Voltage in this section.
RBC 000168.18	Battery voltage too low (below 11.2 volts).	Check wires and connectors. Check tractor battery and alternator. See Test Tractor Battery Voltage in this section.
RBC 000186.15	PTO is not disengaged in time.	PTO is not disengaged by the operator when the monitor request it. Disengage PTO within 10 beep sequence of the monitor at end of binding cycle.
RBC 001563.12	Control unit ID error.	This control unit cannot be installed on this machine. Check if proper control unit is installed. Check proper harness connection to control unit. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003509.03	Sensor supply voltage too high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 003509.04	Sensor supply voltage too low.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 003755.16	Baler drive roll speed above proper operation.	Binding process stopped due to high drive roll speed. Ensure that baler is operated at appropriate PTO speed.
RBC 003755.18	Baler drive roll speed below proper operation.	Binding process stopped due to low drive roll speed. Ensure that baler is operated at appropriate PTO speed. Check sensor adjustment. See Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365 in Service section. If baler rotation speed sensor is faulty, see Enable or Disable Baler Rotation Speed Sensor (If Equipped) in this section to disable the sensor.
RBC 003761.03	Drop floor solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check drop floor solenoid valve.
RBC 003761.04	Drop floor solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check drop floor solenoid valve.
RBC 003762.03	Solenoid valve for precutter knives set 1 open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check solenoid valve for precutter knives set 1.
RBC 003762.04	Solenoid valve for precutter knives set 1 short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check solenoid valve for precutter knives set 1.
RBC 003763.03	Pickup lift solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check pickup lift solenoid valve.
RBC 003763.04	Pickup lift solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check pickup lift solenoid valve.
RBC 003764.07	No movement of the net actuator. Net actuator faulty or jammed.	Check net actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003764.11	Net actuator broken.	Check net actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003764.14	Net actuator stalled.	Check net binding device. Check net actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003766.07	No movement of the twine actuator. Twine actuator faulty or jammed.	Check twine actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003766.12	Twine actuator broken.	Check twine actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003766.14	Twine actuator stalled.	Check twine binding device. Check twine actuator. See your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739350064157 -19-12FEB25-1/4

Baler Application Service

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 003774.11	Gate ajar. The gate is in an unknown position.	Check the gate status. Check gate Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB3310 and SB3311 in Service section. Check wires and connectors.
RBC 003776.07	Bale stuck in the chamber.	Check that the bale is not in the chamber. Check the ramp sensor SB343. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003776.14	Bale stuck on ramp.	Check that the bale is not in the chamber. Check the ramp sensor SB343. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 003778.14	Unexpected movement of the precutter knives set 1 from the previous state.	Check that precutter knives are in the desired position. Check sensor for precutter knives set 1.
RBC 003779.05	Unexpected oversize alarm.	Bind and eject current bale as soon as possible. Check bale oversize switch. See Test Sensors and Switches in this section. Check bale diameter potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section.
RBC 003779.14	Oversize bale.	Bind and eject current bale as soon as possible. Check bale diameter potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section.
RBC 003781.07	No net feeding.	Replace net roll. Check net routing. See Load Net Roll in Preparing the Baler section. Check wires and connectors. Check net feeding sensor adjustment. See Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414 in Service section.
RBC 003781.14	Net not cut.	Extend and then retract actuator to manually cut net. Check net binding counterknife position. See Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1) in Service section.
RBC 003782.07	One or both twine not feeding. One or both twine balls are empty. Twine missing around the bale.	Replace twine balls. Check twine routing. See Load Twine Boxes , and Route Twine from Twine Box to Twine Arms (Tube Arms) or Route Twine from Twine Box to Twine Arms (Adjustable Arms) in Preparing the Baler section. Calibrate twine actuator. See Calibrate Twine Binding Actuator MB421 in Baler Application Service section. Check twine pulley sensor adjustment. See Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421 and SB422 in Service section. If one or both twine pulley sensors are faulty, see Adjust Twine Binding in Operating Baler Application section to disable these sensors.
RBC 003782.11	Twine feeding unexpectedly.	Check that twine actuator is fully retracted.
RBC 003782.14	Twine not cut.	If twine is really not cut, extend and then retract twine actuator to manually cut twine. Adjust or replace twine knife. See Adjust Twine Cut Length and Replace Twine Binding Knife in Service section. If twine is correctly cut, adjust twine pulley. See Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421 and SB422 in Service section.
RBC 517433.05	Side door lights relay open load.	Check wires and connectors. Check side door lights relay.
RBC 517434.04	Side door lights relay short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check side door lights relay.
RBC 517597.03	Open gate solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check open gate solenoid valve.
RBC 517597.04	Open gate solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check open gate solenoid valve.
RBC 517598.03	Close gate solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check open gate solenoid valve.
RBC 517598.04	Close gate solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check open gate solenoid valve.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue, 1739350064157 -19-12FEB25-2/4

Baler Application Service

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 517599.01	Hydraulic flow badly adjusted.	Check the hydraulic hose connection. Check the hydraulic flow. See Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow in Preparing the Tractor section. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 517599.02	Hydraulic flow stopped in Automatic mode.	Check the hydraulic hose connection. Check the hydraulic flow. See Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow in Preparing the Tractor section. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 517600.01	Binding Successful Time-out.	Check the bale is correctly bound. Check the bale is unloaded. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 517601.01	Automatic to Stop mode transition.	Check baler rotation speed sensor adjustment. See Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365 in Service section. Check the binding system. Check the gate. Check the gate latches. Check the ramp sensor SB343. Check the hydraulic hose connection. Check the hydraulic flow. See Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow in Preparing the Tractor section. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 517602.01	Automatic to Manual mode transition.	Engage the PTO and go in Automatic mode. Check the hydraulic hose connection. Check the hydraulic flow. See Adjust the Tractor SCV Flow in Preparing the Tractor section. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 521075.03	Solenoid valve for precutter knives set 2 open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check solenoid valve for precutter knives set 2.
RBC 521075.04	Solenoid valve for precutter knives set 2 short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check solenoid valve for precutter knives set 2.
RBC 521075.14	Unexpected movement of the precutter knives set 2 from the previous state.	Check that precutter knives are in the desired position. Check sensor for precutter knives set 2.
RBC 521078.11	Drop floor down.	Check drop floor position. Check the Drop Floor Sensor SB533.
RBC 521078.14	Unexpected movement of the drop floor from the previous state.	Check that drop floor is in desired position. Check drop floor sensor.
RBC 521079.03	Proportional density solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check proportional density solenoid valve.
RBC 521079.04	Proportional density solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check proportional density solenoid valve.
RBC 521083.03	Right bale shape potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521083.04	Right bale shape potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521083.13	Right bale shape potentiometer not calibrated.	Check potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in this section. Check wires and connectors. Check potentiometer. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 521083.16	Right bale shape potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521083.18	Right bale shape potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521084.03	Left bale shape potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521084.04	Left bale shape potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521084.13	Left bale shape potentiometer not calibrated.	Check potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in this section. Check wires and connectors. Check potentiometer. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 521084.16	Left bale shape potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739350064157 -19-12FEB25-3/4

Baler Application Service

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 521084.18	Left bale shape potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521086.03	Bale size potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521086.04	Bale size potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521086.13	Bale diameter potentiometer not calibrated.	Check potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section. Check wires and connectors. Check potentiometer. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 521086.14	Bale in chamber at power-up.	Automatic binding cycle disabled for the current bale. Start binding cycle manually at desired bale diameter.
RBC 521086.16	Bale size potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521086.18	Bale size potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521127.03	Density pressure sensor shorted high.	Check wires and connectors. Bale density setting is limited to 80 %.
RBC 521127.04	Density pressure sensor shorted low.	Check wires and connectors. Bale density setting is limited to 80 %.
RBC 522016.07	Ramp sensor failure.	Check the ramp sensor SB343. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522022.02	Calibration mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Calibration EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522023.02	Field mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Field EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522024.02	User mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	User EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522025.02	Automation mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Automation EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522026.02	Dealer mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Dealer EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522027.02	Factory mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Factory EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522028.02	Calibration EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522028.12	Calibration EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522029.02	Field EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522029.12	Field EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522030.02	User EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522030.12	User EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522031.02	Automation EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522031.12	Automation EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522032.02	Dealer EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522032.12	Dealer EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522033.02	Factory EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522033.12	Factory EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 523108.13	Control unit output problem relating to net or twine binding device.	Net or twine operation may have reduced performance. Replace control unit at earliest convenience. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 524063.03	Net actuator short to battery.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524063.04	Net actuator short to ground.	Check wires and connectors.

r2c13ue,1739350064157 -19-12FEB25-4/4

Baler Application Service

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 524063.05	Net actuator open load.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.03	Twine actuator short to battery.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.04	Twine actuator short to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.05	Twine actuator open load.	Check wires and connectors.

r2c13ue,1739350064157 -19-12FEB25-5/4

Test Sensors and Switches

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

††81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-1/12

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

††81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-2/12

3. Select "Input Test" softkey.

CC277969 —UN—22SEP16



CC277969

††81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-3/12

4. The Input Test function is used to test sensors and switches.

For sensor location, see [Locate Machine Electrical Components](#) in Service section.

Description:

- Symbol (A) shows the sensor or the switch status (deactivated or activated).
- Counter (B) informs the operator if a sensor or a switch has detected its target during a cycle.

Test Procedures:

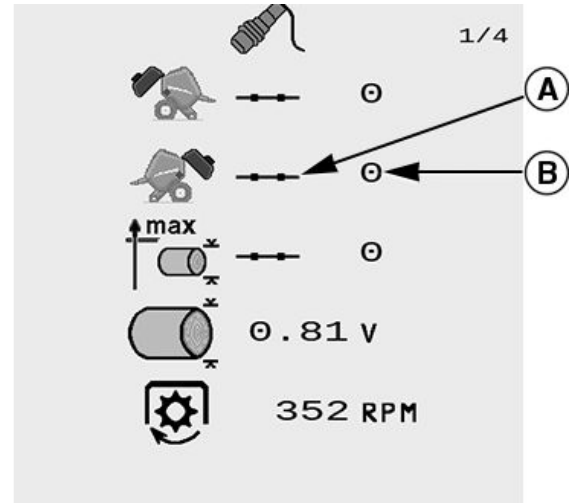
Check all sensors and targets are clean. Check the distance between sensor and target is correct. Activate sensors by placing a piece of steel in front of the sensor. The counter (B) is increased by one each time the sensor is activated or deactivated.

NOTE: Counter (B) is reset after each page switching.

NOTE: An LED located at the rear of some sensors lights up when sensors are activated.

If the test is not OK:

- Check that the pins of connectors are functional.
- Swap the failed sensor with another sensor on the machine (preferably the net feed sensor or the baler rotation speed sensor).



CC574241

CC574241 —UN—13APR23

A—Status Symbol

B—Counter

- If the two previous tests are not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

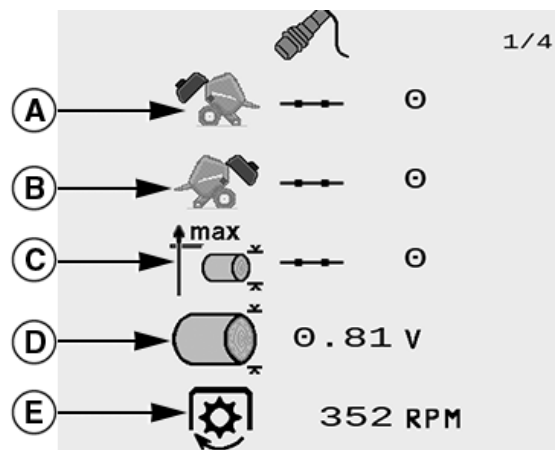
Continued on next page

††81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-4/12

5. Page 1:

- The test (A) is the test of right gate latch sensor.
- The test (B) is the test of left gate latch sensor.
- The test (C) is the test of oversize bale switch.
- The test (D) is the test of bale diameter potentiometer. The unit of value is in volts (V).
- The test (E) is the test of baler rotation speed sensor. The unit of value is in rotations per minutes (rpm).

A—Right Gate Latch Sensor Test
B—Left Gate Latch Sensor Test
C—Oversize Bale Switch Test
D—Bale Diameter Potentiometer Test
E—Baler Rotation Speed Sensor Test



CC574242

tl81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-5/12

CC574242 —UN—13APR23

6. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



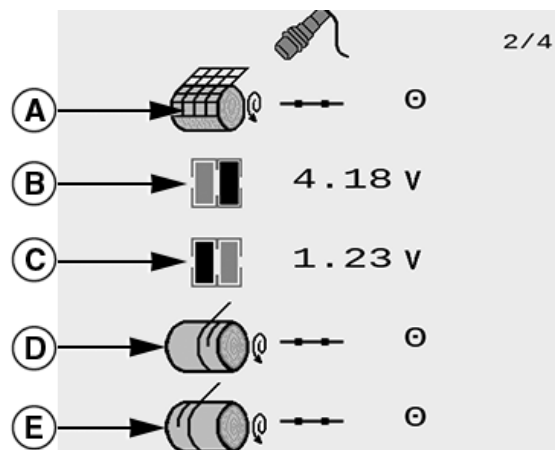
CC277967

tl81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-6/12

7. Page 2:

- The test (A) is the test of net cut sensor.
- The test (B) is the test of right bale shape potentiometer. The unit of value is in volts (V).
- The test (C) is the test of left bale shape potentiometer. The unit of value is in volts (V).
- The test (D) is the test of right twine pulley sensor.
- The test (E) is the test of left twine pulley sensor.

A—Net Cut Sensor Test
B—Right Bale Shape Potentiometer Test
C—Left Bale Shape Potentiometer Test
D—Right Twine Pulley Sensor Test
E—Left Twine Pulley Sensor Test



CC574243

Continued on next page

tl81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-7/12

CC574243 —UN—13APR23

8. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

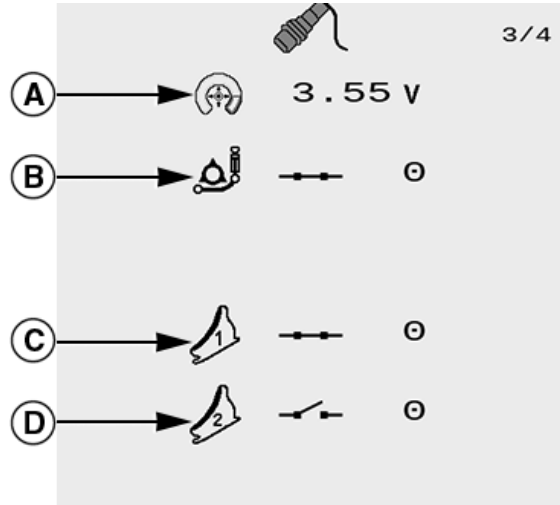
†181334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-8/12

9. **Page 3:**

- The test (A) is the test of density pressure sensor. The unit of value is in volts (V).
- The test (B) is the test of drop floor sensor.
- The test (C) is the test of precutter knives set 1 sensor.
- The test (D) is the test of precutter knives set 2 sensor.

A—Density Pressure Sensor Test
B—Drop Floor Sensor Test

C—Precutter Knives Set 1 Sensor Test
D—Precutter Knives Set 2 Sensor Test



CC574244 —UN—13APR23

†181334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-9/12

10. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

Continued on next page

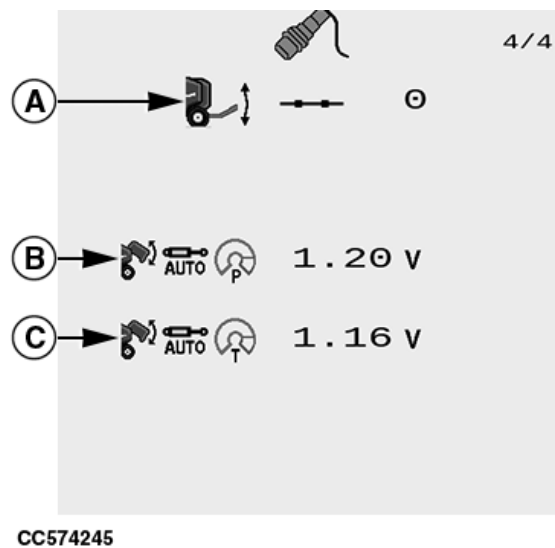
†181334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-10/12

11. Page 4:

- The test (A) is the test of bale discharging ramp sensor.
- The test (B) is the test of automatic tailgate pressure sensor P.
The unit of value is in volts (V).
- The test (C) is the test of automatic tailgate pressure sensor T.
The unit of value is in volts (V).

A—Bale Discharging Ramp
Sensor Test
B—Automatic Tailgate
Pressure Sensor P Test

C—Automatic Tailgate
Pressure Sensor T Test



CC574245 —UN—13APR23

tl81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-11/12

- # 12. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1681377926164 -19-14APR23-12/12

Test Electro-Hydraulic Components

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-1/9

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

Continued on next page

tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-2/9

3. Select "Output Test" softkey.

CC277970 —UN—22SEP16

CAUTION: During the test of electrohydraulic components, parts of the machine move. Before performing a test, ensure that operating area of the machine is clear from people or foreign objects.



CC277970

IMPORTANT: If one of these tests is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

4. The Output Test function is used to test electro-hydraulic components. To activate component, select and activate the desired button.

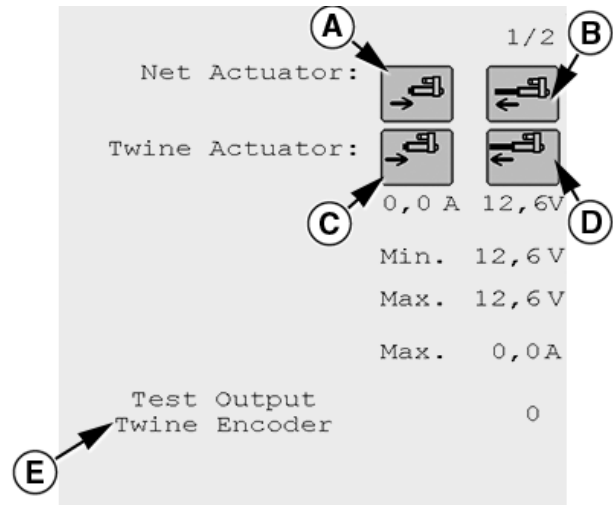
tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-3/9

5. Page 1:

- Button (A) is used to retract the net actuator.
- Button (B) is used to extend the net actuator.
- Button (C) is used to retract the twine arms.
- Button (D) is used to extend the twine arms.
- Value (E) is used to test the encoder of the twine actuator.

A—Retract Net Actuator
B—Extend Net Actuator
C—Retract Twine Arms

D—Extend Twine Arms
E—Twine Encoder



CC380429

CC380429 —19—28NOV19

tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-4/9

6. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

Continued on next page

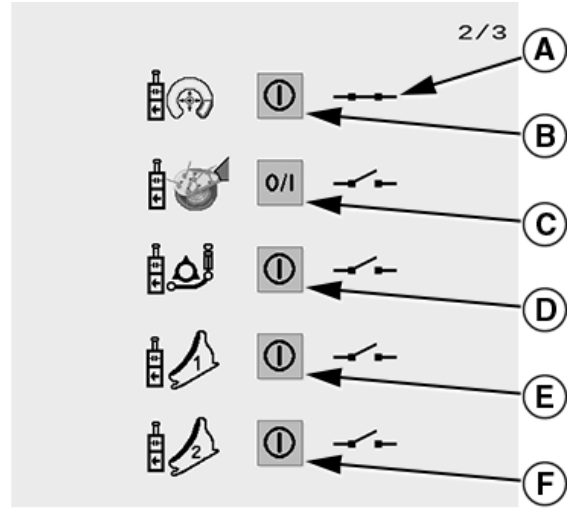
tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-5/9

7. Page 2:

- Status symbol (A) shows the component status (deactivated or activated).
 - Button (B) is used to test the density solenoid valve.
 - Button (C) is used to test the pickup lift solenoid valve.
- When the symbol (A) is open, the pickup is controlled. When the symbol (A) is close, the function below are controlled.
- Button (D) is used to test the drop floor solenoid valve.
 - Button (E) is used to test the precutter knives set 1 solenoid valve.
 - Button (F) is used to test the precutter knives set 2 solenoid valve.

A—Status Symbol
B—Density Solenoid Valve Button
C—Pickup Lift Solenoid Valve Button

D—Drop Floor Solenoid Valve Button
E—Precutter Knives Set 1 Solenoid Valve Button
F—Precutter Knives Set 2 Solenoid Valve Button



CC562611

CC562611 —UN—22FEB23

ti81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-6/9

- ## 8. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

ti81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-7/9

9. Page 3:

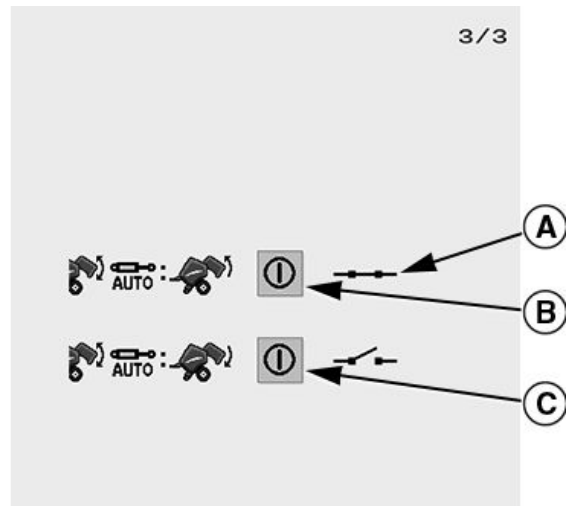
- Button (B) is used to test the open gate solenoid valve.
- Button (C) is used to test the close gate solenoid valve.

NOTE: Buttons (B) and (C) are available if the machine is equipped with the automatic tailgate function.

For buttons (B) and (C), it is possible that they are reversed depending on the connection of the hydraulic hoses to the tractor.

A—Status Symbol
B—Open Gate Solenoid Valve Button

C—Close Gate Solenoid Valve Button



CC574246

CC574246 —UN—14APR23

Continued on next page

ti81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-8/9

10. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1681377940347 -19-02MAY23-9/9

Test Actuator Electrical Consumption

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

TL81334,0000FA6 -19-18JUN21-1/5

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

TL81334,0000FA6 -19-18JUN21-2/5

3. Select "Output Test" softkey.

CC277970 —UN—22SEP16



CC277970

Continued on next page

TL81334,0000FA6 -19-18JUN21-3/5

- Select "Retract Actuator" (A) or "Extend Actuator" (B) button, to extend or retract the actuator of the desired binding system.

Amperage value (C) indicates the amperage reading of the net actuator or twine arms.

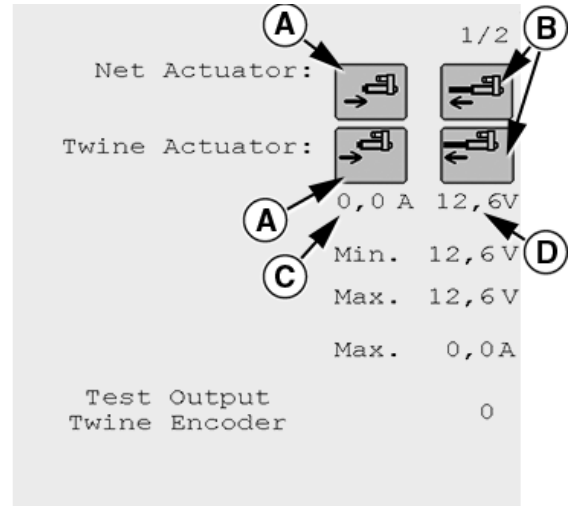
During net actuator extension, amperage value (C) must be between 2 and 12 amperes.

During twine actuator extension, amperage value (C) must be between 2 and 8 amperes.

Continue to activate the actuator to full stroke position. When net actuator is fully extended or retracted, display must show stall amperage between 16 and 25 amperes. When the twine actuator is fully extended or retracted, display must show stall amperage between 18 and 25 amperes.

- Readings below normal indicate low tractor voltage, poor, or corroded harness connections.
- Readings above normal indicate binding mechanical problem, faulty harness, or faulty actuator.
- Amperage spike reading indicates binding mechanical obstruction.

Value (D) indicates the voltage in the electrical circuit.



CC380430

A—Retract Actuator
B—Extend Actuator

C—Amperage Value
D—Voltage Value

TL81334,0000FA6 -19-18JUN21-4/5

- Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

TL81334,0000FA6 -19-18JUN21-5/5

Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

IMPORTANT: Before calibrating the bale diameter potentiometer, ensure that baler rotation speed sensor is correctly adjusted and activated. See **Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365** in **Service** section, and **Enable or Disable Baler Rotation Speed Sensor (If Equipped)** in **Baler Application Service** section.



CC277966

The bale diameter potentiometer is automatically calibrated. Depending on the crop baled, the measured bale diameter might not correspond to the desired diameter adjusted on monitor. The monitor can be fine-tuned to recover the real bale diameter as follows:

- Start tractor engine.
- Select "Settings" softkey.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-1/13

3. Select "Baler Calibration" softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-2/13

4. Select "Bale Diameter Calibration" softkey.

CC341042 —UN—09JAN18



CC341042

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-3/13

5. Engage tractor PTO and run at rated PTO speed for a few seconds.

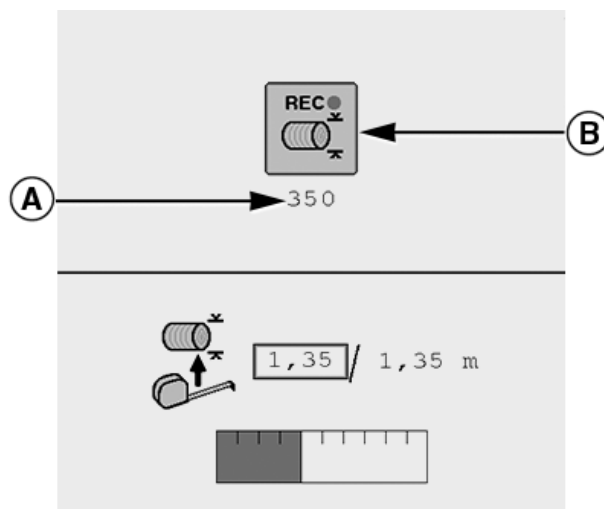
NOTE: Bale diameter potentiometer calibration value (A) can be modified when tractor PTO is engaged.

6. Select button (B) to reset the bale diameter potentiometer calibration.

NOTE: Bale chamber must be empty and gate closed when resetting bale diameter potentiometer calibration. The softcore device must be inactivated.

**A—Bale Diameter
Potentiometer Calibration
Value**

**B—Reset Bale Diameter
Potentiometer Calibration
Button**



CC510497

CC510497 —UN—17JUN21

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-4/13

7. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-5/13

8. Adjust target bale diameter (B) to the desired bale diameter.

NOTE: For the first calibration, we recommend to not exceed 1.40 m (55 in) for V451M and 1.50 (59 in.) for V461M, to avoid to reach oversize alarm.

9. Make a bale to check the bale diameter potentiometer calibration. Before unloading bale, record actual bale diameter (A) value.

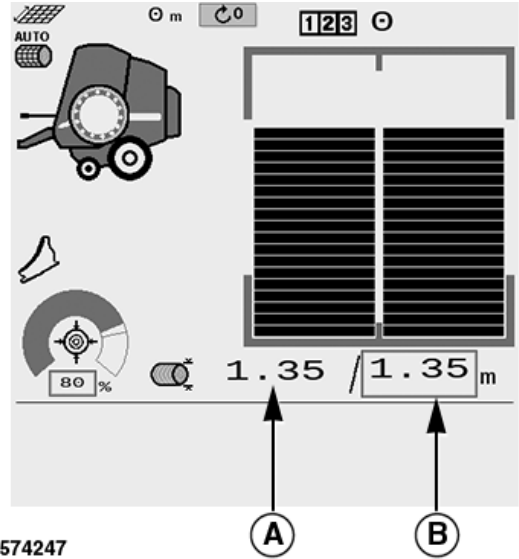
10. Measure bale diameter.

NOTE: To check bale diameter, measure the bale horizontally and vertically on both ends. Add the four measurements together and divide by four to determine average bale diameter.

11. Compare actual bale diameter (A) previously recorded and measured bale diameter. If difference is less than 3 cm (1.2 in), bale diameter potentiometer is correctly calibrated. If not, continue procedure to precisely calibrate the bale diameter potentiometer.

NOTE: This fine-tune procedure may need to be repeat if the desired bale diameter or crop is changed.

12. Make 2—3 bales taking care to reach the bale diameter target (B) with a margin of 3 cm (1.2 in).



CC574247

A—Bale Diameter (Actual)

B—Bale Diameter (Target)

13. Measure each bale horizontally and vertically on both ends, then determine the average bale diameter.

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-6/13

14. Select "Settings" softkey.

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16



CC277966

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-7/13

15. Select "Baler Calibration" softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-8/13

16. Select "Bale Diameter Calibration" softkey.

CC341042 —UN—09JAN18



CC341042

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-9/13

17.

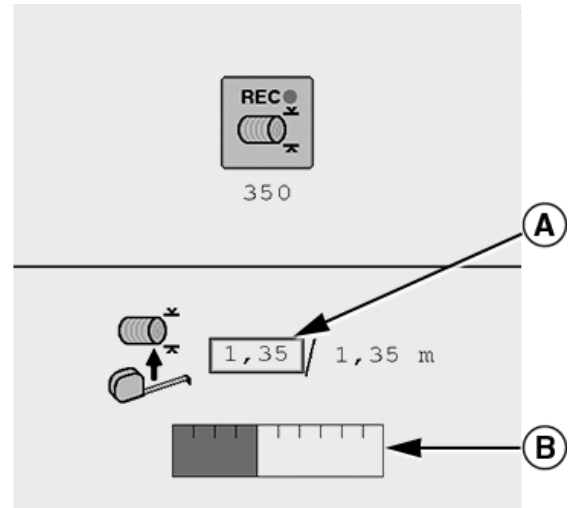
IMPORTANT: For RBC software version up to 16.01:

The average bale diameter measured under step 13 must be entered in metric unit, even if the monitor is set in imperial unit.

Enter the average bale diameter measured value determined under step 13 in input box (A).

A—Bale Diameter Measured

B—Bale Diameter Correction Value Graphic



CC510498

CC510498 —UN—17JUN21

Continued on next page

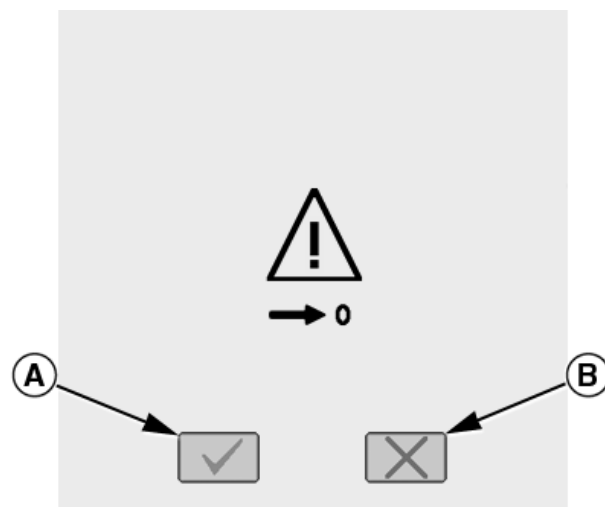
r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-10/13

18. Select "Accept" button (A) to validate the correction or select the "Cancel" button (B) to abort the correction.

After the validation of the correction, the graphic (C) indicates a new correction value.

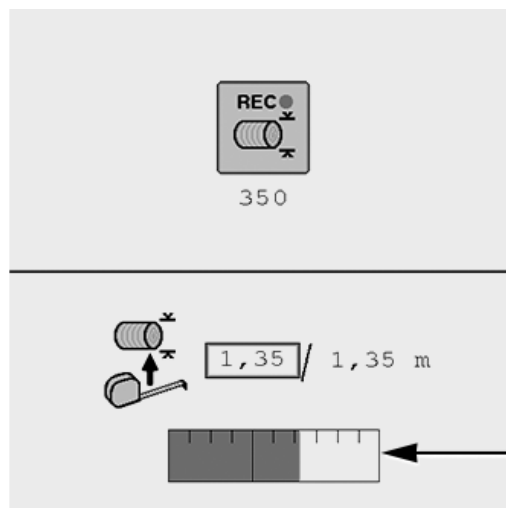
A—Accept Button
B—Cancel Button

C—Bale Diameter Correction
Value Graphic



CC341047

CC341047 —UN—09JAN18



CC510499

CC510499 —UN—17JUN21

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-11/13

19. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

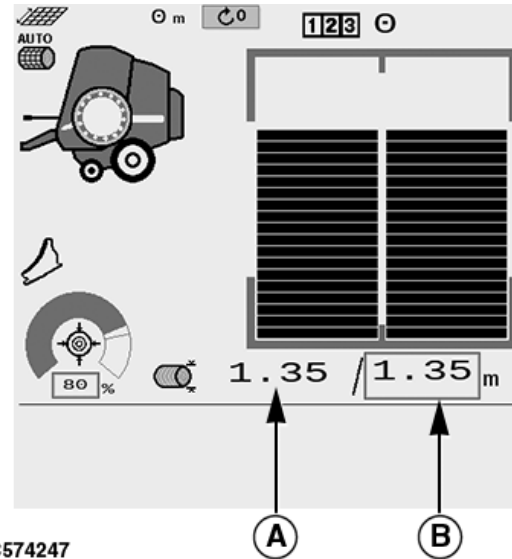
Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-12/13

20. Make a bale to check the bale diameter potentiometer calibration. Before unloading bale, record actual bale diameter (A) value.
21. Measure bale diameter before binding of the bale.
22. Compare actual bale diameter (A) previously recorded and measured bale diameter. If difference is less than 3 cm (1-3/16 in), bale diameter potentiometer is correctly calibrated. If not repeat procedure from step 9.
23. If bale diameter potentiometer calibration is not correct, repeat procedure from the beginning or see your John Deere dealer.

A—Bale Diameter (Actual)

B—Bale Diameter (Target)



CC574247

CC574247 —UN—14APR23

r2c13ue,1739864321021 -19-18FEB25-13/13

Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322

IMPORTANT: It is normal for right and left bale shape indicators to provide no informations with empty chamber. They indicate information when the bale in chamber has a minimum diameter of 0.8 m (31.5 in).

IMPORTANT: Before calibrating the bale shape potentiometers, ensure that baler rotation speed sensor is correctly adjusted and activated. See [Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365](#) in Service section.

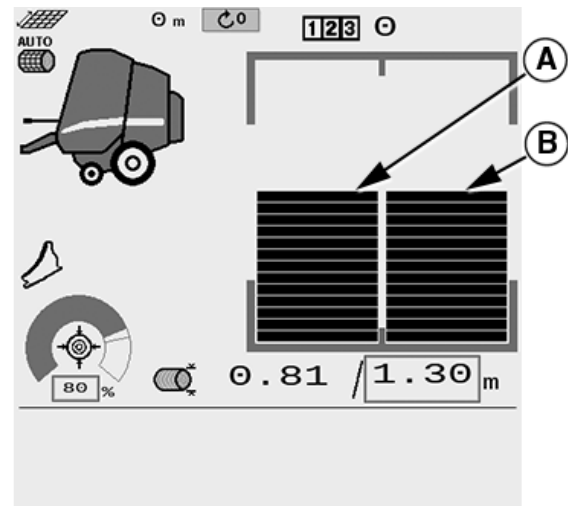
Do not shut off tractor engine before the calibration procedure of the bale shape potentiometers is finished.

Reset calibration of bale shape potentiometers if:

- Bale shape indicators on monitor and real bale shape do not match.
- Bale shape indicators on monitor are not displayed when the chamber is not empty.

If a calibration was necessary, follow this procedure:

1. Start tractor engine.
2. Bale three bales following the bale shape indicator graphs (A) and (B) to have a similar bar height on both sides.



CC574248

A—Left Bale Shape Indicator Graph

B—Right Bale Shape Indicator Graph

CC574248 —UN—14APR23

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-1/13

3. Select "Settings" softkey.

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16



CC277966

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-2/13

4. Select "Baler Calibration" softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-3/13

5. Select the "Bale Shape Calibration" softkey.

CC341045 —UN—09JAN18



CC341045

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-4/13

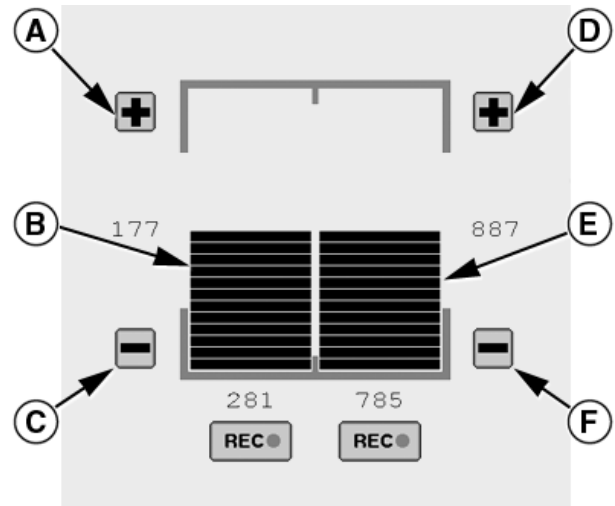
6. Check that bale shape indicator graphs on monitor before ejecting the bale, check that bale shape indicators graph on monitor and real bale shape match. If not match, use the "PLUS" button (A) and (D), or "MINUS" button (C) and (F) until to correct the calibration of the bale shape potentiometer compare to real bale shape.

NOTE: One pulse on buttons increases or decrease bar by one.

- For the left bale shape indicator graph (B): Press the "PLUS" button (A) to add bars of the bale shape indicator graph. Press the "MINUS" button (C) to remove bars on the bale shape indicator graph.
- For the right bale shape indicator graph (E): Press the "PLUS" button (D) to add bars on the bale shape indicator graph. Press the "MINUS" button (F) to remove bars on the bale shape indicator graph.

For example: In case of a conic bale which is bigger on the right side, add bars on the left bale shape indicator graph or remove bars on the right bale shape indicators (maximum 1 to 3 bars).

NOTE: If bale shape indicator graphs are to the maximum size of graph, remove bars on both indicators (maximum 1 to 3 bars).



CC380374

A—Left Bale Shape PLUS Button
B—Left Bale Shape Indicator Graph
C—Left Bale Shape MINUS Button

D—Right Bale Shape PLUS Button
E—Right Bale Shape Indicator Graph
F—Right Bale Shape MINUS Button

CC380374 —UN—29MAY19

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-5/13

7. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.
8. Bale three bales following the bale shape indicators graph to have the similar bar height on both sides.
9. Check that bale shape indicator graphs on monitor before ejecting the bale and real bale shape match.
 - If OK, procedure is ended.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

• If not OK, it can be necessary to repeat the procedure from the step 2, two or three times. If calibration stills not OK, go to next step.

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-6/13

10. Select "Settings" softkey.

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16



CC277966

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-7/13

11. Select "Baler Calibration" softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-8/13

12. Select the "Bale Shape Calibration" softkey.

CC341045 —UN—09JAN18



CC341045

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-9/13

13.

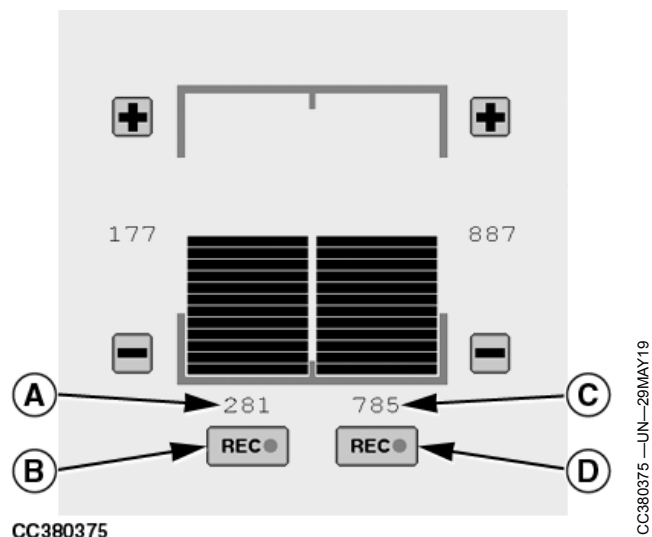
IMPORTANT: Bale chamber must be empty and gate closed when resetting bale shape potentiometer calibration. The softcore device must be inactivated.

Reset calibration of left and right bale shape potentiometers:

- a. Select button (B) to reset the calibration of the left bale shape potentiometer. Select button (D) to reset the calibration of the right bale shape potentiometer.

NOTE: Calibration values (A) and (C) of the left and right bale shape potentiometers can be modified.

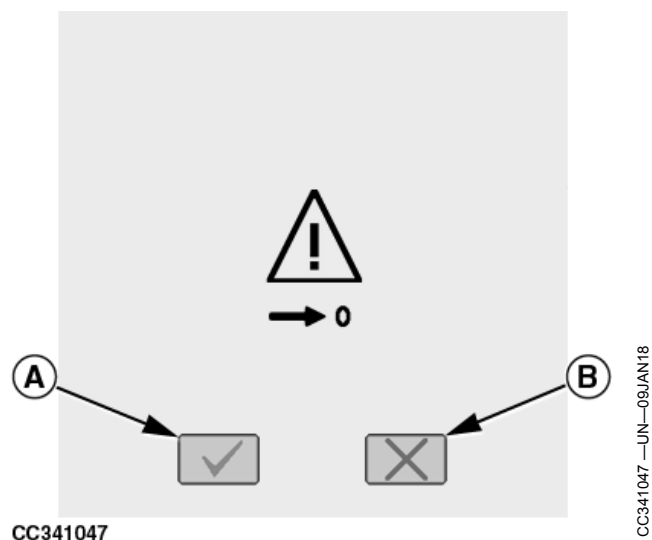
- | | |
|--|---|
| A—Left Bale Shape Potentiometer Calibration Value | C—Right Bale Shape Potentiometer Calibration Value |
| B—Reset Left Bale Shape Potentiometer Calibration Button | D—Reset Right Bale Shape Potentiometer Calibration Button |



r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-10/13

- b. Select "Accept" button (A) to validate and reset calibration, or select the "Cancel" button (B) to abort the reset calibration of the bale shape.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| A—Accept Button | B—Cancel Button |
|-----------------|-----------------|



r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-11/13

14. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16

15. Set the bale density to 100 % (maximum density) and disable Soft Core System. See Adjust Bale Density, and Operate Soft Core System in Operating Baler Application section.

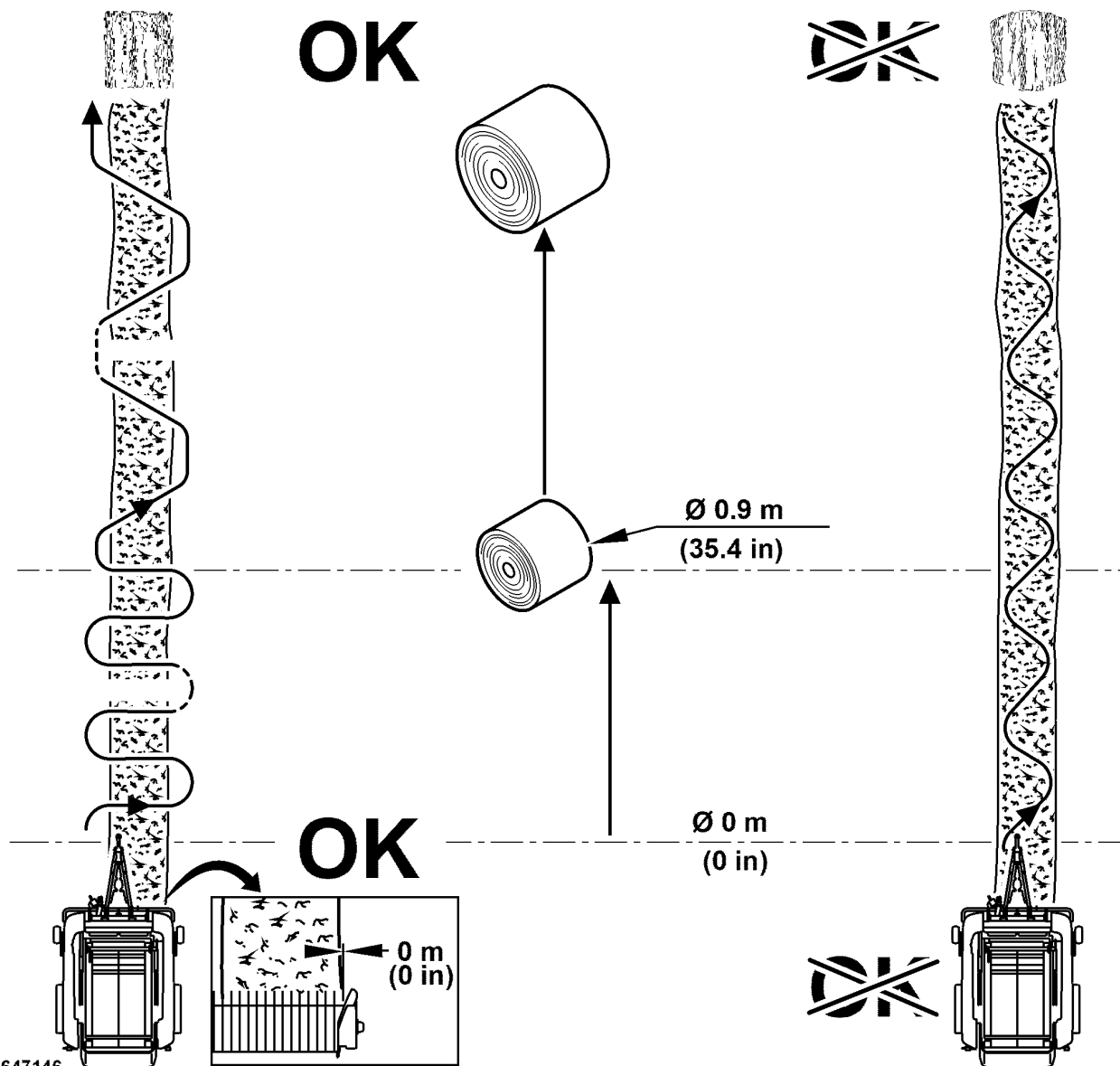


CC277965

16. Set bale shape sensitivity to 5 (high sensitivity). See Adjust Bale Shape Sensitivity in this section.

Continued on next page

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-12/13



CC647146 —UN—11OCT24

CC647146

17. Bale three bales as follows:

IMPORTANT: Do not follow bale shape indicators on the monitor while baling these three bales.

- Bale by feeding both sides of the baler and by weaving (slaloming) quickly until a bale diameter of 0.9 m (35.4 in) is reached.

NOTE: To correctly feed each side of the baler, feed all the pickup width alternatively in order to balance crop on the rotor auger.

- To obtain desired bale diameter, finish the bale by feeding more each side of the baler to reduce weaving (slaloming).

18. Then bale several bales by following the procedure described under [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) in Operating Baler Application section.

19. If the bale shape indicators on monitor and real bale shape still do not match, see your John Deere dealer.

r2c13ue,1739351900499 -19-12FEB25-13/13

Adjust Bale Shape Sensitivity

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

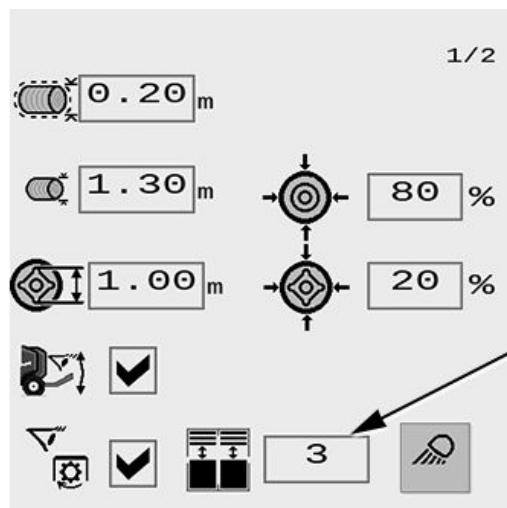
†81334,1681378028089 -19-14APR23-1/3

2. Select input box (A) and set the bale shape sensitivity from 1 (low sensitivity) to 5 (high sensitivity).

IMPORTANT: Never set the bale shape sensitivity to 0.

NOTE: The initial factory setting is 3.

A—Bale Shape Sensitivity



CC574249

CC574249 —UN—14APR23

†81334,1681378028089 -19-14APR23-2/3

3. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

†81334,1681378028089 -19-14APR23-3/3

Enable or Disable Baler Rotation Speed Sensor (If Equipped)

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

IMPORTANT: Operating the baler with the baler rotation speed sensor disabled may cause malfunctions. See your John Deere dealer to replace defective parts as soon as possible.

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

Continued on next page

†81334,1681378041088 -19-17APR23-1/3

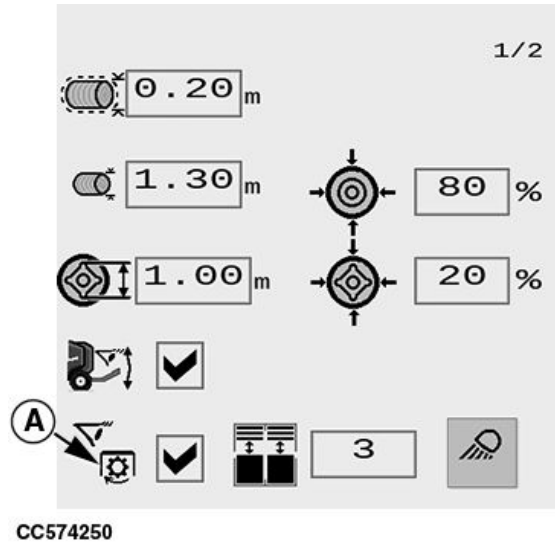
2. Checkbox (A) is used to enable or disable the baler rotation speed sensor.

NOTE: Disabling the baler rotation speed sensor allows the baler to be operated with a defective sensor.

- Tick checkbox (A) to enable the baler rotation speed sensor.
- Do not tick checkbox (A) to disable the baler rotation speed sensor.

3. Before deactivating this function, check sensor adjustment. See [Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB365](#) in Service section.

A—Baler Rotation Speed Sensor



CC574250 —UN—11MAY23

tl81334,1681378041088 -19-17APR23-2/3

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1681378041088 -19-17APR23-3/3

Enable or Disable Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor (If Equipped)

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

IMPORTANT: Operating the baler with the bale discharging ramp sensor disabled may cause malfunctions in automation, and automatic tailgate mode. See your John Deere dealer to replace defective parts as soon as possible.



CC277966

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.

Continued on next page

tl81334,1681378072818 -19-17APR23-1/3

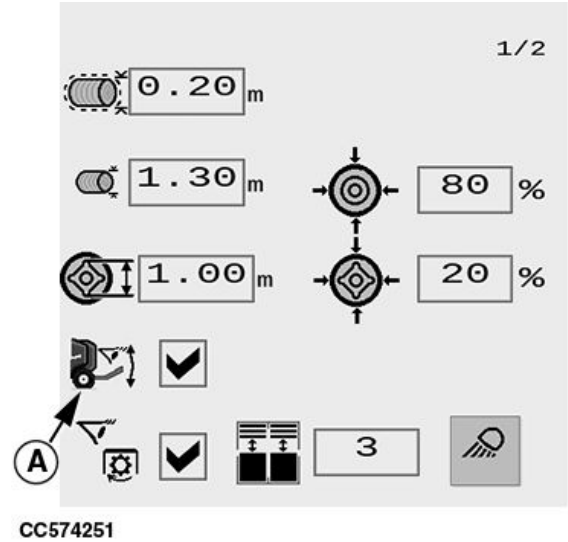
2. Checkbox (A) is used to enable or disable the bale discharging ramp sensor.

NOTE: Enable the bale discharging ramp sensor allows the baler to be operated in automation and automatic tailgate mode.

- Tick checkbox (A) to enable the bale discharging ramp sensor.
- Do not tick checkbox (A) to disable the bale discharging ramp sensor.

3. Before activating this function, check sensor adjustment. See [Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB343](#) in Service section.

A—Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor



CC574251 —UN—11MAY23

tl81334,1681378072818 -19-17APR23-2/3

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1681378072818 -19-17APR23-3/3

Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal (Display) to Another

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



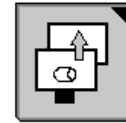
CC277966

TL81334,0000656 -19-24MAY19-1/4

2. Select "Switch Baler Application from current Virtual Terminal to another Virtual Terminal" softkey

CC277988 —UN—22SEP16

NOTE: Softkey is available when at least 2 virtual terminals are connected.



CC277988

Continued on next page

TL81334,0000656 -19-24MAY19-2/4

3. Select button (A) to switch baler application from the current virtual terminal to another virtual terminal.

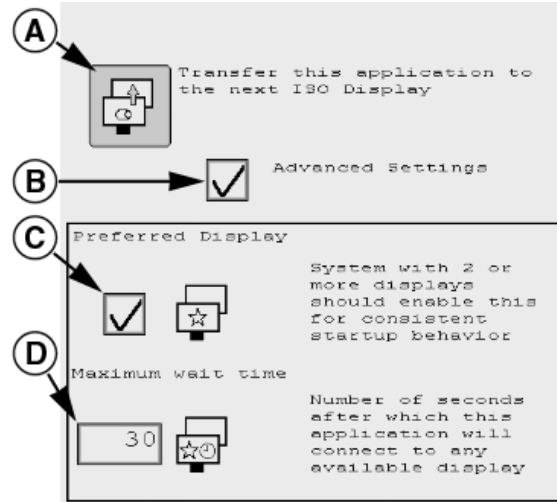
Tick advanced settings checkbox (B) to display preferred virtual terminal (C), and start up waiting time (D) settings.

Preferred virtual terminal checkbox (C) allows operator to choose the virtual terminal that should display baler application at start up. Tick the checkbox (C) when the application is displayed on desired virtual terminal.

Start up waiting time (D) is the time after which the baler application is displayed on the default virtual terminal if expected virtual terminal is not available.

A—Switch to Another Virtual Terminal Button
B—Advanced Settings

C—Preferred Virtual Terminal
D—Start Up Waiting Time



CC277989

CC277989 —19—21DEC16

TL81334,0000656 -19-24MAY19-3/4

4. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

TL81334,0000656 -19-24MAY19-4/4

Periodic Maintenance

CC277966 —UN—22SEP16

1. From the Baler Application Main Page, select the "Settings" softkey.



CC277966

tl81334,1681378111671 -19-17APR23-1/5

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031614

tl81334,1681378111671 -19-17APR23-2/5

3. Select "Next Page" or "Previous Page" softkey to access page 6/6.

CC277967 —UN—22SEP16



CC277967

Continued on next page

tl81334,1681378111671 -19-17APR23-3/5

4. On page 6/6, the counter (A) indicates when it necessary to drain and refill gear case. See Every 500 Hours or Yearly: Drain and Refill Gear Case in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

The counter (B) indicates when it necessary to check wheel nut torque. See Check Wheel Nut Torque in Preparing the Baler section.

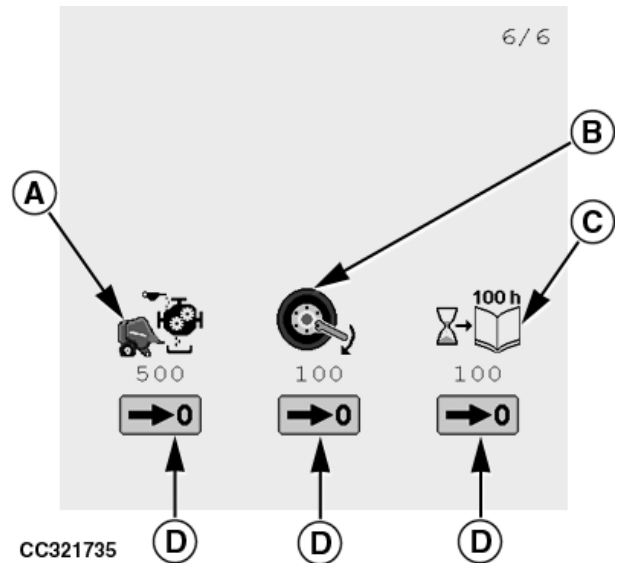
The counter (C) indicates when it necessary to make the 100 hours or yearly revision. See in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Select the "Clear Counter" button (D) to reinitialize required counter.

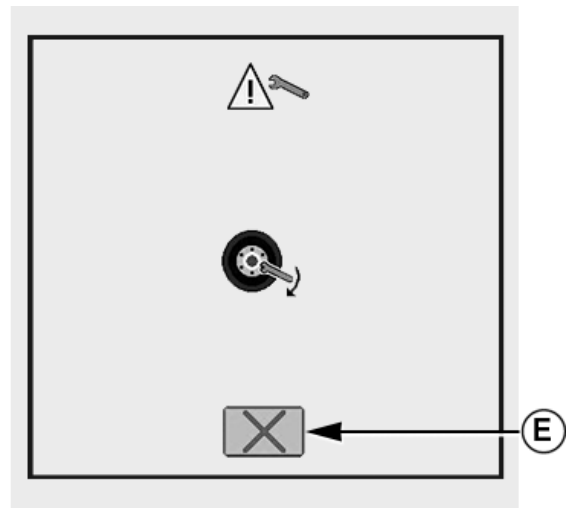
When the counters are nearby zero hours, a pop-up message appears to remember the operator that periodic maintenance is needed. Use the button (E) to acknowledge the remembering message.

NOTE: The counters must be cleared after every periodic maintenance.

- A—Drain and Refill Gear Case counter
- B—Wheel Nut Torque counter
- C—100 h or Yearly revision counter
- D—Clear Counter Button
- E—Cancel Button



CC321735



CC510507

tl81334,1681378111671 -19-17APR23-4/5

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to Baler Application Main Page.

CC277965 —UN—22SEP16



CC277965

tl81334,1681378111671 -19-17APR23-5/5

Storage

Prepare the Baler for Storage

Remove bindings rolls and store them in a cool and dry place.

Release belt tension.

Clean baler thoroughly inside and out. Trash and dirt will draw moisture and cause rust.

Clean binding frame(s) thoroughly.

IMPORTANT: If the net binding device is going to be stored for a long period of time, avoid the rubber feed roll being deformed by releasing feed roll pressure and placing feed roll brake into unlocked position. Place a piece of cardboard between feed rolls, all across their width.

NOTE: Should a high-pressure washer be used to clean the baler, do not direct pressurized water on the bearings or electrical components.

Sharpen and grease knives.

Check that all rolls are working freely. If one of them is hard to rotate, remove it, clean bearing housing and replace bearing, if necessary.

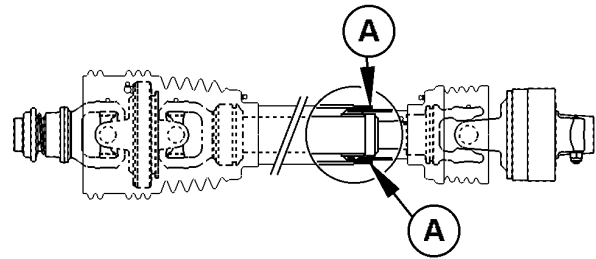
Thoroughly lubricate complete machine. See Lubrication and Maintenance section. This excess of grease will collect moisture and protect bearings against humidity.

Coat exposed cylinder rods with grease to prevent rusting.

Apply a few drops of oil to all pivot points and linkages.

Apply a thin layer of grease to threads of all adjusting bolts.

Grease powerline guard tubes (A) at the beginning of the winter season to prevent freezing.



CC652865

A—Guard Tube

CC652865—UN—22NOV24

All parts from which the paint has been worn should be painted or coated with oil.

Clean all chains. Dry thoroughly and coat with a heavy oil.

Protect electrical connectors against corrosion with adequate fluid.

List the replacement parts that will be needed and order them.

Store baler in a dry sheltered place. If stored outside, cover with waterproof material.

Block up baler, taking load off tires. Do NOT deflate tires. If exposed to light, grease and oil, cover tires for protection.

r2c13ue,1732272053034 -19-22NOV24-1/1

Prepare for Beginning of Season

Check and fill gear case up to check plug level. See Weekly: Check Gear Case Oil Level in Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Lubricate complete machine. See Lubrication and Maintenance section. This lubrication will force any collected moisture out of the bearings.

Check tires for correct air pressure. See Tire Inflation in Preparing the Baler section.

Tighten all nuts and screws. See Service section.

Check all belt hooks, then replace as necessary. See Install Belt Hooks in Service section.

Replace all belt splice pins. See Install Belts in Service section.

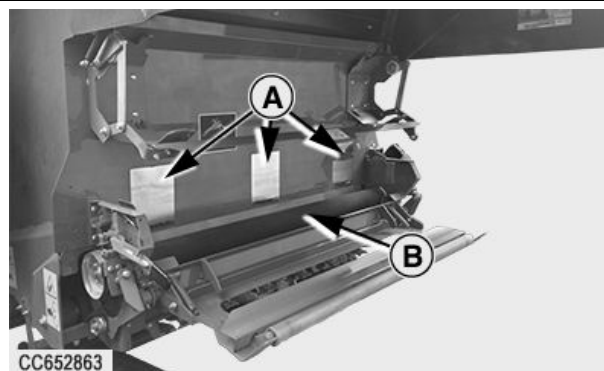
Check adjustments of baler as described in Service section.

Review this operator's manual.

Check that control monitor is working properly.

Wipe off feed rolls (B) and check for any sticky material. If necessary, rolls may be washed with soap and water. NEVER use solvents to clean rubber feed roll.

Apply talcum powder to rubber feed roll.



A—Steel net roll supports

B—Feed rolls

Check areas which will contact net roll. These areas must be clean and smooth to help prevent net wrapping on rubber coated roll. Remove excessive dust or crop material from feed rolls (B) and stainless steel net roll supports (A) with a dry cloth.

Check adjustments of net binding, mainly net feed roll pressure. See Check Net Binding Device in Service section.

Check that net knife is sharp.

r2c13ue,1732187335826 -19-21NOV24-1/1

CC652863 —UN—21NOV24

Specifications

Specifications for V451M Baler

Size of Bale Chamber

Bale chamber diameter	0.9 to 1.65 m (35.4 to 65 in)
Bale chamber width	1.21 m (47.6 in)

Baler

Shipping weight empty ^a	3650kg (8046 lb)
Length, gate closed.....	5.20 m (204.7 in)
Length, gate open.....	5.85 m (230.3 in)
Height, gate closed	3.1m (122 in)
Height, gate open	4.2 m (165.4 in)
Width (with 500/50 - 17 tires)	2.75 m (108.25 in)

^aWeight without consumables, may vary depending on equipment.

2.20 m (86.6 in) Pickup with Drop Floor

Pickup width.....	2.20 m (86.6 in)
Width (between outer teeth)	1.92 m (75.6 in)
Tooth bars	10 (2 x 5)
Number of teeth	150
Tooth spacing	66 mm (2.5 in)
Stripper diameter.....	340 mm (13.4 in)

Miscellaneous

PTO shaft speed	540 rpm (balers with 540 rpm gear case)
Drive protection.....	Cam-type cut-out clutch
Powerline	Constant velocity powerline
Maximum tractor weight	10000 kg (22050 lb)
Minimum tractor horsepower	82 kW (110 hp) at PTO
Tire type.....	500/50-17 140 A8
Tongue	Adjustable

Sound Level

Max. sound level in accordance with EN1553; measurement method in accordance with ISO3744 (average value)	85 dB(A)
---	----------

r2c13ue,1731922066741 -19-12FEB25-1/1

Serial Numbers

Serial Number Plate

Serial number identifying the baler is stamped on factory product identification serial number plate or European vehicle identification number plate.

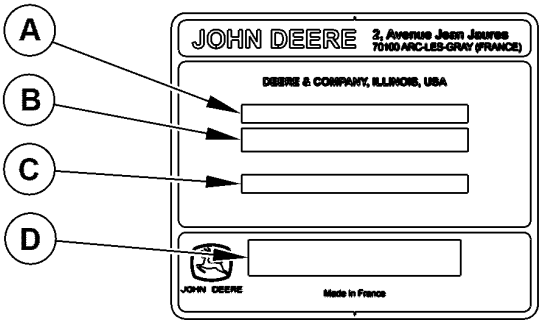
These numbers and letters are required when ordering baler or attachment replacement parts.

To ensure that you have these numbers at hand, enter the appropriate serial number in the table provided under the illustration.

GA87848,00006F8 -19-09JUL18-1/1

Serial Number Plate Description

- A—Model designation
- B—Serial number
- C—Product Description
- D—Bar code



CC652868 —UN—27NOV24

r2c13ue,1732632706556 -19-27NOV24-1/1

Round Baler Identification Number



The round baler identification number plate is located on the right-hand side of the baler, behind the hinged protection screen.

Record the serial number in the table below.

Serial Number															
*															*

GA87848,0000427 -19-11OCT17-1/1

CC333399 —UN—06OCT17

Keep Proof of Ownership

1. Maintain in a secure location an up-to-date inventory of all product and component serial numbers.
2. Regularly verify that identification plates have not been removed. Report any evidence of tampering to law enforcement agencies and order duplicate plates.
3. Other steps you can take:
 - Mark your machine with your own numbering system
 - Take color photographs from several angles of each machine

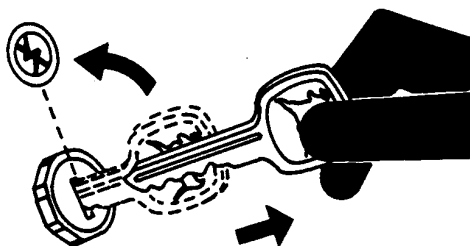


TS1680 —UN—09DEC03

DX,SECURE1 -19-18NOV03-1/1

Keep Machines Secure

1. Install vandal-proof devices.
2. When machine is in storage:
 - Lower equipment to the ground
 - Set wheels to widest position to make loading more difficult
 - Remove any keys and batteries
3. When parking indoors, put large equipment in front of exits and lock your storage buildings.
4. When parking outdoors, store in a well-lighted and fenced area.
5. Make note of suspicious activity and report any thefts immediately to law enforcement agencies.
6. Notify your John Deere dealer of any losses.



TS230 —UN—24MAY89

DX,SECURE2 -19-18NOV03-1/1

John Deere Service Literature Available

Technical Information

Technical information can be purchased from John Deere. Publications are available in print or CD-ROM format.

Orders can be made using one of the following:

- John Deere Technical Information Store:
www.JohnDeere.com/TechInfoStore
- Call 1-800-522-7448
- Contact your John Deere dealer

Available information includes:

PARTS CATALOGS list service parts available for your machine with exploded view illustrations to help you identify the correct parts. It is also useful in assembling and disassembling.



TS189 —UN—17JAN89

DX,SERV LIT -19-07DEC16-1/4

OPERATOR'S MANUALS providing safety, operating, maintenance, and service information.



TS191 —UN—02DEC88

DX,SERV LIT -19-07DEC16-2/4

TECHNICAL MANUALS outlining service information for your machine. Included are specifications, illustrated assembly and disassembly procedures, hydraulic oil flow diagrams, and wiring diagrams. Some products have separate manuals for repair and diagnostic information. Some components, such as engines, are available in a separate component technical manual.



TS224 —UN—17JAN89

Continued on next page

DX,SERV LIT -19-07DEC16-3/4

EDUCATIONAL CURRICULUM including five comprehensive series of books detailing basic information regardless of manufacturer:

- Agricultural Primer series covers technology in farming and ranching.
- Farm Business Management series examines “real-world” problems and offers practical solutions in the areas of marketing, financing, equipment selection, and compliance.
- Fundamentals of Services manuals show you how to repair and maintain off-road equipment.
- Fundamentals of Machine Operation manuals explain machine capacities and adjustments, how to improve machine performance, and how to eliminate unnecessary field operations.
- Fundamentals of Compact Equipment manuals provide instruction in servicing and maintaining equipment up to 40 PTO horsepower.



TS1663 —UN—10OCT97

DX.SERVLIT -19-07DEC16-4/4

Index

	Page		Page
A			
Accumulator		Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir	45-6
Service	55-3	Attach	
Accumulators		Baler to Tractor	25-2
Maintenance	45-7, 45-22	Attaching	
Actuator		Attach Baler to Tractor	25-2
Test Electrical Consumption	57-15	Connect Safety Chain	25-5
Adjust		Fold jackstand	25-2
Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper	55-30	Safety Chain	25-5
Bale Density	37-21	Attaching and Detaching	
Bale Discharging Ramp	55-47	Connect Telescoping Driveline to Tractor	
Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor	55-36	PTO Shaft	25-4
Bale Shape Sensitivity	57-26	Attachment	
Baler Rotation Speed Sensor	55-34	Find	40-1
Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper	55-26	Automatic greasing system	
Brushes	55-9	Grease	45-2
Drawbar	15-1	Automatic Start	
Drop Floor Sensor	55-33	Binding Cycle	37-16
Gate Latch	55-34	Automatic Tailgate	
Gate Latch Sensors	55-35	Softkey designation	39-2
Main Drive Chain	55-6	Automatic Tailgate Mode	
Near Full Alarm Offset	37-10	Description	39-1
Net Binding	37-13	Display Description	
Net binding stretch	35-8	Main Page	39-2
Net Feed Sensor	55-35	Operate Baler	39-3
Oil Flow	45-6	Operate Baler Safely	39-1
Orientation of Camera	55-36	Select Function	39-8
Pickup Downstops	35-4	Set	
Pickup Drive Chain	55-6	Hydraulic Flow	39-9
Pickup Float Spring	35-3	Automatic tractor PTO disengagement	38-7
Pickup Gauge Wheels	35-4	Automation	
Rotary Feeder Drive Chain	55-8	Deactivation message list	38-14
Soft Core System	37-19	Diagnostic	38-11
Starter Roll Drive Chain	55-7	Prerequisites	38-1
Tension Arm Spring	55-11	Select Level	38-5
Tongue	20-4	Softkey designation	38-2
Tracking of Belts	55-25	States pie	38-10
Tractor behavior	38-8	Automation Mode	
Tractor SCV Flow	15-3	Operate Baler	38-4
Twine Binding	37-14		
Windrow Compressor Roll	35-5	B	
Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper		Bale	
Adjust	55-30	In Case of Plugging	35-7
Adjust Tongue	20-4	Bale Density	
After the First 10 Hours		Adjust	37-21
Wheel Nut Torque	32-1	Bale Diameter Potentiometer	
After the First 50 Hours		Calibrate	57-16
Gear Case	32-1	Bale Discharging Ramp	
After the First 500 Bales		Adjust	55-47
Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Machine		Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor	
Equipped with Brake Band)	32-2	Enable or Disable	57-27
As required		Bale Shape Indicators	
Clean Bale Chamber Rolls	45-8	Make a Bale	37-23
Clean Belt Hooks and Wires	45-8	Bale Shape Potentiometers	
As Required		Calibrate	57-21
Clean Hydraulic Coupler Filters	45-7	Bale Shape Sensitivity	
Clean Oil Reservoir Filter	45-6	Adjust	57-26

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Bale unload		C	
Manual	38-9		
Baler			
Attach to Tractor	25-2	Calibrate	
Detach from Tractor	27-1	Bale Diameter Potentiometer	57-16
Baler Application		Bale Shape Potentiometers	57-21
Access	37-1	Camera	
Softkey Designation	37-3	Connect Harness	25-8
Baler Application Display		Disconnect Harness	27-1
Troubleshooting	50-16	Video Application	37-32
Baler Automation Main Page		Care	
Display Description	38-2	Net Binding Device	20-6
Baler Hydraulic System		Chain	
Connect to Tractor	25-5	Adjust Main Drive Chain	55-6
Disconnect from Tractor	27-2	Adjust Pickup Drive Chain	55-6
Baler Main Page		Adjust Rotary Feeder Drive Chain	55-8
Display Description	37-2	Adjust Starter Roll Drive Chain	55-7
Baler Rotation Speed Sensor		Every 50 Hours - Check Tension	45-11
Enable or Disable	57-26	Chain oiling system	
Battery Harness		Bleed pump	55-8
Install	15-5	Chain Oiling System	
Battery voltage		Difficulties	50-15
Test	57-3	Chains	
Before Each Use of the Baler	35-1	Oiling Component Location	45-5
Belt Guides		Check	
Check Wear	45-20	Net Guide Position	55-45
Belts		Tire Inflation	20-1
Install	55-24	Wheel Nut Torque	20-11
Remove	55-14	Check Net Binding Device	55-37
Repair	55-13	Check Net Feed Roll Brake	
Replace Wires	45-22	Every 3000 Bales	45-23
Binding Cycle		Yearly	45-23
Automatic Start	37-16	Clean	
Manual Start	37-17	the Machine	35-1
Binding device		Clean Bale Chamber Rolls	45-8
Sharpen Net Binding Knife	55-31	Clean Belt Hooks and Wires	45-8
Binding Materials Around Feed Rolls	55-47	Close	
Binding Start Mode		Door	30-4
Select	37-12	Side door	30-4, 35-2
Binding System		Component Location	
Select	37-10	Electrical	55-32
Bleed		Connect	
Chain oiling system pump	55-8	To Tractor Hydraulic System	25-5
Bolt and screw torque values		Video Camera Harness	25-8
Metric	55-1	Wiring Harness	25-7
Bottom Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper		Connecting Control Monitor	
Adjust	55-26	Install Battery Wiring Harness	15-5
Break-in Period		Counters	
After the First 500 Bales	32-2	Customer and Field	37-28
Break in baler	32-1	Season and Machine Total	37-29
Break-In Period		Crop Preparation	
After the First 50 Hours	32-1	Hay	35-2
Wheel Hub Bearing	32-1, 45-17	Silage	35-2
Wheel Nut Torque	32-1	Straw	35-2
Brushes		Windrow Size	35-2
Adjust	55-9	Customer and Field	
		Counters	37-28

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
D		Every 100 Hours	
Deactivation message list		Check Wheel Nut Torque	45-16
Automation	38-14	Every 30 Hours	
Density Accumulator		Net Binding Pivots	45-10
Every 6 years	45-23	Every 3000 Bales	
Description		Check Net Feed Roll Brake	45-23
Automatic Tailgate Mode	39-1	Every 50 Hours	
Detaching		Door Hinges, Hydraulic Cylinders, and	
Baler from Tractor	27-1	Bale Shape Sensor Pins	45-12
Baler Hydraulic System		Extension Shaft	45-19
Disconnect from Tractor Hydraulic System	27-2	Gate Latches	45-13
Detach Baler from Tractor	27-1	Lower Belt Drive Roll (With 2nd Drive Roll)	45-14
Disconnect Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket	27-2	Telescoping Driveline	45-11
Disconnect Telescoping Driveline from		Every 500 Hours	
Tractor PTO Shaft	27-3	Check Belt Guides Wear	45-20
Store Hydraulic Hoses	27-3	Drain and Refill Gear Case	45-18
Store Telescoping Driveline	27-4	Jackstand	45-18
Unfold jackstand	27-5		
Diagnostic		F	
Automation	38-11	Field Condition	
Diagnostic Trouble Code		Net Guide	35-8
List	57-4	Find Attachement	40-1
Recent Problems	57-2	Fire	
Warning Screens	57-1	Prevention	45-8
Diameter of Bale		Clean the Machine	35-1
Set	37-9	Form a Good Bale	
Disconnect		Guidelines	35-6
From Tractor Hydraulic System	27-2		
Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket Connection	27-2	G	
Video Camera Harness	27-1	Gate Latch	
Wiring Harness	27-2	Adjust	55-34
Display Description		Gate Latch Sensors	
Automatic Tailgate Mode		Adjust	55-35
Main Page	39-2	Gate Lock Valve	35-3
Baler Automation Main Page	38-2	Gauge wheel	
Baler Main Page	37-2	Repair	55-49
Door		Gear Case	
Close	30-4	Drain	32-1
Drawbar		Drain and Refill	45-18
Adjust	15-1	Oil Level	45-14
Drawbar shield	15-1	Gear Oil	
Drive Belt Tension	55-42	Oil, Gear	45-3
		Genuine John Deere parts	55-4
E		Grease	
Electrical		Automatic greasing system	45-2
Component Location	55-32	Grease for Lubrication	45-2
Electro-Hydraulic Components		Grease for Lubrication	45-2
Test	57-12	Guidelines to Form a Good Bale	35-6
Enable or Disable			
Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor	57-27	H	
Baler Rotation Speed Sensor	57-26	Hardware torque values	
End Play		Metric	55-1
Every 100 Hours	45-17	Hydraulic Accumulator	
Every 10 Hours	45-9	Service	55-3

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Hydraulic Coupler		Every 50 Hours	
Clean Filters.....	45-7	Door Hinges, Hydraulic Cylinders, and	
Hydraulic hoses		Bale Shape Sensor Pins Greasing	45-12
Replace.....	45-23	Gate Latches.....	45-13
Hydraulic Hoses		Telescoping Driveline	45-11
Connect to Tractor	25-5	Observe service intervals.....	45-1
Disconnect from Tractor.....	27-2	Yearly	45-22
Store	27-3	Tongue Frame and Hitch.....	45-16
Hydraulic maximum operating pressure	05-11	Lubrication and Maintenance	
I		Adjust Oil Flow	45-6
Identification View.....	00-1	As Required	45-6, 45-7
Install		Chain Oiling Component Location	45-5
Belts	55-24	Check	
Monitor Support	15-4	Wheel Bearings	45-21
Net Feed Roll Drive Belt	55-46	Clean	
Net Knife	55-46	Wheel Bearings	45-21
Roll No. 2 Scraper	55-26	Every 10 Hours	45-9
Standard Gauge Wheels		Every 100 Hours	
Working Position	20-5	Wheel Nut Torque.....	45-16
Telescoping Driveline	25-3	Every 50 Hours	
Virtual Terminal (Display) Portable Harness	15-6	Check Chain Tension	45-11
Install Belt Hooks.....	55-19	Extension Shaft	45-19
J		Lower Belt Drive Roll (With 2nd Drive Roll).....	45-14
Jackstand		Every 500 Hours	45-18
Fold.....	25-2	Check Belt Guides Wear	45-20
Unfold.....	27-5	Gear Case	45-18
Use.....	20-2	Every 6 years	45-23
K		Lubricate	
Knife and counterknife position		Wheel Bearings	45-21
Check.....	55-37	Prevent Fire	45-8
L		Twice a Year	
Lighting enhancement module	30-3	Check Tire	45-17
List		Weekly	45-14, 45-15
Diagnostic Trouble Code	57-4	Yearly	45-18, 45-22
Locate Components		Axle Wear	45-21
Electrical	55-32	Check Belt Guides Wear	45-20
Lubricant		Gear Case	45-18
Mixing.....	45-4	Wear Plates.....	45-22
Lubricant Storage		Wheel Bearings	45-21
Storage, Lubricant.....	45-4	Wheel Nut Torque.....	45-16
Lubricants, safety	45-4	M	
Lubrication and maintenance		Machine Angle	
As required.....	45-8	Set.....	20-3
Every 100 Hours		Main Drive Chain	
Tongue Frame and Hitch	45-16	Adjust.....	55-6
Every 30 Hours		Maintenance	
Net Binding Pivots.....	45-10	Accumulators	45-7, 45-22
		Make a Bale	
		Bale Shape Indicators.....	37-23
		Manual bale unload	38-9
		Manual Start	
		Binding Cycle.....	37-17
		Metric bolt and screw torque values	55-1
		Mixing lubricants.....	45-4
		Monitor	
		Install Support.....	15-4

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
N		Crop Preparation (Silage)	35-2
Near Full Alarm Offset		Crop Preparation (Straw)	35-2
Adjust	37-10	Gate Lock Valve	35-3
Net		Windrow Size	35-2
Binding Equipment Difficulties	50-11	Orientation of Camera	
Net Binding		Adjust	55-36
Adjust	37-13	P	
Net Binding Device		Periodic Maintenance	57-29
Care	20-6	Pickup	
Check Procedure - General	55-37	Adjust Downstops	35-4
Net Binding Knife		Raise or Lower Function	37-24
Sharpen	55-31	Unplug	37-26
Net binding stretch		Unplug in automation mode	38-5
Adjust	35-8	Pickup Drive Chain	
Net Feed Roll		Adjust	55-6
Drive Belt	55-46	Pickup Float Spring	
Net feed roll brake	55-43	Adjust	35-3
Net feed roll pressure		Pickup Gauge Wheels	
Check	55-40	Adjust	35-4
Net Feed Sensor		Pickup Tooth	
Adjust	55-35	Replace	55-9
Net Guide		Precuttr Knives	
Field Condition	35-8	Retract or Engage Function	37-25
Set	35-8	Prepare	
Net Guide Position		Beginning of season	60-2
Check	55-45	Prepare Belt	
Net Knife		Recommended Repair	55-12, 55-18
Remove	55-46	Prepare Belt: Emergency Repair	55-15
Net roll		Prepare the Baler for Storage	60-1
Care of	20-6	Preparing the baler	
Net Roll		Care of net roll	20-6
Load	20-7	Preparing the Baler	
Route Net Through Feed Rolls	20-7	Care of Net Binding Device	20-6
Select	20-6	Check Wheel Nut Torque	20-11
O		Install Standard Gauge Wheels in Working	
Oil Flow		Position	20-5
Adjust	45-6	Load Net Roll	20-7
Oiling Component Location		Select Net Roll	20-6
Chains	45-5	Set Machine Angle	20-3
Open		Tire Inflation	20-1
Side door	35-2	Use jackstand	20-2
Operate		Preparing the tractor	
Side Door Lights	37-31	Adjust drawbar	15-1
Soft Core System	37-19	Drawbar shield	15-1
Operate Baler		Preparing the Tractor	
Automatic Tailgate Mode	39-3	Adjust Tractor SCV Flow	15-3
Automation Mode	38-4	Install Battery Harness	15-5
Operate Baler Safely		Install Battery Wiring Harness for	
Automatic Tailgate Mode	39-1	Connecting Control Monitor	15-5
Operating the baler		Install Monitor Support	15-4
Open and close the side door	35-2	Select tractor PTO speed	15-2
Operating the Baler		Prerequisites	
Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll	35-5	Tractor-implement automation	38-1
Crop Preparation (Hay)	35-2	Prevent Fire	45-8
		Prevent Fire at Each Service	55-2
		Preventing fire	45-8

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
PTO		Sensors and Switches	
Connect Telescoping Driveline.....	25-4	Test	57-9
Disconnect Telescoping Driveline	27-3	Serial number	
Select speed	15-2	Plate	70-1
		Serial numbers	
R		Plate description	70-1
Raise or Lower Function		Serial Numbers	
Pickup	37-24	Baler Identification Number.....	70-1
Rear gate SCV		Service	
Select.....	38-6	Adjust	
Recent Problems		Tension Arm Spring	55-11
Diagnostic Trouble Code	57-2	Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB343	55-36
Remove		Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor	55-34
Upper Starter Roll (No. 2) Scraper	55-28	Adjust brushes	55-9
Replace		Adjust Drop Floor Sensor.....	55-33
Belt Wires.....	45-22	Adjust Gate Latch Sensors	55-35
Retract or Engage Function		Adjust net feed roll brake	55-43
Precutter Knives.....	37-25	Adjust Net Feed Sensor.....	55-35
Roll No. 2 Scraper		Adjust Tracking of Belts	55-25
Install.....	55-26	Baler Chain Identification	55-5
Store	55-30	Baler Roll Numbering.....	55-2
Roll No. 9 position		Before Each Service	55-2
Check.....	55-41	Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump	55-8
Rotary Feeder Drive Chain		Check Drive Belt Tension.....	55-42
Adjust.....	55-8	Check free motion of swiging bar.....	55-39
Rotor Auger Scrapers		Check knife and counterknife position	55-37
Adjust	55-31	Check Net Binding Device	55-37
Round Baler		Check net feed roll brake	55-43
Hanging Points.....	55-48	Check net feed roll pressure	55-40
Route Belts Throught the Baler	55-23	Check roll No. 9 position.....	55-41
		Lower Net Guide Position	55-45
S		Net Binding Device Check Procedure.....	55-37
Safety		Net Feed Roll Drive Belt	55-46
Rotating drivelines, stay clear	05-5	Prevent Fire	55-2
Safe maintenance, practice	05-12	Remove and Install Net Knife	55-46
Tires, service safely	05-8	Remove and install wheel.....	55-48
Safety, Avoid High-Pressure Fluids		Remove Binding Materials Around Feed Rolls	55-47
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	05-13	Repair Belts	55-13
Safety, lubricants	45-4	Repair gauge wheel.....	55-49
Scraper		Replace Pickup Tooth	55-9
Rotor Auger.....	55-31	Service intervals	45-1
Season and Machine Total		Set	
Counters	37-29	Automatic Tailgate Mode	
Select		Hydraulic Flow.....	39-9
Automation Level	38-5	Bale Diameter	37-9
Binding Start Mode	37-12	Machine Angle	20-3
Binding System	37-10	Net Guide.....	35-8
Select Function		Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket Connection	
Automatic Tailgate Mode.....	39-8	Disconnect	27-2
Selective control valve		Seven-Terminal Trailor Socket Connection	25-7
Select rear gate.....	38-6	Sharpen	
Sensor		Net Binding Knife	55-31
Identify Detection Area (Baler with		Side door	
BaleTrak Monitor and from S.N. 135000)	55-33	Close.....	30-4
		Side Door Lights	
		Operate	37-31
		Signal words, understand	05-1

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Soft Core System		Tractor PTO speed	
Adjust.....	37-19	Select.....	15-2
Operate.....	37-19	Tractor SCV Flow	
Softkey		Adjust.....	15-3
Description.....	37-3	Tractor-implement automation	
Designation.....	38-2, 39-2	Prerequisites.....	38-1
Softkey Designation		Transport Position	
Baler Application.....	37-3	Standard Gauge Wheels.....	30-4
Specifications		Transporting	
V451M Baler.....	65-1	Baler on Truck.....	30-2
Standard Gauge Wheels		Tow Baler on Public Roads.....	30-1
Install		Transporting and parking	
Working Position.....	20-5	Close side doors.....	30-4
Transport Position.....	30-4	Troubleshooting	
Starter Roll Drive Chain		Bale Quality.....	50-4
Adjust.....	55-7	Baler Application Display.....	50-16
States pie		Chain Oiling System.....	50-15
Automation.....	38-10	Feed Difficulties.....	50-1
Storage		General Baler Difficulties.....	50-6
Prepare for beginning of season.....	60-2	Net Binding Equipment Difficulties.....	50-11
Prepare the Baler.....	60-1	Pickup Difficulties.....	50-1
Store		Silage Equipment Operation Difficulties.....	50-10
Roll No. 2 Scraper.....	55-30	Twice a Year	
Swinging bar motion.....	55-39	Tire.....	45-17
Switch baler application		Twine Binding	
Current virtual terminal to another.....	57-28	Adjust.....	37-14
T		U	
Telescoping Driveline		Units of measure.....	37-1
Connect.....	25-4	Unplug	
Disconnect.....	27-3	Pickup.....	37-26, 38-5
Install.....	25-3	Unplug pickup	
Store.....	27-4	Automation mode.....	38-5
Telescoping Driveline Support.....	25-4	Upper Starter Roll (No. 2) Scraper	
Tension Arm		Remove.....	55-28
Adjust Spring.....	55-11	V	
Test		Virtual terminal	
Actuator Electrical Consumption.....	57-15	Switch baler application.....	57-28
Electro-Hydraulic Components.....	57-12	W	
Sensors and Switches.....	57-9	Warning Screens	
Tractor battery voltage.....	57-3	Diagnostic Trouble Code.....	57-1
Tire Inflation		Weekly.....	45-14
Check.....	20-1	Wheel Hub Cap.....	45-15
Tires, service safely.....	05-8	Wheel	
Tongue		Check Nut Torque.....	45-16
Adjust.....	20-4	Nut Torque.....	32-1
Torque charts		Remove and install.....	55-48
Metric.....	55-1	Wheel Hub Bearing	
Tow Baler on Public Roads.....	30-1	After the First 10 Hours.....	32-1
Tractor		Yearly.....	45-17
Drawbar.....	15-1	Wheel Nut Torque	
Monitor Support Installation.....	15-4	Check.....	20-11
Tractor behavior			
Adjust.....	38-8		
Tractor PTO			
Automatic disengagement.....	38-7		

Continued on next page

	Page
Windrow Compressor Roll	
Adjust.....	35-5
Windrow Size.....	35-2
Wiring Harness	
Connect.....	25-7
Disconnect	27-2

Y

Yearly	
Axle Wear	45-21
Check Belt Guides Wear.....	45-20
Check Net Feed Roll Brake	45-23
Check Wheel Nut Torque	45-16
Drain and Refill Gear Case	45-18
Jackstand.....	45-18
Replace Belt Wires	45-22
Wear Plates	45-22

John Deere Service Keeps You on the Job

John Deere Is At Your Service

CUSTOMER SATISFACTION is important to John Deere.

Our dealers strive to provide you with prompt, efficient parts and service:

- Maintenance and service parts to support your equipment.
- Trained service technicians and the necessary diagnostic and repair tools to service your equipment.

CUSTOMER SATISFACTION PROBLEM RESOLUTION PROCESS

Your John Deere dealer is dedicated to supporting your equipment and resolving any problem you may experience.

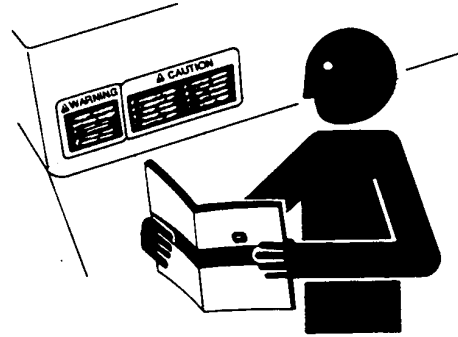
1. When contacting your dealer, be prepared with the following information:

- Machine model and product identification number
- Date of purchase
- Nature of problem

2. Discuss problem with dealer service manager.

3. If unable to resolve, explain problem to dealership manager and request assistance.

4. If you have a persistent problem your dealership is unable to resolve, ask your dealer to contact John Deere for assistance. Or contact the Ag Customer Assistance Center at 1-866-99DEERE (866-993-3373) or e-mail us at www.deere.com/en_US/ag/contactus/.



TS201—UN—15APR13

DX,IBC,2 -19-02APR02-1/1

